

THE THOUSAND AND ONE NIGHTS,

COMMONLY CALLED, IN ENGLAND,

The Arabian Nights' Entertainments.

A NEW TRANSLATION FROM THE ARABIC, WITH COPIOUS NOTES.

BY

EDWARD WILLIAM LANE,

HON. M.R.S.L., &C.

EDITOR OF "THE MODERN EGYPTIANS."

HUNDRED ENGRAVINGS ON WOOD,

from Original Designs by William Harvey.

A NEW EDITION,

FROM A COPY ANNOTATED BY THE TRANSLATOR,

EDITED BY HIS NEPHEW,

EDWARD STANLEY POOLE.

IN THREE VOLUMES.—VOL. I

LONDON:

ROUTLEDGE, WARNE, AND ROUTLEDGE,

BROADWAY, LUDGATE HILL.

NEW YORK: 129, GRAND STREET.

MDCCCLXV.

TO
THE MOST NOBLE
ALGERNON,
DUKE OF NORTHUMBERLAND, K G.,
EFC ETC ITC,

This Work,

CONSIDERED AS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE NATIONAL CHARACTER,
DOMESTIC HABITS, AND GENERAL MANNERS AND CUSTOMS,
OF A REMARKABLE PEOPLE,

IS MOST RESPECTFULLY DEDICATED,

BY

HIS GRACE'S

OBLIGED AND GRATEFUL SERVANT,

THE TRANSLATOR

EO 7106



THE EDITOR'S PREFACE.

A NEW EDITION of this work having been required, Mr. Lane was requested to undertake the correction of the press. But severe literary labours allowing him no leisure for this object, he named me, as his pupil in the study of Arabic, familiar with his writings, and for many years resident with him in Cairo, to fill, in some measure, his place. I have undertaken this duty with great diffidence, from a sense of my own deficiencies and his extensive knowledge; but I have felt that I could at least insure the correctness of the text, and a scrupulous adherence to his wishes. The present edition is printed, without any variations of my own (except those which are marked as such, and have been submitted to Mr. Lane), from a copy of the first and complete edition,

with corrections and additions made by Mr. Lane, from time to time, since its first publication. These, however, from the accuracy with which the translation was made, and the fulness of the Notes, are not very numerous. The same reasons have also caused my own notes to be few : I believe that my Uncle's notes are complete in themselves ; and that I have sometimes erred, even in the rare exceptions I have made, on the side of unnecessary addition.

An edition of any book not superintended by the author is sometimes regarded with distrust. I would therefore assure the reader that in this instance he may depend even on the punctuation ; the whole having been laboriously collated with Mr. Lane's annotated copy, notwithstanding the great delay which this process has occasioned in the printing of the work.

I have called this a *complete* edition, to distinguish it from two others which have been published without Mr. Lane's notes or his method of writing oriental words, and with other variations from the standard edition. The public appreciation of these notes, and of the advantage of correctly-written foreign words, is, I conceive, proved by the call for the present edition. On the subject of the mode of writing oriental words in European characters, I need say little, for the controversy has well nigh died out. The present generation does not regard antiquated blunders as "the familiar names of childhood," but rather strives to attain accuracy in all things ; and those few who still cling to "Mahomet" or "Mahomed" should consistently exhume the forgotten "Mahound" of the Crusades.

The translator's views respecting the origin and literary history of "The Thousand and One Nights" will be found fully expressed in the Review at the end of the third volume. In his original preface, he stated, "The remarks which I here submit to the reader, being written when only one-third of the work to which they principally relate is printed, must unavoidably be more defective than they would be if reserved until a later period. During the progress of the publication I may be enabled to form clearer and more complete views of the several subjects which might with propriety be

fully discussed at the head of my translation, and I think it better, therefore, to append at the close of the work many observations which I originally intended to prefix to the first volume." He has therefore wished me to remodel the preface, transferring all portions relating to the subjects in question to the Review, retaining whatever may more properly stand at the commencement of the work, and adding any matter of my own.

The object with which the translation was made is best expressed in the words of Mr. Lane's preface.

"My undertaking to translate anew the Tales of 'The Thousand and One Nights' implies an unfavourable opinion of the version which has so long amused us; but I must express my objections with respect to the latter in plain terms, and this I shall do by means of a few words on the version of Galland, from which it is derived; for to him alone its chief faults are to be attributed. I am somewhat reluctant to make this remark, because several persons, and among them some of high and deserved reputation as Arabic scholars, have pronounced an opinion that his version is an *improvement* upon the original. That 'The Thousand and One Nights' may be greatly improved, I most readily admit; but as confidently do I assert that Galland has excessively *perverted* the work. His acquaintance with Arab manners and customs was insufficient to preserve him always from errors of the grossest description, and by the *style* of his version he has given to the whole a false character, thus sacrificing, in a great measure, what is most valuable in the original work,—I mean its minute accuracy with respect to those peculiarities which distinguish the Arabs from every other nation, not only of the West, but also of the East. Deceived by the vague nature of Galland's version, travellers in Persia, Turkey, and India, have often fancied that the Arabian Tales describe the particular manners of the natives of those countries; but no one who has read them in the original language, having an intimate acquaintance with the Arabs, can be of this opinion: it is in Arabian countries, and especially in Egypt, that we see the people, the dresses, and the buildings, which it describes

in almost every case, even when the scene is laid in Persia, in India, or in China.

"Convinced of the truth of this assertion, I consider myself possessed of the chief qualifications for the proper accomplishment of my present undertaking, from my having lived several years in Cairo, associating almost exclusively with Arabs, speaking their language, conforming to their general habits with the most scrupulous exactitude, and received into their society on terms of perfect equality. Since the downfall of the Arab Empire of Baghdád, Cairo has been the chief of Arabian cities: its Memlook Sultáns, introduced into Egypt in their youth, naturally adopted, to a great degree, the manners of its native inhabitants, which the 'Osmanlee Turks in later days have but little altered. Cairo is the city in which Arabian manners now exist in the most refined state; and such I believe to have been the case when the present work was composed."

Mr. Lane's first two visits to Egypt were made when, for the last time, Arab manners and customs as they existed in the age of the Arabian Nights could be studied; and his translation was written very shortly after his second return to England. Though some of the tales may be Indian or Persian in origin, in their present state they exhibit a picture of the manners, modes of thought, and language, of the court and times of the Memlook Sultáns of Egypt, which nearly resembled in these points those of the Khaleefehs of Baghdád, or the great Arab Empire. De Sacy and Von Hammer, the two celebrated orientalist who differed widely in opinion as to the origin of the book, agreed that the tales in which the Khaleefeh Hároon Er-Rasheed is introduced (the best, with few exceptions, in the collection) are Egyptian in character. But since the "Modern Egyptians" were described by Mr. Lane, all things in the East have changed, and every day witnesses the decay of some old custom, to be followed by a bastard European imitation. During Moḥammad 'Alce's rule, all traces of the state and circumstance of the Memlook court gradually passed away. European dress has displaced oriental costume, cloth of gold, and dresses of

honour ; European architecture elbows the quaint beauty of the old Arab capital ; and the cavalcade of fifty horsemen around a grandee is succeeded by an English carriage that profanes the quiet streets of the city, and frightens away both 'Efreet's and their memory. Mr. Lane saw the last of Cairo in its integrity ; and he has not overstated his qualifications, as author of the "Modern Egyptians," for the task of translating the Arabian Nights.

Of the copy from which this translation was made, and the method observed in its execution, I may again quote the preface to the first edition. Mr. Lane says,—

"I have taken as my general standard of the original text the Cairo edition lately printed ; it being greatly superior to the other printed editions, and probably to every manuscript copy.* It appears to agree almost exactly with the celebrated MS. of Von Hammer, than which no copy more copious, I believe, exists ; and contains all the tales in the old version except those which, as Von Hammer says, Galland appears to have taken from other works, Arabic, Persian, and Turkish, in the Royal Library of Paris. The manuscript from which it was printed was carefully collated and corrected by a very learned man, the sheykh 'Abd-Er-Rahmán Eş-Saftee Esh-Sharkáwee, who also superintended the progress of the work through the press. But in addition to the value conferred upon it by the corrections of this sheykh, the copy from which the whole of my translation is made, except in a few

* Two other printed editions were also used by Mr. Lane—that of the first two hundred Nights, printed at Calcutta, and in consequence of the loss, by shipwreck, of nearly the whole impression of the first volume, never completed, and that of Breslau. The former differs much, in matter and manner, from any other known copy ; the latter, which was edited to the close of the seven hundred and third night by Professor Habicht, and completed by Professor Fleischer, is far inferior to all the others. One other edition has appeared in the Arabic, that of Calcutta, or "the Calcutta edition of the complete work" It was brought from Cairo, and is apparently (though not immediately) from the same original as the Boolák edition. I have continually referred to it for various readings, without finding any one of importance. And here I must animadvert on the practice of German orientalists of wasting their own time and their readers' patience in collecting such various readings of a work like "The Thousand and One Nights" as must necessarily be the result of the carelessness or the ignorance of copyists and reciters. The habit is unfortunately adopted by some Englishmen, who seem to imagine that all that is German is therefore learned.—ED.

instances, possesses an advantage which, I believe, renders it incomparably superior to any other now existing: it has been again revised and corrected, and illustrated with numerous manuscript notes, by a person whom I think I may safely pronounce the first philologist of the first Arab college of the present day, the sheykh Moḥammad 'Eiyád Eṭ-Ṭantáwee, or, more properly, Eṭ-Ṭanditáee. His notes are chiefly philological, and explanatory of words which do not belong to the classical language; and many of them are of very great assistance to me; though most of them I find unnecessary, from the knowledge of the modern Arabic which I have acquired during my intercourse with the people who speak it. His corrections of the text are numerous; and as they would interest very few persons, I have mentioned but few of them in the notes to my translation, notwithstanding a strong temptation that I felt to do otherwise in order that Arabic scholars might be assisted to judge of the fidelity of my version by comparing it with the text of the Cairo edition.* To the pièces of poetry which are interspersed throughout the work he has paid especial attention; not only correcting the errors which he found in them, but also always adding the vowel-points, and generally, commentaries or explanations. Thus I have shewn that I am very greatly indebted to him for his learned labours. I should, however, add, that I have ventured to differ from him in interpreting a few words; having found more appropriate meanings assigned to them by Arabs in parts not visited by him, or such meanings given in printed dictionaries with which he is unacquainted; and I have also corrected a few errors which have escaped his notice.† Without the valuable

* "I must here state, that peculiar qualifications are required to enable a person to judge of the fidelity of my translation. The original work contains many words not comprised in any printed dictionary, and a great number of words used in senses which no such dictionary gives. In cases of both these kinds, I am guided either by the explanations of the sheykh Moḥammad 'Eiyád, or by my having been long in the habit of noting down new words during conversation with Arabs, and in the perusal of works in which they are explained.

† "As I hope that the copy which he has rendered so valuable may be of great utility to many students of the Arabic language when I have ceased to profit by it, I may mention here, that the few corrections, and some explanations, which I have

aid which he has afforded me, I would not have attempted the translation; nor with it would I have done so were it not for the advantage that I derive from my having lived among Arabs. No translator can always be certain that, from twenty or more significations which are borne by one Arabic word, he has selected that which his author intended to convey; but, circumstanced as I am, I have the satisfaction of feeling confident that I have never given, to a word or phrase in this work, a meaning which is inconsistent with its presenting faithful pictures of Arab life and manners.

"I have thought it right to omit such tales, anecdotes, &c., as are comparatively uninteresting or on any account objectionable. In other words, I insert nothing that I deem greatly inferior in interest to the tales in the old version. Certain passages which, in the original work, are of an objectionable nature, I have slightly varied; but in doing this, I have been particularly careful to render them so as to be perfectly agreeable with Arab manners and customs. It was originally my intention to omit almost the whole of the poetry, thinking that the loss of measure and rhyme, and the impossibility of preserving the examples of paronomasia and some other figures with which they abound, would render translations of them generally intolerable to the reader: but afterwards I reflected that the character of the work would be thus greatly altered; and its value, as illustrating Arab manners and feelings, much diminished. I therefore determined to preserve a considerable number of select pieces, chosen either for their relative merits or because required by the context. The number of those comprised in the first volume of my translation is nearly half of the number contained in the corresponding portion of the original work; but in several cases I have omitted one or more verses of a piece as unsuitable, or for some other reason; and in a few instances I have given only the first verse or the first couplet. These pieces of poetry are not in general to be regarded as the compositions of the author or authors of the work: they

inserted upon the margins of pages will be easily distinguished from those of the sheykh Moḥammad 'Eiyād by the difference of our handwritings."

appear to be mostly borrowed from others, and many of them are taken from the works of celebrated poets.—To avoid the tedious interruptions which occur in the original at the close of each Night, I have divided the translation into chapters, each of which consists of one tale, or of two or more tales connected one with another, and have merely mentioned the Night with which each chapter commences, and that with which it terminates.

“The original work being designed solely for the entertainment of Arabs, I add copious notes to the translation, to render it more intelligible and agreeable to the English reader. These are entirely my own, except in those cases when I have stated otherwise;* and my general object in them has been to give such illustrations as may satisfy the general reader, without obliging him to consult other works. In many of them I endeavour to shew, by extracts from esteemed Arabic histories and scientific and other writings, chiefly drawn from MSS. in my possession, as well as by assertions and anecdotes that I have heard, and conduct that I have witnessed, during my intercourse with Arabs, that the most extravagant relations in this work are not in general regarded, even by the educated classes of that people, as of an incredible nature. This is a point which I deem of much importance to set the work in its proper light before my countrymen. I have resided in a land where genii are still firmly believed to obey the summons of the magician or the owner of a talisman, and to act in occurrences of every day; and I have listened to stories of their deeds related as facts by persons of the highest respectability, and by some who would not condescend to read the tales of ‘The Thousand and One Nights,’ merely because they are fictions, and not written in the usual polished style of literary compositions.”

I have already mentioned that the literary history of “The Thousand and One Nights” is discussed in Mr. Lane’s Review

* “When I mention ‘my sheykh’ in the notes, the sheykh Mohammad ‘Eiyád is the person to whom I allude. In several instances, when he has given brief explanations of words, phrases, customs, &c., with which I was previously acquainted, I have not thought it necessary to name him as my authority in notes which I have inserted, though I have sometimes done so.”

appended to this translation. In the course of my Arabic studies, and more especially since I have been occupied in editing the present work, I have endeavoured to form an unbiassed judgment on this difficult question; and all my researches have confirmed me in agreeing with the opinions there expressed. Von Hammer was inclined to lay too much stress on the supposed Persian or Indian origin of these Tales; while De Sacy, on the other hand, rejected the belief in any connection between the old work and the more modern; contending that the latter was an independent production. The discovery, however, of a passage in an Arabic author, by Von Hammer, since the publication of De Sacy's Essay and Mr. Lane's Preface, has placed the matter beyond a doubt; and scholars are now agreed, notwithstanding De Sacy's pleasant sarcasm, and the weight of his great name, that "The Thousand Nights" formed in some measure the prototype of "The Thousand and One Nights." On the other hand, De Sacy's keen appreciation of the modern (and chiefly Egyptian, or Arab,) character of the book, in its present form, must be fully recognised, and was indeed thus acknowledged by Von Hammer himself. The manners, dresses, and modes of thought, portrayed by it are Arab throughout, even in the stories which are probably retained from the Persian or Indian original, of which that of the Magic Horse is the best example in this translation. Besides those relating to the court and adventures of Hároon Er-Rasheed, which, as I have before remarked, are curiously Egyptian, many others appear to have been remodelled, if not actually composed, in Egypt. It is not less true that these tales are generally the best in the collection, if those of the Slave Káfoor, of 'Azeez and 'Azeezeh, and of Es-Sindibád, be excepted; for these certainly are inferior to none. The more colloquial and familiar stories point to the same origin; such as that of 'Alá-ed-Deen Abu-sh-Shámát (which is pervaded by Egyptian characteristics in phraseology and in other respects), that of Aboo-Şeer and Aboo-Keer, and that of Maarroof. The stories founded mainly on Persian or Indian originals appear to be

those in which supernatural beings play the most conspicuous parts; and, as Mr. Lane remarks, these are generally deficient in verses, although the converse does not hold good of the former class. The anecdotes are mostly historical: many of them are, in the Notes, identified with similar ones in other Arabic works; and almost all are of Arab origin.

The evidences of a late date scattered through the book may be additions of copyists and reciters; but considered with reference to its general character, they have a certain weight that cannot be overlooked: this is carefully stated in the Review.

Mr. Lane's arguments in favour of the collective "Thousand and One Nights" being an individual work, and not one of many similar collections, seem to me to be conclusive: not the least important of these is the fact that no similar collection is known to exist, nor is mentioned by any Arab author, with the sole exception of the old "Thousand Nights," which I believe he has demonstrated to be the prototype, in a remote degree, of the "Thousand and One." To cite the words of the Preface on the question of the original of the work as it is known to us—"I have shewn it to be my opinion that all the complete copies of 'The Thousand and One Nights' now known are in the main derived, though not immediately, from one original; and I hold the same opinion with respect to every fragment containing the commencement of the work;" "not regarding the work as wholly original, nor as the first of its kind; for many of the tales which it contains are doubtless of different and early origins; and I think that its general plan is probably borrowed from a much older production, bearing the same title of 'The Thousand and One Nights,' [or 'The Thousand Nights,'] a translation of a Persian work having a corresponding title, namely 'Hezár Afsáneh.' . . . One thing is certain—that 'The Thousand and One Nights,' [or 'The Thousand Nights,'] translated from the Persian was much older than the work now known by that title, and also extremely different from the latter."

When these facts are considered in reference to each other, the

date assigned, in the Review, to the composition of the work cannot reasonably be regarded as far from the truth. It is in Egypt, and especially in the Memlook court, that we must look to find the people, the manners, and the habits of thought, of "The Arabian Nights;" while the style of the language in which they are written is that which we might expect from an Egyptian of those times, who, unskilled in the classical Arabic, yet endeavouring to imitate it, was doubtless more generally intelligible than he is now to the modern Egyptians. This assumption of the old language, I may remark, is, and always has been, characteristic of all learned Arabs, be they Egyptians or natives of other Arabian countries (for such Egypt truly is); but no other instance exists of a work of fiction in which the attempt fails so singularly in affecting the classical, or retaining the modern tongue; while all other Arabic *tales* are certainly composed in either the one or the other. The modern Egyptian romances are mostly written in the colloquial dialect of every-day life; but those which are of older date are not *modernized*, as some have supposed, against all reason, "The Thousand and One Nights" to be: such an alteration would be without a parallel in Arabic literature, as Mr. Lane proves in the Review in a way to relieve me of the necessity of further alluding here to this particular question. "The Thousand and One Nights" exhibit a style which would be unfamiliar to the audience of the reciter of romances, without attaining to the classical diction: and the conclusion is forced on us that the work exhibits the language of a by-gone generation, which (taking into consideration the other indications of its age and country), is, it can scarcely be disputed, that of the later period of the Memlook rulers of Egypt, before the Turkish conquest of that country. In the words of Mr. Lane's Preface:—"Most of the tales which it contains are doubtless of an older *origin*, and many of them founded upon very old traditions and legends; but all these traditions or legends were evidently remodelled so as to become pictures of the state of manners which existed among the Arabs, and especially among those of Egypt, at the period here mentioned;

and I think that the composer of the work, or each of the composers, if one commenced and another completed it, was an Egyptian."

But a more popular subject than its obscure origin is the literary merit of this work. The rare fascination of these old Arab stories, their supernatural romance, excessive love, quaint philosophy, and grotesque humour, have, since the days of Galland, secured to them more readers than any other profane work. The translation of Galland, with all its lameness, puerility, and indecency, gained for them a hold which has never been relaxed; and it only required the appearance of a scholarlike and readable translation, freed from these defects, to make them generally accepted in English families. The fashion of travelling in the East has not a little added to the desire for a standard and annotated edition of a work unique, even in those lands of genii and adventure, in its remarkable portrayal of Eastern character, life, and, when closely translated, idiom. The humour of the book, now broad, now subtle, (who does not delight in Káfoor and his "half lie?") renders the comic stories generally superior to the romantic; but the pathos perhaps excels every other beauty. The story of Shems-en-Nahár is remarkable for this characteristic; and that of 'Azeez and 'Azeezeh (first published in this translation), surpasses in delicate tenderness any Arab tale with which we are acquainted.

Of the critical value of Mr. Lane's translation I ought scarcely to speak. Yet I may observe that students of Arabic make it a text-book in reading the original; while the English reader not uncommonly forgets that it is a translation, and detects not the literal accuracy of its rendering of an unfamiliar, or unknown, language.

I have adverted to the system adopted in transcribing foreign words, and I now conclude these preliminary remarks (intended only to render the learned Review easier of perusal to the general reader, and to smooth his first steps in a strange land), by quoting, with some slight improvements by Mr. Lane, the explanation of that system given in the preface to the first edition.

"In writing Arabic and other Oriental words in the present work, I have employed a system congenial with our language, and of the most simple kind; and to this system I adhere in every case, for the sake of uniformity as well as *truth*.* Some persons have objected to my writing in this manner a few familiar words which are found in our dictionaries; but they will excuse me for remarking that general usage is not altogether accordant with their opinion. Almost every author, I believe, now writes 'Koran,' or 'Kurán,' and 'Pasha,' or 'Pacha,' for our dictionary-words 'Alcoran' and 'Bashaw;' and most of our best authors on Arabian History, of late, have written 'Khalif' for 'Caliph.' In a work relating to a people who pronounce the Arabic w as v, I should write 'Vezeer' for the Arabic word 'Wezeer;' but to do so when the subject is Arabian, I consider inexpedient: and in this opinion I am upheld by a great majority of literary and other friends whom I have consulted on the subject, in the proportion of five to one. I may add that Dr. Johnson has written in his Dictionary, 'Vizier [properly *Wazir*];' and if we express the Arabic vowels by their *Italian* equivalents, it is properly 'Wazír' or 'Wezír.'—The system which I here employ requires but little explanation; the general reader may be directed to pronounce

a as in our word 'beggar:†

é as in 'there:'

á as in 'father:‡

ee as in 'bee:'

e as in 'bed:'

ei as our word 'eye:'

* "English writers generally express the Arabic vowels and diphthongs by their nearest *Italian* equivalents. This mode is very well suited for those who know, and for those who do not care for, the correct pronunciation of the words so transcribed; but for others I think it objectionable. Our language is altogether much more suitable to the purpose of expressing the sounds of Arabic than the Italian. Besides, I believe it is the custom of every other European nation, in transcribing Oriental words, to employ a system congenial with its own language. In a former work, I made use of a double h to express a very strong Arabic aspirate (as others had done before me), and the word 'Hhágg' or 'Hhájj' was pointed out by a critic as one remarkably uncouth. Von Hammer, in a review of that work, writes the same word (and very properly as a German writer) 'Hadschdsch'."

† "Strictly speaking, it has a sound between that of a in 'bad' and that of u in 'bud;' sometimes approximating more to the former; and sometimes to the latter."

‡ "Its sound, however, often approximates to that of u in 'ball.'"

ey as in 'they:'

oo as in 'boot:'

i as in 'bid:'

ow as in 'down:'

o as in 'obey' (short):

and

ó as in 'bone:'

u as in 'bull.'

The letter y is to be pronounced as in 'you' and 'lawyer:' never as in 'by.'

An *apostrophe*, when immediately preceding or following a vowel, I employ to denote the place of a letter which has no equivalent in our alphabet; it has a guttural sound like that which is heard in the bleating of sheep: a (with a dot beneath) represents the same sound at the end of a syllable, when it is more forcibly pronounced.

Each of the consonants distinguished by a dot beneath has a peculiarly hard sound.

Having avoided as much as possible making use of accents, I must request the reader to bear in mind that a single vowel, when not marked with an accent, is always short; and that a double vowel or diphthong at the end of a word, when not so marked, is not accented ('Welee,' for instance, being pronounced 'Wé'lee'): also, that the acute accent does not always denote the principal or only emphasis ('Hároon' being pronounced 'Hároón'); that a vowel with a grave accent (only occurring at the end of a word), is not emphasized, though it is long; and that dh, gh, kh, sh, and th, when not divided by a hyphen, represent, each, a single Arabic letter."*

I have only to add one more extract from Mr. Lane's Preface.

"Many of the engravings which are so numerous interspersed in this work will considerably assist to explain both the Text and

* "Dh is pronounced as th in 'that' gh represents a guttural sound like that produced in gargling kh represents a guttural sound like that which is produced in expelling saliva from the throat, and approaching nearer to the sound of h (a very strong aspirate) than to that of k: sh is pronounced as in 'shall.' and th, as in 'thin.'"

the Notes; and to insure their accuracy, to the utmost of my ability, I have supplied the artist with modern dresses, and with other requisite materials. Thus he has been enabled to make his designs agree more nearly with the costumes &c. of the times which the tales generally illustrate than they would if he trusted alone to the imperfect descriptions which I have found in Arabic works.* Except in a few cases, when I had given him such directions as I deemed necessary, his original designs have been submitted to me; and in suggesting any corrections, I have, as much as possible, avoided fettering his imagination, which needs no eulogy from me. He has acquired a general notion of Arabian architecture from the great work of Murphy on the Arabian remains in Spain, and from the splendid and accurate work on the Alhambra by Messrs. Goury and Jones; and through the kindness of my friend Mr. Hay, of Linplum, he has been allowed to make a similar use of a very accurate and very beautiful collection of drawings of a great number of the finest specimens of Arabian architecture in and around Cairo, executed by M. Pascal Coste, and now the property of Mr. Hay.† He has also consulted a number of Oriental drawings, and various other sources. My acknowledgments to other persons I have expressed in several of the Notes.

“The portion which is comprised in the first volume of this translation, terminates with part of the hundred and thirty-seventh Night: it is therefore necessary to remark,—first, that there is less to omit in the early part of the original work than in the later:—secondly, that the *Nights* in the early part are

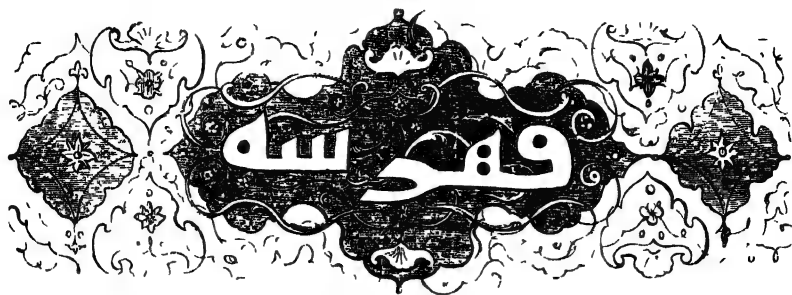
* “Es-Suyootec, in his ‘*Hosn el-Mohádarah*,’ after quoting a description of certain dresses, says, ‘As to their dresses of honour, and those of the Wezeers and others of similar rank, I have struck out the description of them from the words of Ibn-Fadl-Allah, for they are composed of silk and gold, which is forbidden by the law, and I have obliged myself not to mention in this book any thing of which I should be questioned in the world to come, if it be the will of God.’—I have never seen any Arabic work with drawings of costumes; but Persian drawings are often useful in explaining Arab dresses.”

† These drawings, with some few exceptions, have now been published, from copies in the possession of M. Coste.

generally much *longer* than in the subsequent portion ; the first hundred Nights (without the Introduction) comprising 213 pages in the Cairo edition of the original work ; the second hundred, 149 pages ; the third, 107 ; the fourth, 106 ; the fifth, 94 : *—thirdly, that a similar observation applies to the *Notes* which are inserted in my translation ; those appended to the early tales being necessarily much more copious than the others."

* "The substance of the first five chapters in my translation, ending with part of the thirty-second Night, occupies a hundred and sixty-eight Nights in the edition of Breslau "





CONTENTS OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

| | PAGE |
|--------------|------|
| Introduction | 1 |
| Notes | 15 |

CHAPTER I

| | |
|---|----|
| Story of the Merchant and the Jinnee | 38 |
| Story of the First Sheykh and the Gazelle | 42 |
| Story of the Second Sheykh and the two Black Hounds | 46 |
| Story of the Third Sheykh and the Mule | 50 |
| Notes | 52 |

CHAPTER II

| | |
|--|-----|
| Story of the Fisherman | 69 |
| Story of King Yoonán and the Sage Doobán | 75 |
| Story of the Husband and the Parrot | 79 |
| Story of the Envious Wezeer and the Prince and the Ghooléh | 81 |
| Continuation of the Story of King Yoonán and the Sage Doobán | 83 |
| Continuation of the Story of the Fisherman | 86 |
| Story of the Young King of the Black Islands | 94 |
| Notes | 104 |

CHAPTER III.

| | |
|---|-----|
| Story of the Porter and the Ladies of Baghdád, and of the Three Royal Mendicants, &c | 120 |
| Story of the First Royal Mendicant | 134 |

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| Story of the Second Royal Mendicant | 140 |
| Story of the Envier and the Envied | 149 |
| Continuation of the Story of the Second Royal Mendicant | 151 |
| Story of the Third Royal Mendicant | 160 |
| Continuation of the Story of the Ladies of Baghdád, &c. | 173 |
| Story of the First of the Three Ladies of Baghdád | 173 |
| Story of the Second of the Three Ladies of Baghdád | 181 |
| Conclusion of the Story of the Ladies of Baghdád, &c. | 187 |
| Notes | 190 |

CHAPTER IV.

| | |
|--|-----|
| Story of the Three Apples, &c. | 222 |
| Story of Noor-ed-Deen and his Son, and of Shems-ed-Deen and his Daughter | 230 |
| Notes | 272 |

CHAPTER V.

| | |
|--|-----|
| Story of the Humpback | 291 |
| Story told by the Christian Broker | 297 |
| Story told by the Sultán's Steward | 310 |
| Story told by the Jewish Physician | 320 |
| Story told by the Tailor | 328 |
| The Barber's Story of Himself | 342 |
| The Barber's Story of his First Brother | 344 |
| The Barber's Story of his Second Brother | 348 |
| The Barber's Story of his Third Brother | 351 |
| The Barber's Story of his Fourth Brother | 355 |
| The Barber's Story of his Fifth Brother | 359 |
| The Barber's Story of his Sixth Brother | 369 |
| Conclusion of the Story told by the Tailor | 374 |
| Conclusion of the Story of the Humpback | 374 |
| Notes | 377 |

CHAPTER VI.

| | |
|---|-----|
| Story of Noor-ed-Deen and Enes-el-Jeles | 390 |
| Notes | 430 |

CONTENTS.

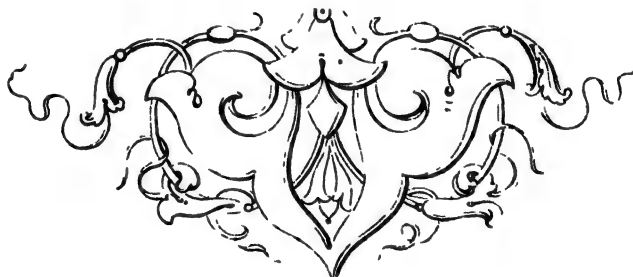
xxv

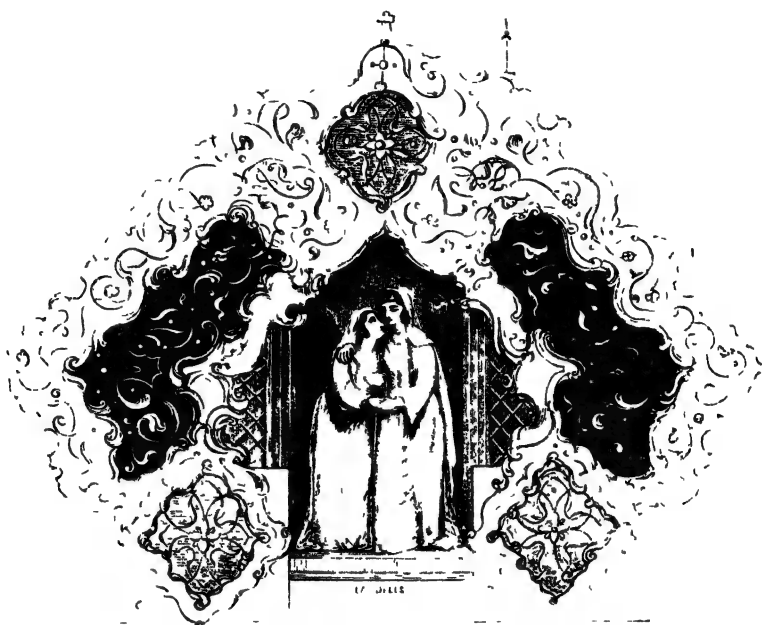
CHAPTER VII.

| | PAGE |
|--|------|
| Story of Ghánim the Son of Eiyob, the Distracted Slave of Love | 436 |
| Story of the Slave Káfoor | 440 |
| Continuation of the Story of Ghánim | 445 |
| Notes | 463 |

CHAPTER VIII.

| | |
|---|-----|
| Story of Táj-el-Mulook and the Lady Dunià | 469 |
| Story of 'Azeez and 'Azeezeh | 480 |
| Continuation of the Story of Táj-el-Mulook and the Lady Dunià | 512 |
| Notes | 544 |





LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS IN VOLUME I

| | Engraver's Name | Page |
|---|-----------------|-------|
| Ornamental Title — At the foot is the Title in Arabic | JACKSON | |
| Head-piece to Preface — The Vase is formed of the Arabic words signifying "In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful" (always placed at the head of a Muslim work, written doubly, and contrarily | MARY CHINI | vii |
| Tail-piece to Preface | LANDLIS | xxii |
| Head-piece to Table of Contents | LANDLIS | xxiii |
| Tail-piece to Table of Contents | WILLIAMSON | xxv |
| Head-piece to List of Illustrations | LANDLIS | xxvi |
| Shahryar going out to hunt, and Ornamental Border | JACKSON | 1 |
| The Wezzer presenting the letter to Shâh-Zemân | O SMITH | 3 |
| Shâh-Zemân, after having killed his Wife | O SMITH | 4 |
| Meeting of Shahryar and Shah Zeman | O SMITH | 5 |
| Shahryar's return from the Chase | GRAY | 6 |
| Garden of Shahryar's Palace | THOMPSON | 7 |
| 'Efseet and Lady | I WILLIAMS | 8 |

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

xxvii

| | Engravers' Names | Page |
|--|------------------|------|
| The Wezeer and his two Daughters | O SMITH | 11 |
| The Ass at Plough | LANDELLS | 12 |
| The Dog and the Cock | LANDELLS | 13 |
| Shahryyān unveiling Shahrazād | THOMPSON | 14 |
| Head-piece to Notes to Introduction—The Arabic inscription is the subject of the first paragraph of the first Note | LANDELLS | 15 |
| Tail-piece to Notes to Introduction.—Morning | LANDELLS | 17 |
| Head-piece to Chapter I.—Shahrazād narrating her Stories | MISS WILLIAMS | 38 |
| Merchant and Jinnee | S WILLIAMS | 39 |
| Meeting of the Merchant and the Sheykh with the Gazelle | O. SMITH | 41 |
| Return of the Jinnee | O SMITH | 42 |
| Transformation of the Concubine into a Cow | THOMPSON | 43 |
| The Heidsman introducing his Daughter to the Sheykh | BENSLWORTH | 45 |
| The Second Sheykh receiving his poor Brother | GRAY | 47 |
| The Second Sheykh finding the Maiden on the Sea-shore | GRAY | 48 |
| The Second Sheykh saved from drowning | LINTON | 49 |
| The Second Sheykh and the two Black Hounds | GRAY | 50 |
| Tail-piece to Chapter I—The Jinnee listening to the Tales of the Sheykh | F. W. BRANSON | 51 |
| Head-piece to Notes to Chapter I—The Merchant eating in the Garden | LANDELLS | 52 |
| Tail-piece to Notes to Chapter I | MASON JACKSON | 68 |
| Head-piece to Chapter II.—The Fisherman—Motto, "Small things stir up great" | JACKSON | 69 |
| The 'Lleest liberated from the Bottle | ORRIN SMITH | 71 |
| The Fisherman enclosing the 'Lleest in the Bottle | GRIN | 74 |
| King Yoonan playing at Golf | LANDELLS | 76 |
| Dooban in his Dress of Honour | THOMPSON | 78 |
| The Intelligent Parrot | GRAY | 79 |
| The Prince Meeting the Ghooleh | LANDELLS | 82 |
| Dooban and the Executioner | GRAY | 84 |
| The Death of King Yoonan | THOMPSON | 86 |
| The Fish of Four Colours | GRAY | 88 |
| The Fisherman showing the Fish to the Sultan | THOMPSON | 89 |
| The Cook-maid dressing the Fish | KIRCHNER | 90 |
| The Black Palace | LANDELLS | 92 |
| The Sultan discovering the Young King of the Black Islands | ORRIN SMITH | 94 |
| The Young King on his Bed, attended by Two Maids | T WILLIAMS | 95 |
| The Black Slave wounded by the Young King | GRAY | 97 |
| The Kubbah, or Tomb | MISS WILLIAMS | 100 |
| The Sultan killing the Enchantress | S WILLIAMS | 101 |
| Tail-piece to Chapter II—The Journey home | LANDELLS | 103 |
| Head-piece to Notes to Chapter II—The Fisherman and the dead Ass | LANDELLS | 104 |
| Head-piece to Chapter III—The Porter, &c.—The Motto is the Inscription upon the Door, in Kootee Characters | MASON JACKSON | 120 |
| The Porter pleading with the Three Ladies | SMITH | 123 |
| The Porter and Ladies carousing | T. WILLIAMS | 124 |
| The Three Royal Mendicants | VAN DY | 126 |
| The Concert of the Mendicants | SMITH | 127 |
| The Ladies preparing to whip the Bitches | GRAY | 129 |
| The Portress fainting | T WILLIAMS | 130 |

| | Engravers' Names | Page |
|--|----------------------------|------|
| The Porter seized | GRAY | 132 |
| First Prince (afterwards a Mendicant) leading the Lady to the Tomb | SMITH | 135 |
| Second Prince (afterwards a Mendicant) meeting the Robbers | GREEN | 140 |
| Second Prince as a Wood-cutter | T. WILLIAMS | 142 |
| Second Prince discovering the Trap-door | LANDELLS | 143 |
| Second Prince ascending the Steps | LANDELLS | 145 |
| Second Prince carried off by the 'Efreet | THOMPSON | 146 |
| Second Prince begging his life of the 'Efreet | THOMPSON | 148 |
| The Envid Sheykh and the Jinn in the Well | T. WILLIAMS | 150 |
| Second Prince transformed into an Ape | S. WILLIAMS | 152 |
| The Ape recognised by the Princess | GRAY | 155 |
| The Combat with the Lion (Head-piece) | S. WILLIAMS, Jun. | 156 |
| Transformations | WRIGHT & FOLKARD | 156 |
| Ditto | WRIGHT & FOLKARD | 157 |
| Disenchantment of the Ape | SMITH | 158 |
| The Mountain of Loadstone | WHIMPLER | 162 |
| The Prince thrown ashore | M. JACKSON | 163 |
| Death of the Youth in the Cave | GREEN | 166 |
| Garden | M. JACKSON | 171 |
| First Lady recognising her Sisters | GREEN | 174 |
| The Prince in the Oratory | SMITH | 177 |
| First Lady after killing the Serpent | LANDELLS | 180 |
| Bázár, or Market-Street | M. JACKSON | 184 |
| Old Woman interceding for the Second Lady | THOMPSON | 186 |
| Palace | GREEN | 189 |
| Head-piece to Notes to Chapter III.—The Porter | J. JACKSON | 190 |
| Persian Harps | LANDELLS | 205 |
| Tail-piece to Notes to Chapter III. | T. WILLIAMS | 221 |
| Head-piece to Chapter IV.—Fisherman drawing his Nets | THOMPSON | 222 |
| The Young Man presenting the Apples to his Wife | F. BRANSTON | 226 |
| The Wezeer finding the Apple | GREEN | 229 |
| The Pyramids | J. JACKSON | 232 |
| The Mule of Noor-ed-Deen | LANDELLS | 233 |
| Noor-ed-Deen after the Bath | M. JACKSON | 235 |
| The Old Wezeer instructing his Grandchild | THOMPSON | 238 |
| Noor-ed-Deen and his Son | LINTON | 241 |
| Bedr-ed-Deen at his Father's Tomb | J. JACKSON | 243 |
| The 'Efreet, attended by the Jinneezyh, carrying off Bedr-ed-Deen | THOMPSON | 245 |
| Transformations | WRIGHT & FOLKARD | 248 |
| Ditto | WRIGHT & FOLKARD | 249 |
| Bedr-ed-Deen and his Bride | WRIGHT & FOLKARD | 249 |
| Gate of Damascus | M. JACKSON | 251 |
| The Wezeer Shems-ed-Deen recovering from a Swoon | SLADLER | 255 |
| The School | GRAY | 257 |
| Damascus | SMITH | 260 |
| The Widow of Noor-ed-Deen kissing the feet of his Brother | T. WILLIAMS | 263 |
| Bedr-ed-Deen waiting upon his Son and the Eunuch | GREEN | 265 |
| Bedr-ed-Deen bound | SMITH | 267 |
| Bedr-ed-Deen's perplexity | J. JACKSON | 270 |
| Head-piece to Notes to Chapter IV.—The Old Fisherman | MISS WILLIAMS | 273 |
| Tail piece to Notes to Chapter IV. | WRIGHT & FOLKARD | 290 |

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

xxix

| | Engravers' Names | Page |
|---|----------------------|------|
| Head-piece to Chapter V.—The Humpback, &c. | T. WILLIAMS | 291 |
| The Humpback Dead | WRIGHT & FOLKARD . | 296 |
| Báb en-Naṣr (from a Sketch by Mr. E. W. Lane), &c. . . . | J. JACKSON | 297 |
| Money-Changer and Scrivener, &c. | WRIGHT & FOLKARD . | 300 |
| Saloon | THOMPSON | 303 |
| Interior of Báb Zuweyleh (from a Sketch by M. Coste). . . | LANDELLS | 306 |
| Head-piece to the Story told by the Sultán's Steward . . . | LANDELLS | 310 |
| Arrival of the Lady on the Mule | M. JACKSON | 313 |
| Mosque on the Bank of the Tigris | J. JACKSON | 315 |
| Displaying of the Bird | THOMPSON | 317 |
| Portrait of the Jew | SLADER | 319 |
| Head-piece to the Story told by the Jewish Physician . . . | SMITH | 320 |
| Aleppo | SMITH | 322 |
| The Arrest | GRAY | 325 |
| The Lady confessing her Crime | GRAY | 327 |
| Head-piece to the Story told by the Tailor | SMITH | 328 |
| Young Man sitting on a Maṣṭabah | SMITH | 330 |
| The Barber and the Young Man | LANDELLS | 332 |
| The Barber and Servants with Dishes | LANDELLS | 336 |
| The Barber lending his Clothes | J. JACKSON | 339 |
| Portrait of the Barber | VASEY | 341 |
| Head-piece to the Barber's Story of Himself | J. JACKSON | 342 |
| Head-piece to the Barber's Story of his First Brother.—The Motto, "How different is to-night from yesterday!" | LANDELLS | 344 |
| Tail-piece to the same | WILLIAMSON | 347 |
| Head-piece to the Barber's Story of his Second Brother . . . | T. WILLIAMS | 348 |
| Head-piece to the Barber's Story of his Third Brother . . . | S. WILLIAMS | 351 |
| Tail-piece to the same | JENNINGS | 354 |
| Head-piece to the Barber's Story of his Fourth Brother . . . | JACKSON | 355 |
| Tail-piece to the same | GRAY | 358 |
| Head-piece to the Barber's Story of his Fifth Brother—The Motto, "The emulous desire of increase employeth you until ye visit the graves." (ḥuṭ-an, ch. cn. vv. 1 and 2.) . . . | JACKSON | 359 |
| The Revere of the Barber's Fifth Brother | THOMPSON | 360 |
| Ditto | S. WILLIAMS | 361 |
| Ditto | T. WILLIAMS | 362 |
| Ditto | GRAY | 363 |
| The Result | LIE | 363 |
| The Second Misfortune of the Barber's Fifth Brother . . . | THOMPSON | 366 |
| Tail-piece to the Barber's Story of his Fifth Brother . . . | WILLIAMSON | 368 |
| Head-piece to the Barber's Story of his Sixth Brother . . . | LANDELLS | 369 |
| The Barber's Sixth Brother taken by Bedawees | GREEN | 373 |
| Tail-piece to the Story of the Humpback | SLADER | 376 |
| Head-piece to Notes to Chapter V. | LANDELLS | 377 |
| Tail-piece to Notes to Chapter V. | VASEY | 389 |
| Head-piece to Chapter VI. | SMITH | 390 |
| Noor-ed-Deen embracing the Slave | THOMPSON | 394 |
| The Funeral of the Wezeer El-Fadl | WRIGHT & FOLKARD . | 397 |
| The Wezeer El-Mo'een in the Slave-Market | J. JACKSON | 402 |
| El-Mo'een in his Abasement | MISS H. CLARKE . . . | 404 |
| The Lane leading to "The Garden of Delight" | GREEN | 408 |
| Bower in "The Garden of Delight" | T. WILLIAMS | 410 |

| | Engravers' Names | Page |
|---|--------------------|------|
| Enees-el-Jelees offering the Wine . | WRIGHT & FOLKARD . | 412 |
| The Khaleefeh and the Wezeer in the Tie . | S. WILLIAMS . . . | 415 |
| Kereem, the Fisherman . | JENNINGS . | 418 |
| Enees-el-Jelees playing on the Lute . . | S WILLIAMS . | 421 |
| Enees-el-Jelees and the Khaleefeh and Jaafai | SLADER . | 427 |
| Tail-piece to Chapter VI | BASTIN . | 429 |
| Head-piece to Notes to Chapter VI | LANDILLS . | 430 |
| Tail-piece to Notes to Chapter VI. | BRANSON . | 435 |
| Head-piece to Chapter VII | LANDILLS . | 436 |
| Ghanim in the Palm-tree . | SMITH . | 439 |
| The Merchant meeting his Family | JACKSON . | 443 |
| Koot el-Kuloob awaking | GRAY . | 446 |
| Pretended Tomb of Koot-el-Kuloob | WILLIAMSON . | 451 |
| Ghanim sick in a Mosque | M JACKSON . | 455 |
| Ghanim's Mother and Sister as Beggars | WRIGHT & FOLKARD . | 459 |
| Tail-piece to Chapter VII | LANDELLS . | 462 |
| Head-piece to Notes to Chapter VII —Damascus | LANDILLS . | 463 |
| Tail-piece to Notes to Chapter VII —The Decision | M JACKSON . | 468 |
| Head-piece to Chapter VIII —Suleyman Shah and his Wezeer | J JACKSON . | 469 |
| Zahr Shah on his Throne . | VASEY . | 473 |
| The Troops of Suleyman Shah meeting his Bride | WRIGHT & FOLKARD . | 475 |
| Taj-el-Mulook hunting . | GREEN . | 477 |
| Descent of the Handkerchief | S WILLIAMS . | 482 |
| 'Azeez and 'Azeezeh | SLADER . | 485 |
| The Mak'ad . | O SMITH . | 490 |
| 'Azeez returned with the Knife and Dn hem | LANDILLS . | 495 |
| 'Azeezeh weeping over the Design of the Gazelles | SLADER . | 497 |
| 'Azeezeh dead . | LANDILLS . | 499 |
| 'Azeez and his Mistress at the Grave of 'Azeezeh | WILLIAMSON . | 502 |
| The future Wife of 'Azeez | JENNINGS . | 505 |
| The Punishment of 'Azeez | GRAY . | 508 |
| The Lady Dunya | THOMPSON . | 512 |
| Halt on the Journey | WHIMPER . | 514 |
| Taj-el-Mulook receiving the Old Woman | VASEY . | 519 |
| The Lady Dunya writing | HARRIFT CLARKE . | 523 |
| The Lady Dunya untwisting the Old Woman's Hair | T WILLIAMS . | 526 |
| The Old Woman beaten by Female Slaves . | S WILLIAMS . | 528 |
| Illustrations of the Stratagem in the Lady Dunya's Garden | LANDELLS . | 532 |
| Taj-el-Mulook and the Lady Dunya . . | LANDELLS . | 535 |
| Scene on the Arrival of the Troops of Suleyman Sháh | WHIMPER . | 538 |
| The Horses sent to Suleyman Sháh . | GRAY . | 541 |
| Tail-piece to Chapter VIII . | WRIGHT & FOLKARD . | 543 |
| Head-piece to Notes to Chapter VIII | LANDELLS . | 544 |
| Tail-piece to Notes to Chapter VIII | GREEN . | 555 |



INTRODUCTION.

*In the name of God, the Com-
passionate, the Merciful.¹*

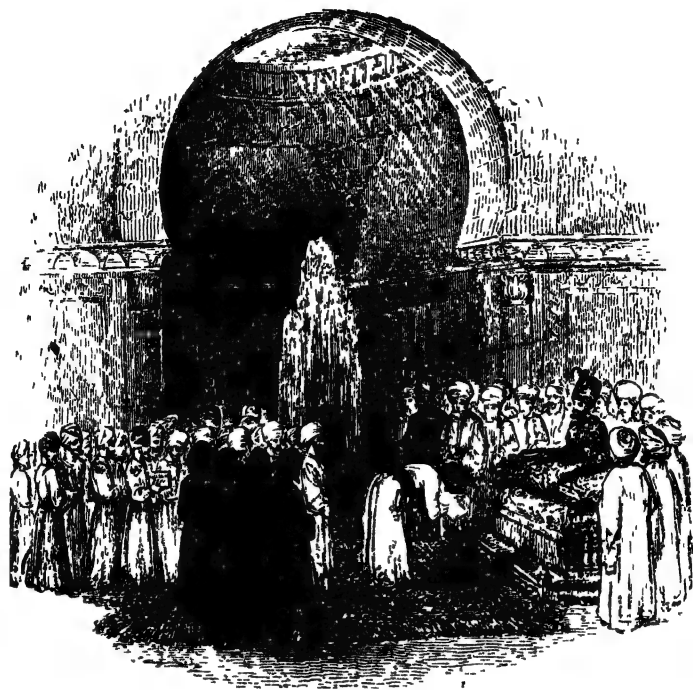
Praise be to God, the Bene-
ficent King, the Creator of the
universe, who hath raised the
heavens without pillars, and
spread out the earth as a bed;²
and blessing and peace be on
the lord of apostles, our lord
and our master Moḥammad, and
his Family; blessing and peace,
enduring and constant, unto the
day of judgment.

To proceed:—The lives of
former generations are a lesson
to posterity; that a man may
review the remarkable events

which have happened to others, and be admonished ; and may consider the history of people of preceding ages, and of all that hath befallen them, and be restrained. Extolled be the perfection of Him who hath thus ordained the history of former generations to be a lesson to those which follow. Such are the Tales of a Thousand and One Nights, with their romantic stories and their fables.

It is related (but God alone is all-knowing,⁸ as well as all-wise, and almighty, and all-bountiful,) that there was, in ancient times, a King⁴ of the countries of India and China, possessing numerous troops, and guards, and servants, and domestic dependents : and he had two sons ; one of whom was a man of mature age ; and the other, a youth. Both of these princes were brave horsemen ; but especially the elder, who inherited the kingdom of his father, and governed his subjects with such justice that the inhabitants of his country and whole empire loved him. He was called King Shahriyâr :⁵ his younger brother was named Shâh-Zemân,⁶ and was King of Samarkand.⁷ The administration of their governments was conducted with rectitude, each of them ruling over his subjects with justice during a period of twenty years with the utmost enjoyment and happiness. After this period, the elder King felt a strong desire to see his brother, and ordered his Wezeer⁸ to repair to him and bring him.

Having taken the advice of the Wezeer on this subject,⁹ he immediately gave orders to prepare handsome presents, such as horses adorned with gold and costly jewels, and memlooks, and beautiful virgins, and expensive stuffs.¹⁰ He then wrote a letter to his brother, expressive of his great desire to see him ;¹¹ and having sealed it, and given it to the Wezeer, together with the presents above mentioned, he ordered the minister to strain his nerves, and tuck up his skirts, and use all expedition in returning. The Wezeer answered, without delay, I hear and obey ; and forthwith prepared for the journey : he packed his baggage, removed the burdens, and made ready all his provisions within three days ; and on the fourth day, he took leave of the King Shahriyâr, and went forth towards the deserts and wastes. He proceeded night and day ; and each of the kings under the authority of King Shahriyâr by whose residence he passed came forth to meet him,¹² with costly presents, and gifts of gold and silver, and entertained him three days ;¹³ after which, on the fourth day, he accompanied him one day's journey, and took leave of him. Thus he continued on his way until he drew near to the city of Samarkand, when he sent forward a messenger to inform King Shâh-Zemân of



his approach. The messenger entered the city, inquired the way to the palace, and, introducing himself to the King, kissed the ground before him,¹⁴ and acquainted him with the approach of his brother's Wezeer; upon which Sháh-Zemán ordered the chief officers of his court, and the great men of his kingdom, to go forth a day's journey to meet him; and they did so; and when they met him, they welcomed him, and walked by his stirrups until they returned to the city. The Wezeer then presented himself before the King Sháh-Zemán, greeted him with a prayer for the divine assistance in his favour, kissed the ground before him, and informed him of his brother's desire to see him; after which he handed to him the letter. The King took it, read it, and understood its contents;¹⁵ and answered by expressing his readiness to obey the commands of his brother. But, said he (addressing the Wezeer), I will not go until I have entertained thee three days. Accordingly, he lodged him in a palace befitting his rank, accommodated his troops in tents, and appointed them all things requisite in the way of food and drink: and so they remained three days. On the fourth day, he equipped himself for

the journey, made ready his baggage, and collected together costly presents suitable to his brother's dignity.

These preparations being completed, he sent forth his tents and camels and mules and servants and guards, appointed his Wezeer to be governor of the country during his absence, and set out towards his brother's dominions. At midnight,¹⁶ however, he remembered that he had left in his palace an article which he should have brought with him ; and having returned to the palace to fetch it, he there beheld his wife sleeping in his bed, and attended by a male negro slave, who had fallen asleep by her side. On beholding this scene, the world became black before his eyes ; and he said within himself, If this is the case when I have not departed from the city, what will be the conduct of this vile woman while I am sojourning with my brother ? He then drew his sword, and slew them both in the bed : after which he immediately returned, gave orders for departure, and journeyed to his brother's capital.



Shahriyár, rejoicing at the tidings of his approach, went forth to meet him, saluted him, and welcomed him with the utmost delight. He then ordered that the city should be decorated on the occasion,¹⁷ and sat down to entertain his brother with cheerful conversation : but the mind of King Sháh-Zemán was distracted by reflections upon the conduct of his wife ; excessive grief took possession of him ; and his countenance became sallow ; and his frame, emaciated. His brother observed his altered condition, and, imagining that it was occasioned by his absence from his dominions, abstained from troubling him or



asking respecting the cause, until after the lapse of some days, when at length he said to him, O my brother, I perceive that thy body is emaciated, and thy countenance is become sallow. He answered, O brother, I have an internal sore:—and he informed him not of the conduct of his wife which he had witnessed. Shahriyár then said, I wish that thou wouldest go out with me on a hunting excursion, perhaps thy mind might so be diverted:—but he declined; and Shahriyár went alone to the chase.¹⁸

Now there were some windows in the King's palace commanding a view of his garden; and while his brother was looking out from one of these, a door of the palace was opened, and there came forth from it twenty females and twenty male black slaves; and the King's wife, who was distinguished by extraordinary beauty and elegance,¹⁹ accompanied them to a fountain, where they all disrobed themselves, and sat down together. The King's wife then called out, O Mes'ood!²⁰ and immediately a black slave came to her, and embraced her; she doing the like. So also did the other slaves and the women; and all of them continued revelling together until the close of the day. When Sháh-Zemán beheld this spectacle, he said within himself, By Allah! my affliction is lighter than this! His vexation and grief were alleviated, and he no longer abstained from sufficient food and drink.

When his brother returned from his excursion, and they had



saluted each other, and King Shahriyár observed his brother Sháh-Zemán, that his colour had returned, that his face had recovered the flush of health, and that he ate with appetite, after his late abstinence, he was surprised, and said, O my brother, when I saw thee last, thy countenance was sallow, and now thy colour hath returned to thee : acquaint me with thy state.—As to the change of my natural complexion, answered Sháh-Zemán, I will inform thee of its cause ; but excuse my explaining to thee the return of my colour.—First, said Shahriyár, relate to me the cause of the change of thy proper complexion, and of thy weakness : let me hear it.—Know then, O my brother, he answered, that when thou sentest thy Wezeer to me to invite me to thy presence, I prepared myself for the journey, and when I had gone forth from the city, I remembered that I had left behind me the jewel that I have given thee ; I therefore returned to my palace for it, and there I found my wife sleeping in my bed, and attended by a black male slave ; and I killed them both, and came to thee : but my mind was occupied by reflections upon this affair, and this was the cause of the change of my complexion, and of my weakness : now, as to the return of my colour, excuse my informing thee of its cause.—But when his brother heard these words, he said, I conjure thee by Allah that thou acquaint me with the cause of the return of thy colour :—so he repeated to him all that he had seen. I would see this, said Shahriyár, with my own eye.—Then, said Shán-Zemán, give out that thou art going again to the chase, and conceal thyself here with me, and thou shalt witness this conduct, and obtain ocular proof of it.

Shahriyár, upon this, immediately announced that it was his intention to make another excursion. The troops went out of the city

with the tents, and the King followed them ; and after he had reposed awhile in the camp, he said to his servants, Let no one come in to me :—and he disguised himself, and returned to his brother in the palace, and sat in one of the windows overlooking the garden ; and when he had been there a short time, the women and their mistress entered the garden with the black slaves, and did as his brother had described, continuing so until the hour of the afternoon-prayer.

When King Shahriyár beheld this occurrence, reason fled from his head, and he said to his brother Sháh-Zemán, Arise, and let us travel whither we please, and renounce the regal state, until we see whether such a calamity as this have befallen any other person like unto us ; and if not, our death will be preferable to our life. His brother agreed to his proposal, and they went out from a private door of the palace, and journeyed continually, days and nights, until they arrived at a tree in the midst of a meadow, by a spring of water, on the shore of the sea. They drank of this spring, and sat down to rest ; and when the day had a little advanced, the sea became troubled



before them, and there arose from it a black pillar, ascending towards the sky, and approaching the meadow. Struck with fear at the sight, they climbed up into the tree, which was lofty ; and thence they gazed to see what this might be : and behold, it was a Jinnee,²¹ of gigantic stature, broad-fronted and bulky, bearing on his head a chest.²² He landed, and came to the tree into which the two Kings had climbed, and, having seated himself beneath it, opened the chest, and took out of it another box, which he also opened ; and there came forth from it a young woman, fair and beautiful, like the shining sun. When the Jinnee cast his eyes upon her, he said, O lady of noble race, whom I carried off on thy wedding-night, I have a desire to sleep a little :—and he placed his head upon her knee, and slept. The damsel then



raised her head towards the tree, and saw there the two Kings; upon which she removed the head of the Jinnee from her knee, and, having placed it on the ground, stood under the tree, and made signs to the two Kings, as though she would say, Come down, and fear not this 'Efreet.²³ They answered her, We conjure thee by Allah that thou excuse us in this matter. But she said, I conjure you by the same that ye come down; and if ye do not, I will rouse this 'Efreet, and he shall put you to a cruel death. So, being afraid, they came down to her; and, after they had remained with her as long as she required, she took from her pocket a purse, and drew out from this a string, upon which were ninety-eight seal-rings;²⁴ and she said to them, Know ye what are these? They answered, We know not.—The owners of these rings, said she, have, all of them, been admitted to converse with me, like as ye have, unknown to this foolish 'Efreet; therefore, give me your two rings,²⁵ ye brothers. So they gave her their two rings from their fingers; and she then said to them, This 'Efreet carried me off on my wedding-night, and put me in the box, and placed the box in the chest, and affixed to the chest seven locks, and deposited me, thus imprisoned, in the bottom of the roaring sea, beneath the dashing waves; not knowing that, when one of our sex desires to accomplish any object, nothing can prevent her. In accordance with this, says one of the poets:—

Never trust in women, nor rely upon their vows;
 For their pleasure and displeasure depend upon their passions
 They offer a false affection, for perfidy lurks within their clothing
 By the tale of Yoosuf²⁶ be admonished, and guard against their stratagems.
 Dost thou not consider that Iblees ejected Adam by means of woman?

And another poet says.—

Abstain from censure; for it will strengthen the censured, and increase desire
 into violent passion.
 If I suffer such passion, my case is but the same as that of many a man before
 me
 For greatly indeed to be wondered at is he who hath kept himself safe from
 women's artifice.²⁷

When the two Kings heard these words from her lips, they were struck with the utmost astonishment, and said, one to the other, If this is an 'Efreet, and a greater calamity hath happened unto him than that which hath befallen us, this is a circumstance that should console us:—and immediately they departed, and returned to the city. As soon as they had entered the palace, Shahryár caused his wife to be beheaded, and in like manner the women and black slaves;

and thenceforth he made it his regular custom, every time that he took a virgin to his bed, to kill her at the expiration of the night. Thus he continued to do during a period of three years; and the people raised an outcry against him, and fled with their daughters, and there remained not a virgin in the city of a sufficient age for marriage.²⁸ Such was the case when the King ordered the Wezeer to bring him a virgin according to his custom; and the Wezeer went forth and searched, and found none; and he went back to his house enraged and vexed, fearing what the King might do to him.

Now the Wezeer had two daughters; the elder of whom was named Shahrazád; and the younger, Dunyázád. The former had read various books of histories, and the lives of preceding kings, and stories of past generations. it is asserted that she had collected together a thousand books of histories, relating to preceding generations and kings, and works of the poets: and she said to her father on this occasion, Why do I see thee thus changed, and oppressed with solicitude and sorrows? It has been said by one of the poets:—

Tell him who is oppressed with anxiety, that anxiety will not last
As happiness passeth away, so passeth away anxiety

When the Wezeer heard these words from his daughter, he related to her all that had happened to him with regard to the King: upon which she said, By Allah, O my father, give me in marriage to this King: either I shall die, and be a ransom for one of the daughters of the Muslims, or I shall live, and be the cause of their deliverance from him.²⁹—I conjure thee by Allah, exclaimed he, that thou expose not thyself to such peril:—but she said, It must be so. Then, said he, I fear for thee that the same will befall thee that happened in the case of the ass and the bull and the husbandman.—And what, she asked, was that, O my father.

Know, O my daughter, said the Wezeer, that there was a certain merchant, who possessed wealth and cattle, and had a wife and children; and God, whose name be exalted, had also endowed him with the knowledge of the languages of beasts and birds.³⁰ The abode of this merchant was in the country; and he had, in his house, an ass and a bull.³¹ When the bull came to the place where the ass was tied, he found it swept and sprinkled;³² in his manger were sifted barley and sifted cut straw,³³ and the ass was lying at his ease; his master being accustomed only to ride him occasionally, when business required, and soon to return: and it happened, one



day, that the merchant overheard the bull saying to the ass, May thy food benefit thee !³⁴ I am oppressed with fatigue, while thou art enjoying repose : thou catest sifted barley, and men serve thee ; and it is only occasionally that thy master rides thee, and returns ; while I am continually employed in ploughing, and turning the mill.³⁵—The ass answered,³⁶ When thou goest out to the field, and they place the yoke upon thy neck, lie down, and do not rise again, even if they beat thee ; or, if thou rise, lie down a second time ; and when they take thee back, and place the beans before thee, eat them not, as though thou wert sick : abstain from eating and drinking a day, or two days, or three ; and so shalt thou find rest from trouble and labour.—Accordingly, when the driver came to the bull with his fodder, he ate scarcely any of it ; and on the morrow, when the driver came again to take him to plough, he found him apparently quite infirm : so the merchant said, Take the ass, and make him draw the plough in his stead all the day. The man did so ; and when the ass returned at the close of the day, the bull thanked him for the



favour he had conferred upon him by relieving him of his trouble on that day ; but the ass returned him no answer, for he repented most grievously. On the next day, the ploughman came again, and took the ass, and ploughed with him till evening ; and the ass returned with his neck flayed by the yoke, and reduced to an extreme state of weakness ; and the bull looked upon him, and thanked and praised him. The ass exclaimed, I was living at ease, and nought but my meddling hath injured me ! Then said he to the bull, Know that I am one who would give thee good advice : I heard our master say, If the bull rise not from his place, take him to the butcher, that he may kill him, and make a *naṭa*³⁷ of his skin :—I am therefore in fear for thee, and so I have given thee advice ; and peace be on thee !—When the bull heard these words of the ass, he thanked him, and said, To-morrow I will go with alacrity :—so he ate the whole of his fodder, and even licked the manger.—Their master, meanwhile, was listening to their conversation.

On the following morning, the merchant and his wife went to the bull's crib, and sat down there ; and the driver came, and took out the bull ; and when the bull saw his master, he shook his tail, and showed his alacrity by sounds and actions, bounding about in such a manner that the merchant laughed until he fell backwards. His wife, in surprise, asked him, At what dost thou laugh ? He answered, At a thing that I have heard and seen ; but I cannot reveal it ; for if I did, I should die. She said, Thou must inform me of the cause of thy laughter, even if thou die.—I cannot reveal it, said he : the fear of death prevents me.—Thou laughedst only at *me*, she said ; and she ceased not to urge and importune him until he was quite overcome and distracted. So he called together his children, and sent for the *Kādee*³⁸ and witnesses, that he might make his will, and reveal the secret to her, and die : for he loved her excessively, since she was the daughter of his paternal uncle, and the mother of his children, and he had lived with her to the age of a hundred and twenty years.³⁹ Having assembled her family and his neighbours, he related to them his story, and told them that as soon as he revealed his secret he must die ; upon which every one present said to her, We conjure thee by Allah that thou give up this affair, and let not thy husband,



and the father of thy children, die. But she said, I will not desist until he tell me, though he die for it. So they ceased to solicit her; and the merchant left them, and went to the stable to perform the ablution, and then to return, and tell them the secret, and die.⁴⁰

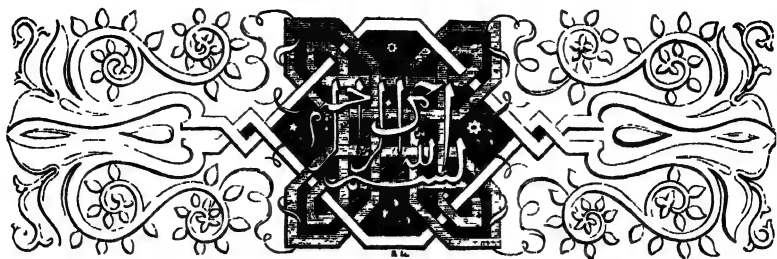
Now he had a cock, with fifty hens under him, and he had also a dog; and he heard the dog call to the cock, and reproach him, saying, Art thou happy when our master is going to die? The cock asked, How so?—and the dog related to him the story; upon which the cock exclaimed, By Allah! our master has little sense: *I have fifty wives*; and I please this, and provoke that; while *he* has but *one* wife, and cannot manage this affair with her: why does he not take some twigs of the mulberry-tree, and enter her chamber, and beat her until she dies or repents? She would never, after that, ask him a question respecting anything.—And when the merchant heard the words of the cock, as he addressed the dog, he recovered his reason, and made up his mind to beat her.—Now, said the Wezeer to his daughter Shahrazád, perhaps I may do to thee as the merchant did to his wife. She asked, And what did he? He answered, He entered her chamber, after he had cut off some twigs of the mulberry-tree, and hidden them there; and then said to her, Come into the chamber, that I may tell thee the secret while no one sees me, and then die:—and when she had entered, he locked the chamber-door upon her, and beat her until she became almost senseless and cried out, I repent:—and she kissed his hands and his feet, and repented, and went out with him; and all the company, and her own family, rejoiced; and they lived together in the happiest manner until death.

When the Wezeer's daughter heard the words of her father, she said to him, It must be as I have requested. So he arrayed her, and went to the King Shahríyár. Now she had given directions to her young sister, saying to her, When I have gone to the King, I will send to request thee to come; and when thou comest to me, and seest a convenient time, do thou say to me, O my sister, relate to me some strange story to beguile our waking hour:⁴¹—and I will relate to thee a story that shall, if it be the will of God, be the means of procuring deliverance.

Her father, the Wezeer, then took her to the King, who, when

he saw him, was rejoiced, and said, Hast thou brought me what I desired? He answered, Yes. When the King, therefore, introduced himself to her, she wept; and he said to her, What aileth thee? She answered, O King, I have a young sister, and I wish to take leave of her. So the King sent to her; and she came to her sister, and embraced her, and sat near the foot of the bed; and after she had waited for a proper opportunity, she said, By Allah! O my sister, relate to us a story to beguile the waking hour of our night. Most willingly, answered Shahrazád, if this virtuous King permit me. And the King, hearing these words, and being restless, was pleased with the idea of listening to the story; and thus, on the first night of the thousand and one, Shahrazád commenced her recitations.





NOTES TO THE INTRODUCTION.

NOTE 1.—*On the Initial Phrase, and on the Mohammadan Religion and Laws* It is a universal custom of the Muslims to write this phrase at the commencement of every book, whatever may be the subject, and to pronounce it on commencing every lawful act of any importance. This they do in imitation of the Kur-án (every chapter of which, excepting one, is thus prefaced), and in accordance with a precept of their Prophet. The words which I translate “Compassionate” and “Merciful” are both derived from the same root, and have nearly the same meaning, the one being of a form which is generally used to express an accidental or occasional passion or sensation; the other, to denote a constant quality. but the most learned of the ‘Ulamà (or professors of religion and law, &c.) interpret the former as signifying “Merciful in great things;” and the latter, “Merciful in small things.” Sale has erred in rendering them, conjunctly, “Most merciful.”

In the books of the Muslims, the first words, after the above phrase, almost always consist (as in the work before us) of some form of praise and thanksgiving to God for his power and goodness, followed by an invocation of blessing on the Prophet; and in general, when the author is not very concise in these expressions, he conveys in them some allusion to the subject of his book. For instance, if he write on marriage, he will commence his work with some such form as this (after the phrase first mentioned)—“Praise be to God, who hath created the human race, and made them males and females,” &c.

The exordium of the present work, showing the duty imposed upon a Muslim by his religion, even on the occasion of his commencing the composition or compilation of a series of fictions, suggests to me the necessity of inserting a brief prefatory notice of the fundamental points of his faith, and the principal laws of the ritual and moral, the civil, and the criminal code, leaving more full explanations of particular points to be given when occasions shall require such illustrations.

The confession of the Muslim's faith is briefly made in these words —“There is no deity but God. Mohammad is God's Apostle.”—which imply a belief and observance of everything that Mohammad taught to be the word or will of God. In the opinion of those who are commonly called orthodox, and termed “Sunnees” (the only class whom we have to consider, for they are Sunnee tenets and Arab manners which are described in this work in almost every case, wherever the scene is laid), the Mohammadan code is founded upon the Kur-án, the Traditions of the Prophet, the concordance of his principal early disciples, and the decisions which have been framed from analogy or comparison. This class consists of four sects, Hanafees, Sháfíees, Málíkees, and Hambelees, so called after the names of their respective founders. The other sects,

who are called "Shiya'ees" (an appellation particularly given to the Persian sect, but also used to designate generally all who are not Sunnees), are regarded by their opponents in general nearly in the same light as those who do not profess El-Islám (or the Mohammadan faith), that is, as destined to eternal or severe punishment.

The Mohammadan faith embraces the following points

1. Belief in God, who is without beginning or end, the sole Creator and Lord of the universe, having absolute power, and knowledge, and glory, and perfection.

2. Belief in his Angels, who are impeccable beings, created of light, and Genii (Jinn), who are peccable, created of smokeless fire. The Devils, whose chief is Ibليس, or Satan, are evil Genu.

3. Belief in his Scriptures, which are his uncreated word, revealed to his prophets. Of these there now exist, but held to be greatly corrupted, the Pentateuch of Moses, the Psalms of David, and the Gospels of Jesus Christ, and, in an uncorrupted and incorruptible state, the Kur-án, which is held to have abrogated, and to surpass in excellence, all preceding revelations.

4. Belief in his Prophets and Apostles,¹ the most distinguished of whom are Adam, Noah, Abraham, Moses, Jesus, and Mohammad. Jesus is held to be more excellent than any of those who preceded him; to have been born of a virgin, and to be the Messiah, and the word of God, and a Spirit proceeding from Him, but not partaking of his essence, and not to be called the Son of God. Mohammad is held to be more excellent than all; the last and greatest of prophets and apostles, the most excellent of the creatures of God.

5. Belief in the general resurrection and judgment, and in future rewards and punishments, chiefly of a corporeal nature, that the punishments will be eternal to all but wicked Mohammadans, and that none but Mohammadans will enter into a state of happiness.

6. Belief in God's predestination of all events, both good and evil.

The principal Ritual and Moral Laws are on the following subjects, of which the first four are the most important.

1. Prayer (*es-saláh*, commonly pronounced *es-salah*), including preparatory purifications. There are partial or total washings to be performed on particular occasions which need not be mentioned. The ablution which is more especially preparatory to prayer (and which is called *wudoó*) consists in washing the hands, mouth, nostrils, face, arms (as high as the elbow, the right first), each three times, and then the upper part of the head, the beard, ears, neck, and feet, each once. This is done with running water, or from a very large tank, or from a lake, or the sea.—Prayers are required to be performed five times in the course of every day; between daybreak and sunrise, between noon and the 'asr (which latter period is about mid-time between noon and nightfall), between the 'asr and sunset, between sunset and the 'eshè (or the period when the darkness of night commences), and at, or after, the 'eshè. The commencement of each of these periods is announced by a chant (called *adán*), repeated by a crier (*mueddín*) from the *má'd'neh*, or menaret, of each mosque, and it is more meritorious to commence the prayer then than at a later time. On each of these occasions, the Muslim has to perform certain prayers held to be ordained by God, and others ordained by the Prophet, each kind consisting of two, three, or four "*rek'ahs*;" which term signifies the repetition of a set form of words, chiefly from the Kur-án, and ejaculations of "God is most Great!" &c., accompanied by particular postures; part of the words being repeated in an erect posture; part, sitting; and part, in other postures. an inclination of the head and body, followed by two prostrations, distinguishing each *rek'ah*. These prayers may in some cases be abridged, and in others entirely omitted. Other prayers must be performed on particular occasions. 1 On Friday, the Mohammadan Sabbath. These are congregational prayers, and are similar to those of other

¹ An Apostle is distinguished from a mere Prophet by his having a *book* revealed to him.

days, with additional prayers and exhortations by a minister, who is called *Inám*, or *Khateeb* 2 On two grand annual festivals 3 On the nights of *Ramadán*, the month of abstinence. 4 On the occasion of an eclipse of the sun or moon 5 For rain 6 Previously to the commencement of battle 7 In pilgrimage 8 At funerals

2. Alms-giving An alms, called "*zekáh*," commonly pronounced "*zekah*," is required by law to be given annually, to the poor, of camels, oxen (bulls and cows), and buffaloes, sheep and goats, horses and mules and asses, and gold and silver (whether in money or in vessels, ornaments, &c), provided the property be of a certain amount, as five camels, thirty oxen, forty sheep, five horses, two hundred dirhems, or twenty *deenárs*. The proportion is generally one-fortieth, which is to be paid in kind, or in money, or other equivalent

3 Fasting (*es-siyám*) The Muslim must abstain from eating and drinking, and from every indulgence of the senses, every day during the month of *Ramadán*, from the first appearance of daybreak until sunset, unless physically incapacitated —On the first day of the following month, a festival, called the Minor Festival, is observed with public prayer, and with general rejoicing, which continues three days

4 Pilgrimage (*el-hajj*) It is incumbent on the Muslim, if able, to perform, at least once in his life, the pilgrimage to *Mekkeh* and Mount '*Arafát*' The principal ceremonies of the pilgrimage are completed on the 9th of the month of *Zu-l-Hejjah* on the following day, which is the first of the Great Festival, on the return from '*Arafát*' to *Mekkeh*, the pilgrims who are able to do so perform a sacrifice, and every other Muslim who can is required to do the same part of the meat of the victim he should eat, and the rest he should give to the poor This festival is observed otherwise in a similar manner to the minor one, above mentioned, and lasts three or four days.

The less important ritual and moral laws may here be briefly mentioned in a single paragraph —One of these is circumcision, which is not absolutely obligatory —The distinctions of clean and unclean meats are nearly the same in the Mohammedan as in the Mosaic code Camels' flesh is an exception, being lawful to the Muslim Swine's flesh, and blood, are especially condemned, and a particular mode of slaughtering animals for food is enjoined, accompanied by the repetition of the name of God —Wine and all intoxicating liquors are strictly forbidden —So also are gaming and usury —Music is condemned, but most Muslims take great delight in hearing it —Images and pictures representing living creatures are contrary to law —Charity, probity in all transactions, veracity (excepting in a few cases), and modesty, are virtues indispensable —Cleanliness in person, and decent attire, are particularly required Clothes of silk, and ornaments of gold or silver, are forbidden to men, but allowed to women this precept, however, is often disregarded —Utensils of gold and silver are also condemned yet they are used by many Muslims —The manners of Muslims in society are subject to particular laws or rules, with respect to salutations, &c

Of the Civil Laws, the following notices will at present suffice —A man may have four wives at the same time, and, according to common opinion, as many concubine slaves as he pleases —He may divorce a wife twice, and each time take her back again, but if he divorce her a third time, or by a triple sentence, he cannot make her his wife again unless by her own consent, and by a new contract, and after another man has consummated a marriage with her, and divorced her —The children by a wife and those by a concubine slave inherit equally, if the latter be acknowledged by the father Sons inherit equally so also do daughters, but the share of a daughter is half that of a son. One-eighth is the share of the wife or wives of the deceased if he have left issue, and one-fourth if he have left no issue A husband inherits one-fourth of his wife's property if she have left issue, and one-half if she have left no issue The debts and legacies of the deceased must be first paid A man may leave one-third of his property in any way he pleases —When a concubine slave has borne a child to her master, she becomes entitled to freedom on his death.—There are particular laws relating to commerce. Usury and monopoly are especially condemned.

Of the Criminal Laws, a few only need here be mentioned Murder is punishable by death, or by a fine to be paid to the family of the deceased, if they prefer it—Theft, if the property stolen amount to a quarter of a *deenár*, is to be punished by cutting off the right hand, except under certain circumstances—Adultery, if attested by four eye-witnesses, is punishable by death (stoning) fornication, by a hundred stripes, and banishment for a year.—Drunkenness is punished with eighty stripes—Apostasy, per-severed in, by death

NOTE 2—On the *Arabian System of Cosmography* The words translated “as a bed” would be literally rendered “and the bed,” but the signification is that which I have expressed (See the *Kur-án*, ch lxxvii v 6, and, with respect to what is before said of the heavens, idem, ch xiii v 2³) These, and the preceding words, commencing with “the Beneficent King,” I have introduced (in the place of “the Lord of all creatures”) from the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred nights, as affording me an opportunity to explain here the Arabian system of Cosmography, with which the reader of this work cannot be too early acquainted

When we call to mind how far the Arabs surpassed their great master, Aristotle, in natural and experimental philosophy, and remember that their brilliant discoveries constituted an important link between those of the illustrious Greek and of our equally illustrious countryman, Roger Bacon, their popular system of cosmography becomes an interesting subject for our consideration

According to the common opinion of the Arabs (an opinion sanctioned by the *Kur-án*, and by assertions of their Prophet, which almost all Muslims take in their literal sense), there are Seven Heavens, one above another, and Seven Earths, one beneath another, the earth which we inhabit being the highest of the latter, and next below the lowest heaven The upper surface of each heaven, and that of each earth, are believed to be nearly plane, and are generally supposed to be circular, and are said to be five hundred years’ journey in width This is also said to be the measure of the depth or thickness of each heaven and each earth, and of the distance between each heaven or earth and that next above or below it This is explained a passage of the *Kur-án*, (ch lxy last verse), in which it is said, that God hath created seven heavens and as many earths, or stories of the earth, in accordance with traditions from the Prophet²—This notion of the seven heavens appears to have been taken from the “seven spheres,” the first of which is that of the Moon, the second, of Mercury, the third, of Venus, the fourth, of the Sun, the fifth, of Mars, the sixth, of Jupiter, and the seventh, of Saturn, each of which orbs was supposed to revolve round the earth in its proper sphere So also the idea of the seven earths seems to have been taken from the division of the earth into seven climates, a division which has been adopted by several Arab geographers—But to return to the opinions of the religious and the vulgar.

Traditions differ respecting the *fabric* of the seven heavens. In the most credible account, according to a celebrated historian, the first is described as formed of emerald, the second, of white silver, the third, of large white pearls, the fourth, of ruby; the fifth, of red gold; the sixth, of yellow jacinth, and the seventh, of shining light⁴

² In quoting the *Kur-án*, I distinguish the verses in accordance with the numbers in Flügel’s excellent edition of the original text 4to Lipsæ 1834. These numbers agree (excepting in a few cases, where a disagreement was found absolutely necessary) with those in Hinckelmann’s edition, which is that most commonly quoted by the learned. I am sorry to see that Marracci’s numbers have been adopted in a late edition of Sale’s translation, and that the distinction between the words of the text and the explanatory interpolations has there been

neglected Its utility to Arabic scholars, and its general fidelity, have been thus greatly lessened; and it appears to me very desirable that it should be superseded as soon as possible by another edition

³ Mohammad’s answers to ‘Abd-Allah Ibn-Selâm, quoted by Ibn-El-Wardee (MS in my possession), and Mek-hool, quoted by the same author, and *Mishkât el-Masabeeh*, vol ii pp 652 and 653

⁴ Ibn-Esh-Shehnch (MS in my possession).

Some assert Paradise to be in the seventh heaven, and, indeed, I have found this to be the general opinion of my Muslim friends but the author above quoted proceeds to describe, next above the seventh heaven, seven seas of light, then, an undefined number of veils, or separations, of different substances, seven of each kind; and then, Paradise, which consists of seven stages, one above another; the first (Dár el-Jelál, or the Mansion of Glory), of white pearls, the second (Dár es-Selám, or the Mansion of Peace), of ruby, the third (Jennet el-Ma-wà, or the Garden of Rest), of green chrysolite, the fourth (Jennet el-Khuld, or the Garden of Eternity), of green⁵ coral, the fifth (Jennet en-Na'cem, or the Garden of Delight), of white silver, the sixth (Jennet el-Firdós, or the Garden of Paradise), of red gold, and the seventh (Jennet 'Adn, or the Garden of Perpetual Abode, or—of Eden), of large pearls, thus overlooking all the former, and canopied by the Throne, or rather Empyrean, of the Compassionate ('Arsh Er-Rahmán), i. e. of God—These several regions of Paradise are described in some traditions as forming so many degrees, or stages, ascended by steps.

Though the opinion before mentioned respecting the form of the earth which we inhabit is that generally maintained by the Arabs, there have been, and still are, many philosophical men among this people who have argued that it is a globe, because, as El-Kazwencee says, an eclipse of the moon has been observed to happen at different hours of the night in eastern and western countries. Thus we find Ptolemy's measurement of the earth quoted and explained by Ibn-El-Wardee—The circumference of the earth is 21,000 miles, or 8,000 leagues, the league being three miles, the mile, 3,000 royal cubits, the cubit, three spans, the span, twelve digits, the digit, five barley-corns placed side by side, and the width of the barley-corn, six mule's-hairs. El Makreezee also, among the more intelligent Arabs, describes⁶ the globular form of the earth, and its arctic and antarctic regions, with their day of six months, and night of six months, and their frozen waters, &c.

For ourselves, however, it is necessary that we retain in our minds the opinions first stated, with regard to the form and dimensions of our earth, agreeing with those Muslims who allow not philosophy to trench upon revelation or sacred traditions. It is written, say they, that God hath "spread out the earth,"⁷ "as a bed,"⁸ and "as a carpet,"⁹ and what is round or globular cannot be said to be spread out, nor compared to a bed, or a carpet. It is therefore decided to be an almost plane expanse. The continents and islands of the earth are believed by the Arabs (as they were by the Greeks in the age of Homer and Hesiod) to be surrounded by "the Circumambient Ocean," "el-Bahr el-Moheet," and this ocean is described as bounded by a chain of mountains called Káf, which encircle the whole as a ring, and confine and strengthen the entire fabric. With respect to the extent of the earth, our faith must at least admit the assertion of the Prophet, that its width (as well as its depth or thickness) is equal to five hundred years' journey allotting the space of two hundred to the sea, two hundred to uninhabited desert, eighty to the country of Yájooj and Májooj (or Gog and Magog), and the rest to the remaining creatures.¹⁰ nay, vast as these limits are, we must rather extend than contract them, unless we suppose some of the heroes of this work to travel by circuitous routes. Another tradition will suit us better, wherein it is said, that the inhabited portion of the earth is, with respect to the rest, as a tent in the midst of a desert.¹¹ But even according to the former assertion, it will be remarked, that the countries now commonly known to the Arabs (from the western extremity of Africa to the eastern limits of India, and from the southern confines of Abyssinia to those of Russia,) occupy a comparatively insignificant portion of this

⁵ In another MS of the same author in my possession, "yellow."

⁶ In his "Khitāṭ" (MS in my possession).

⁷ Kur-án, ch. xlii v. 3, and several other places.

⁸ Idem, ch. li v. 20, and ch. lxxviii. v. 6.

⁹ Idem, ch. lxxi v. 18.

¹⁰ Mek-hool, quoted by Ibn-El-Wardee.

¹¹ Wabḥ Ibn-Munabbih, quoted by El-Makreezee, in his "Khitāṭ."

expanse They are situated in the middle; Mekkeh, according to some,—or Jerusalem, according to others,—being exactly in the centre. Adjacent to the tract occupied by these countries are other lands and seas, partially known to the Arabs. On the north-west, with respect to the central point, lies the country of the Christians, or Franks, comprising the principal European nations, on the north, the country of Yájoq and Májoq, before mentioned, occupying, in the maps of the Arabs, large tracts of Asia and Europe, on the north-east, central Asia, on the east, Eş-Seen (or China), on the south-east, the sea, or seas, of El-Hind (or India), and Ez-Zinj (or Southern Ethiopia), the waves of which (or of the former of which) mingle with those of the sea of Eş-Seen, beyond; on the south, the country of the Zinj, on the south-west, the country of the Soodán, or Blacks on the west is a portion of the Circumambient Ocean, which surrounds all the countries and seas already mentioned, as well as immense unknown regions adjoining the former, and innumerable islands interspersed in the latter. These *terra incognita* are the scenes of some of the greatest wonders described in the present work, and are mostly peopled with Jinn, or Genu. On the Moheet, or Circumambient Ocean, is the 'Arsh Iblees, or Throne of Iblees in a map accompanying my copy of the work of Ibn-El-Wardee, a large yellow tract is marked with this name, adjoining Southern Africa. The western portion of the Moheet is often called "the Sea of Darkness" (Bahr *er*-Zulumát, or, *—er*-Zulmeh). Under this name (and the synonymous appellation of el-Bahr el-Muzlm) the Atlantic Ocean is described by the author just mentioned; though, in the introduction to his work, he says that the Sea of Darkness surrounds the Moheet. The former may be considered either as the western or the more remote portion of the latter. In the dark regions (Ez-Zulumát, from which, perhaps, the above-mentioned portion of the Moheet takes its name),¹² in the south-west quarter of the earth, according to the same author, is the Fountain of Life, of which El-Khidr drank, and by virtue of which he still lives, and will live till the day of judgment. This mysterious person, whom the vulgar and some others regard as a prophet, and identify with Ilyás (Elias, or Elijah), and whom some confound with St George, was, according to the more approved opinion of the learned, a just man, or saint, the Wezeer and counsellor of the first Zu-l-Karneyn, who was a universal conqueror, but an equally doubtful personage, contemporary with the patriarch Ibráheem, or Abraham. El-Khidr is said to appear frequently to Muslims in perplexity, and to be generally clad in green garments, whence, according to some, his name. The Prophet Ilyás (or Elias) is also related to have drunk of the Fountain of Life. During the day-time, it is said, El-Khidr wanders upon the seas, and directs voyagers who go astray, while Ilyás perambulates the mountains or deserts, and directs persons who chance to be led astray by the Ghools.¹³ but at night, they meet together, and guard the rampart of Yájoq and Májoq,¹⁴ to prevent these people from making irruptions upon their neighbours. Both, however, are generally believed by the modern Muslims to assist pious persons in distress in various circumstances, whether travelling by land or by water.—The mountains of Káf, which bound the Circumambient Ocean, and form a circular barrier round the whole of our earth, are described by interpreters of the Kur-án as composed of green chrysolite, like the green tint of the sky.¹⁵ It is the colour of these mountains, said the Prophet, that imparts a greenish hue to the sky.¹⁶ It is said, in a tradition, that beyond these mountains are other countries, one of gold, seventy of silver, and seven of musk, all inhabited by angels, and each country ten thousand years' journey in length, and the same in breadth.¹⁷ Some say that

¹² Ibn-El-Wardee, however, says that its name is derived from its terrors and difficulties

¹³ These are monsters who will be described in a subsequent note

¹⁴ History of El-Khidr in the "Mir-át ez-Zemân"

(MS in my possession), a great history, whose author died in the year of the Flight 656

¹⁵ El-Kazweene (MS in my possession).

¹⁶ Mohammad's answers to 'Abd-Allah Ibn-Salam, quoted by Ibn-El-Wardee

¹⁷ Ibid

beyond it are creatures unknown to any but God ¹⁸ but the general opinion is, that the mountains of Káf terminate our earth, and that no one knows what is beyond them. They are the chief abode of the Jinn, or Genui.—Such is a concise account of the earth which we inhabit, according to the notions of the Arabs

We must now describe what is *beneath* our earth —It has already been said, that this is the first, or highest, of seven earths, which are all of equal width and thickness, and at equal distances apart. Each of these earths has occupants. The occupants of the first are men, genui, brutes, &c. the second is occupied by the suffocating wind that destroyed the infidel tribe of 'Ád the third, by the stones of Jahennem (or Hell), mentioned in the Kur-án, in these words, "the fuel of which is men and stones" ¹⁹ the fourth, by the sulphur of Jahennem the fifth, by its serpents the sixth, by its scorpions, in colour and size like black mules, and with tails like spears the seventh, by Ibrees and his troops ²⁰ Whether these several earths are believed to be connected with each other by any means, and if so, how, we are not expressly informed, but, that they are supposed to be so is evident. With respect to our earth in particular, as some think, it is said that it is supported by a rock, with which the mountains of Káf communicate by means of veins or roots, and that, when God desires to effect an earthquake at a certain place, He commands the mountain [or rock] to agitate the vein that is connected with that place ²¹—But there is another account, describing our earth as upheld by certain successive supports of inconceivable magnitude, which are under the seventh earth, leaving us to infer that the seven² earths are in some manner connected together. This account, as inserted in the work of one of the writers above quoted, is as follows —The earth [under which appellation are here understood the seven earths] was, it is said, originally unstable, "therefore God created an angel of immense size and of the utmost strength, and ordered him to go beneath it, [i. e. beneath the lowest earth,] and place it on his shoulders, and his hands extended beyond the east and west, and grasped the extremities of the earth [or, as related in Ibn-El-Wardee, the seven earths], and held it [or them] But there was no support for his feet so God created a rock of ruby, in which were seven thousand perforations, and from each of these perforations issued a sea, the size of which none knoweth but God, whose name he exalted then He ordered this rock to stand under the feet of the angel But there was no support for the rock wherefore God created a huge bull, with four thousand eyes, and the same number of ears, noses, mouths, tongues, and feet, between every two of which was a distance of five hundred years' journey and God, whose name he exalted, ordered this bull to go beneath the rock. and he bore it on his back and his horns. The name of this bull is Kuyoota ²² But there was no support for the bull therefore God, whose name he exalted, created an enormous fish, that no one could look upon, on account of its vast size, and the flashing of its eyes and their greatness, for it is said that if all the seas were placed in one of its nostrils, they would appear like a grain of mustard-seed in the midst of a desert and God, whose name he exalted, commanded the fish to be a support to the feet of the bull ²³ The name of this fish is Bahamoot. He placed, as its support, water, and under the water, darkness and the knowledge of mankind

¹⁸ El-Kazweenee

¹⁹ Kur-án, ch. ii. v. 22, and ch. lxvi. v. 6

²⁰ Mir-át ez-Zemán

²¹ Tradition from the Prophet, recorded by Ibn-'Abbás, and quoted by Ibn-El-Wardee, and by El-Is-hákee, in describing an earthquake that happened in his life-time —On the subject of earthquakes, see also the next foot-note

²² In Ibn-El-Is-hákeh, "Kuyoothán" the orthography of this word is doubtful, as the vowel-points are not written. As the tradition is related

in Ibn-El-Wardee, this bull takes a breath twice in the course of every day (or twenty-four hours) when he exhales, the sea flows, and when he inhales, it ebbs. But it must not be imagined that none of the Arabs have any notion of the true theory of the tides the more learned among them explain this phenomenon by the influence of the moon —Many of the Arabs attribute earthquakes to the shaking of this bull

²³ In Ibn-El-Wardee, a quantity of sand is introduced between the bull and the fish.

fails as to what is under the darkness" ²⁴—Another opinion is, that the [seventh] earth is upon water, the water, upon the rock; the rock, on the back of the bull; the bull, on a bed of sand, the sand, on the fish; the fish, upon a still, suffocating wind; the wind, on a veil of darkness; the darkness, on a mist; and what is beneath the mist is unknown. ²⁵

It is generally believed, that, under the lowest earth, and beneath seas of darkness of which the number is unknown, is Hell, which consists of seven stages, one beneath another. The first of these, according to the general opinion, is destined for the reception of wicked Mohammadans, the second, for the Christians; the third, for the Jews; the fourth, for the Sabians, the fifth, for the Magians, the sixth, for the Idolaters, the seventh, by general consent, for the Hypocrites "Jahennem" is the general name for Hell, and the particular name for its first stage. The situation of Hell has been a subject of dispute, some place it in the seventh earth, and some have doubted whether it be above or below the earth which *we* inhabit.

At the consummation of all things, God, we are told, will take the whole earth in his [left] hand, and the heavens will be rolled together in his right hand, ²⁶ and the earth will be changed into another earth, and the heavens [into other heavens], ²⁷ and Hell will be brought nigh [to the tribunal of God] ²⁸

NOTE 3 The phrase "God is all-knowing," or "surpassing in knowledge," or, as some say, simply "knowing," is generally used by an Arab writer when he relates anything for the truth of which he cannot vouch, and Muslims often use it in conversation, in similar cases, unless when they are uttering intentional falsehoods, which most of them are in the frequent habit of doing. It is worthy of remark, that, though falsehood is permitted by their religion in some cases, their doctors of religion and law generally condemn all works of fiction (even though designed to convey useful instruction), excepting mere fables, or apologies of a high class.

NOTE 4 In my usual standard-copy of the original work, as also in that from which the old translation was made, and in the edition of Breslau, this prince is called a king of the dynasty of Sásán, but as he is not so designated in the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred nights, I have here omitted, in my translation, what would render the whole work full of anachronisms.

NOTE 5. Shahriyár is a Persian word, signifying "Friend of the City." The name of the elder King is thus written in the Calcutta edition above mentioned in the edition of Cairo (which I generally follow) it is written Shahrabáz, by errors in diacritical marks, and in that of Breslau, Shahrabán.

NOTE 6 This name, Sháh-Zemán, is a compound of Persian and Arabic, and signifies "King of the Age." By the omission of a diacritical point, in the Cairo edition, it is written Sháh-Remán.

NOTE 7 In the Calcutta edition before mentioned, the elder brother is called King of Samarkand, and the younger, King of China.

NOTE 8—On the title and office of Wezeer. Wezeer is an Arabic word, and is pronounced by the Arabs as I have written it, but the Turks and Persians pronounce the first letter V. There are three opinions respecting the etymology of this word. Some derive it from "wizr" (a burden), because the Wezeer bears the burdens of the King. others, from "wezer" (a refuge,; because the King has recourse to the counsels of his Wezeer, and his knowledge and prudence. others, again, from "azr" (back, or

²⁴ Ed-Demeerece, on the authority of Wabib Ibn-Muneblin, quoted by El-Is-hákke, *loco laudato*

²⁵ Ibn-El-Wardee.

²⁶ Kur-án, ch xxxix v 67.

²⁷ Idem, ch xiv v 49

²⁸ Idem, ch lxxxix. v 24

strength); because the King is strengthened by his Wezeer as the human frame is by the back.²⁹

The proper and chief duties of a Wezeer are explained by the above, and by a saying of the Prophet:—"Whosoever is in authority over Muslims, if God would prosper him, He giveth him a virtuous Wezeer, who, when he forgetteth his duty, remindeth him, and when he remembereth, assisteth him; but if He would do otherwise, He giveth him an evil Wezeer, who, when he forgetteth, doth not remind him, and when he remembereth, doth not assist him."³⁰

The post of Wezeer was the highest that was held by an officer of the pen, and the person who occupied it was properly the next to the Sultán; but the Turkish Sultáns of Egypt made the office of Náib (or Viceroy) to have the pre-eminence. Under them, the post of Wezeer was sometimes occupied by an officer of the sword, and sometimes by an officer of the pen, and, in both cases, the Wezeer was also called "the Sáheb." The Sultán Barkook so degraded this office, by intrusting its most important functions to other ministers, that the Wezeer became, in reality, the King's purveyor, and little else, receiving the indirect taxes, and employing them in the purchase of provisions for the royal kitchen.³¹ It is even said, that he was usually chosen, by the Turkish Sultáns of Egypt, from among the Copts (or Christian Egyptians), because the administration of the taxes had, from time immemorial, been committed to persons of that race.³² This, it would seem, was the case about the time of the Sultán Barkook. But in the present work, we are to understand the office of Wezeer as being what it was in earlier times,—that of Prime Minister, though we are not hence to infer that the editions of the Tales of a Thousand and One Nights known to us were written at a period anterior to that of the Memlook Sultáns of Egypt and Syria, for, in the time of these monarchs, the degradation of the office was commonly known to be a recent innovation, and it may have been of no very long continuance.

NOTE 9 The paragraph to which this note relates is from the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred Nights.

NOTE 10 —*On Presents* The custom of giving presents on the occasion of paying a visit, or previously, which is of such high antiquity as to be mentioned in the book of Genesis,³³ has continued to prevail in the East to this day. Presents of provisions of some kind, wax candles, &c. are sent to a person about to celebrate any festivity, by those who are to be his guests; but after paying a mere visit of ceremony, and on some other occasions, only money is commonly given to the servants of the person visited. In either case, the latter is expected to return the compliment on a similar occasion by presents of equal value. To reject a present generally gives great offence; being regarded as an insult to him who has offered it. When a person arrives from a foreign country, he generally brings some articles of the produce or merchandise of that country as presents to his friends. Thus, pilgrims returning from the holy places bring water of Zemzem, dust from the Prophet's tomb, &c. for this purpose.—Horses, and male and female slaves, are seldom given but by kings or great men. Of the condition of slaves in Mohammedan countries, an account will be given hereafter.

NOTE 11 —*On the Letters of Muslims* The letters of Muslims are distinguished by several peculiarities dictated by the rules of politeness. The paper is thick, white and highly polished; sometimes it is ornamented with flowers of gold, and the edges are always cut straight with scissors. The upper half is generally left blank, and the writing never occupies any portion of the second side. A notion of the usual style of letters will be conveyed by several examples in this work. The name of the person to

. ²⁹ Khaleel Ez-Záhree, in De Sacy's *Chrestomathie Arabe*, 2nd ed. tome ii pp 10 and 11 of Ar. text.

³⁰ Ibid.

³¹ El Makreezee, quoted by De Sacy, *ubi supra*, pp 58-62.

³² Ibn-Ahldoon, in the same, pp 168 and 169.

³³ Ch xxxii v 14.

whom the letter is addressed, when the writer is an inferior or an equal, and even in some other cases, commonly occurs in the first sentence, preceded by several titles of honour; and is often written a little above the line to which it appertains, the space beneath it in that line being left blank sometimes it is written in letters of gold, or red ink. A king, writing to a subject, or a great man to a dependent, usually places his name and seal at the head of his letter. The seal is the impression of a signet (generally a ring, worn on the little finger of the right hand), upon which is engraved the name of the person, commonly accompanied by the words "His [i. e. God's] servant," or some other words expressive of trust in God, &c. Its impression is considered more valid than the sign-manual, and is indispensable to give authenticity to the letter. It is made by dabbing some ink upon the surface of the signet, and pressing this upon the paper the place which is to be stamped being first moistened, by touching the tongue with a finger of the right hand, and then gently rubbing the part with that finger. A person writing to a superior, or to an equal, or even an inferior to whom he wishes to shew respect, signs his name at the bottom of his letter, next the left side or corner, and places the seal immediately to the right of this but if he particularly desire to testify his humility, he places it beneath his name, or even partly over the lower edge of the paper, which consequently does not receive the whole of the impression. The letter is generally folded twice, in the direction of the writing, and enclosed in a cover of paper, upon which is written the address, in some such form as this — "It shall arrive, if it be the will of God, whose name be exalted, at such a place, and be delivered into the hand of our honoured friend, &c., such a one, whom God preserve." Sometimes it is placed in a small bag, or purse, of silk embroidered with gold.

NOTE 12 The custom of sending forth a deputation to meet and welcome an approaching ambassador, or other great man, is still observed in Eastern countries, and the rank of the persons thus employed conveys to him some intimation of the manner in which he is to be received at the court. he therefore looks forward to this ceremony with a degree of anxiety. A humorous illustration of its importance in the eye of an Oriental ambassador, is given in "The Adventures of Hajji Baba in England."

NOTE 13 — *On Hospitality.* The hospitable custom here mentioned is observed by Muslims in compliance with a precept of their Prophet. "Whoever," said he, "believes in God and the day of resurrection must respect his guest, and the time of being kind to him is one day and one night, and the period of entertaining him is three days, and after that, if he does it longer, he benefits him more, but it is not right for a guest to stay in the house of the host so long as to incommode him." He even allowed the "right of a guest" to be taken by force from such as would not offer it. The following observations, respecting the treatment of guests by the Bedawees, present an interesting commentary upon the former precept, and upon our text — "Strangers who have not any friend or acquaintance in the camp, alight at the first tent that presents itself whether the owner be at home or not, the wife or daughter immediately spreads a carpet, and prepares breakfast or dinner. If the stranger's business requires a protracted stay, as, for instance, if he wishes to cross the Desert under the protection of the tribe, the host, after a lapse of three days and four hours from the time of his arrival, asks whether he means to honour him any longer with his company. If the stranger declares his intention of prolonging his visit, it is expected that he should assist his host in domestic matters, fetching water, milking the camel, feeding the horse, &c. Should he even decline this, he may remain, but will be censured by all the Arabs of the camp. he may, however, go to some other tent of the nezel [or encampment], and declare himself there a guest. Thus, every third or fourth day he

may change hosts, until his business is finished, or he has reached his place of destination."²⁹

NOTE 14 — *On different modes of Obeisance* Various different modes of obeisance are practised by the Muslims. Among these, the following are the more common or more remarkable: they differ in the degree of respect that they indicate, nearly in the order in which I shall mention them, the last being the most respectful — 1 Placing the right hand upon the breast — 2 Touching the lips and the forehead or turban (or the forehead or turban only) with the right hand. — 3 Doing the same, but slightly inclining the head during that action — 4 The same as the preceding, but inclining the body also — 5 As above, but previously touching the ground with the right hand. — 6 Kissing the hand of the person to whom the obeisance is paid — 7. Kissing his sleeve. — 8 Kissing the skirt of his clothing — 9 Kissing his feet — 10. Kissing the carpet or ground before him — The first five modes are often accompanied by the salutation of "Peace be on you!" to which the reply is, "On you be peace, and the mercy of God, and his blessings!" The sixth mode is observed by servants or pupils to masters, by the wife to the husband, and by children to their father, and sometimes to the mother. It is also an act of homage paid to the aged by the young, or to learned or religious men by the less instructed or less devout. The last mode is seldom observed but to kings, and in Arabian countries it is now very uncommon.

NOTE 15 It might seem unnecessary to say, that a King understood what he read, were it not explained that the style of Arabic epistolary compositions, like that of the literature in general, differs considerably from that of common conversation.

NOTE 16 The party travelled chiefly by night, on account of the heat of the day.

NOTE 17 — *On the occasional Decorations of Eastern Cities* On various occasions of rejoicing in the palace of the king or governor, the inhabitants of an Eastern city are commanded to decorate their houses, and the tradesmen, in particular, to adorn their shops, by suspending shawls, brocades, rich dresses, women's ornaments, and all kinds of costly articles of merchandise, lamps and flags are attached to cords drawn across the streets, which are often canopied over, and when sufficient notice has been given, the shops, and the doors, &c, of private houses, are painted with gay colours — Towards the close of the year 1834, the people of Cairo were ordered to decorate their houses and shops previously to the arrival of Ibrâheem Bâshâ, after his victorious campaigns in Syria and Asia Minor. They ornamented the lower parts of their houses with whitewash and red ochre, generally in broad, alternate, horizontal stripes, that is, one course of stone white, and the next red, but the only kind of oil-paint that they could procure in large quantities was blue, the colour of mourning, so that they were obliged to use this as the ground upon which to paint flowers and other ornamental devices on their shops — but they regarded this as portending a pestilence; and the awful plague of the following spring confirmed them in their superstitious notions.

NOTE 18 As the notes to this introductory portion are especially numerous, and the chase is here but cursorily alluded to, I shall reserve an account of the mode of hunting to be given on a future occasion.

NOTE 19 — *On the opinions of the Arabs respecting Female Beauty.* The reader should have some idea of the qualifications or charms which the Arabs in general consider requisite to the perfection of female beauty; for erroneous fancies on this subject would much detract from the interest of the present work. He must not imagine that excessive fatness is one of these characteristics; though it is said to be esteemed a chief essential to beauty throughout the greater part of Northern Africa — on the contrary, the maiden whose loveliness inspires the most impassioned expressions in Arabic poetry and praise is celebrated for her slender figure — she is like the cane among plants, and

²⁹ Hirschhardt's "Notes on the Bedouins and Wahâbes," 2vo ed. vol. i. pp. 178 and 179.

is elegant as a twig of the oriental willow.³⁶ Her face is like the full moon, presenting the strongest contrast to the colour of her hair, which (to preserve the nature of the simile just employed,) is of the deepest hue of night, and descends to the middle of her back. A rosy blush overspreads the centre of each cheek, and a mole is considered an additional charm. The Arabs, indeed, are particularly extravagant in their admiration of this natural beauty-spot, which, according to its place, is compared to a globule of ambergris upon a dish of alabaster or upon the surface of a ruby.³⁷ The eyes of the Arab beauty are intensely black, large, and long, of the form of an almond they are full of brilliancy, but this is softened by a lid slightly depressed, and by long silken lashes, giving a tender and languid expression, which is full of enchantment, and scarcely to be improved by the adventitious aid of the black border of kohl, for this the lovely maiden adds rather for the sake of fashion than necessity, having, what the Arabs term, natural kohl. The eyebrows are thin and arched, the forehead is wide, and fair as ivory, the nose, straight, the mouth, small, the lips are of a brilliant red, and the teeth, "like pearls set in coral." The forms of the bosom are compared to two pomegranates, the waist is slender, the hips are wide and large, the feet and hands, small, the fingers, tapering, and their extremities dyed with the deep orange-red tint imparted by the leaves of the henna.³⁸ The person in whom these charms are combined exhibits a lively image of "the rosy-fingered Aurora." her lover knows neither night nor sleep in her presence, and the constellations of heaven are no longer seen by him when she approaches. The most bewitching age is between fourteen and seventeen years, for then the forms of womanhood are generally developed in their greatest beauty, but many a maiden in her twelfth year possesses charms sufficient to fascinate every youth or man who beholds her.

The reader may perhaps desire a more minute analysis of Arabian beauty. The following is the most complete that I can offer him—"Four things in a woman should be *black*, the hair of the head, the eyebrows, the eyelashes, and the dark part of the eyes; four *white*, the complexion of the skin, the white of the eyes, the teeth, and the legs; four *red*, the tongue, the lips, the middle of the cheeks, and the gums; four *round*, the head, the neck, the fore-arms, and the ankles; four *long*, the back, the fingers, the arms, and the legs; four *nude*, the forehead, the eyes, the bosom, and the hips; four *fine*, the eyebrows, the nose, the lips, and the fingers; four *thick*, the lower part of the back, the thighs, the calves of the legs, and the knees; four *small*, the ears, the breasts, the hands, and the feet."⁴⁰

NOTE 20. *Meshood* is a common proper name of men, and signifies "happy," or "made happy."

NOTE 21.—*On the Jinn, or Genu*. The frequent mention of *Genu* in this work, and the erroneous accounts that have been given of these fabulous beings by various European writers, have induced me to examine the statements respecting them in several Arabic works; and I shall here offer the result of my investigation, with a previous account of the Angels.

The Muslims, in general, believe in three different species of created intelligent beings, namely, Angels, who are created of light, *Genu*, who are created of fire, and Men, created of earth. The first species are called "*Melákeh*" (sing "*Melek*"), the second, "*Jinn*" or "*Ginn*" (sing "*jinnee*" or "*Ginne*"); the third, "*Ins*" (sing,

³⁶ This tree is called, in Arabic, "*bán*" and "*khláf*" or "*khaláf*."

³⁷ The Anacreon of Persia affected to prize the mole upon the cheek of his beloved above the cities of Samarkand and Bukhara.

³⁸ *Lawsonia inermis*.

³⁹ In another analysis of the same kind, it is said that four should be *short*, the hands, the feet, the

tongue, and the teeth, but this is metaphorically speaking, the meaning is, that these members should be kept within their proper bounds (*Kitab el-Onwán* see *Mekád en-Nuwán* MS in my possession).

⁴⁰ An unnamed author quoted by El-Is-hákee, in his account of the 'Abhásee Khaleefeh El-Mutawekkil.

"Insee"). Some hold that the Devils (Sheytáns) are of a species distinct from Angels and Jinn; but the more prevailing opinion, and that which rests on the highest authority, is, that they are rebellious Jinn

"It is believed," says El-Kazweenee, "that the Angels are of a simple substance, endowed with life, and speech, and reason, and that the difference between them and the Jinn and Sheytáns is a difference of species. Know," he adds, "that the Angels are sanctified from carnal desire and the disturbance of anger: they disobey not God in what He hath commanded them, but do what they are commanded. Their food is the celebrating of his glory, their drink, the proclaiming of his holiness, their conversation, the commemoration of God, whose name he exalted, their pleasure, his worship: they are created in different forms, and with different powers." Some are described as having the forms of brutes. Four of them are Archangels; Jehraeel or Jibreel (or Gabriel), the angel of revelations, Meekaeel or Meekál (or Michael), the patron of the Israelites; Azraeel, the angel of death, and Israfeel, the angel of the trumpet, which he is to sound twice, or as some say thrice, at the end of the world: one blast will kill all living creatures (himself included): another, forty years after, (he being raised again for this purpose, with Jehraeel and Meekaeel), will raise the dead. These Archangels are also called Apostolic Angels. They are inferior in dignity to human prophets and apostles, though superior to the rest of the human race: the angelic nature is held to be inferior to the human nature, because all the Angels were commanded to prostrate themselves before Adam. Every believer is attended by two guardian and recording angels, one of whom writes his good actions, the other, his evil actions: or, according to some, the number of these angels is five, or sixty, or a hundred and sixty. There are also two Angels called Munkar (vulg. Nákir) and Nekeer, who examine all the dead, and torture the wicked, in their graves.

The species of Jinn is said to have been created some thousands of years before Adam. According to a tradition from the Prophet, this species consists of five orders or classes, namely, Jánn (who are the least powerful of all), Jinn, Sheytáns (or Devils), 'Efreet, and Márid. The last, it is added, are the most powerful, and the Jánn are transformed Jinn, like as certain apes and swine were transformed men.⁴¹—It must, however, be remarked here, that the terms Jinn and Jánn are generally used indiscriminately, as names of the whole species (including the other orders above mentioned), whether good or bad, and that the former term is the more common. Also, that "Sheytán" is commonly used to signify any evil Jinnce. An 'Efreet is a powerful evil Jinnce.⁴² a Márid, an evil Jinnce of the most powerful class. The Jinn (but generally speaking, evil ones) are called by the Persians "Deevs," the most powerful evil Jinn, "Narabs" (which signifies "males," though they are said to be males and females), the good Jinn, "Perees," though this term is commonly applied to females.

In a tradition from the Prophet, it is said, "The Jánn were created of a smokeless fire."⁴³ The word which signifies "a smokeless fire" has been misunderstood by some as meaning "the flame of fire." El-Jóharee (in the Seháh) renders it rightly, and says that of this fire was the Sheytán (Iblees) created. "El-Jánn" is sometimes used as a name for Iblees, as in the following verse of the Kur-án:—"And the Jánn [the father of the Jinn; i. e. Iblees] we had created before [i. e. before the creation of Adam] of the fire of the samoom [i. e. of fire without smoke]."⁴⁴ "Jánn" also signifies "a serpent," as in other passages of the Kur-án,⁴⁵ and is used in the same book as synonymous with "Jinn."⁴⁶ In the last sense it is generally believed to be used in the tradition quoted in the commencement of this paragraph. There are several

⁴¹ Mir-át ez-Zemán. See also, Kur-án, ch. iv. v. 65.

⁴² The term "'Efreet" is sometimes improperly applied to a good Jinnce [and also, in Egypt, to the ghost of a dead person. See "Modern Egyptians," vol. i. ch. x. Ed.]

⁴³ Mir-át ez-Zemán.

⁴⁴ Ch. xv. v. 27, and Commentary of the Jeláleyn. Also, Kur-án, ch. iv. v. 14.

⁴⁵ Ch. xxv. v. 10, and ch. xxviii. v. 31, and Commentary of the Jeláleyn.

⁴⁶ Ch. iv. vv. 39 and 74, and same Commentary.

apparently contradictory traditions from the Prophet which are reconciled by what has been above stated in one, it is said, that Iblees was the father of all the Jánn and Sheytáns;⁴⁷ Jánn being here synonymous with Jinn in another, that Jánn was the father of all the Jinn,⁴⁸ here, Jánn being used as a name of Iblees

"It is held," says El-Kazweene, "that the Jinn are aerial animals, with transparent bodies, which can assume various forms. People differ in opinion respecting these beings: some consider the Jinn and Sheytáns as unruly men, but these persons are of the Moatezileh [a sect of Muslim freethinkers] and some hold, that God, whose name be exalted, created the Angels of the light of fire, and the Jinn of its flame [but this is at variance with the general opinion], and the Sheytáns of its smoke [which is also at variance with the common opinion], and that [all] these kinds of beings are [usually] invisible⁴⁹ to men, but that they assume what forms they please, and when their form becomes condensed they are visible."—This last remark illustrates several descriptions of Jinnees in this work; where the form of the monster is at first undefined, or like an enormous pillar, and then gradually assumes a human shape and less gigantic size. The particular forms of brutes, reptiles, &c., in which the Jinn most frequently appear will be mentioned hereafter

It is said that God created the Jánn [or Jinn] two thousand years before Adam [or, according to some writers, much earlier], and that there are believers and infidels and every sect among them, as among men⁵⁰—Some say that a prophet, named Yoosuf, was sent to the Jinn others, that they had only preachers, or admonishers others, again, that seventy apostles were sent, before Mohammad, to Jinn and men conjointly⁵¹. It is commonly believed that the preadamite Jinn were governed by forty (or, according to some, seventy-two) kings, to each of whom the Arab writers give the name of Suleymán (or Solomon), and that they derive their appellation from the last of these, who was called Jánn Ibn-Jánn, and who, some say, built the Pyramids of Egypt. The following account of the preadamite Jinn is given by El-Kazweene—"It is related in histories, that a race of Jinn, in ancient times, before the creation of Adam, inhabited the earth, and covered it, the land and the sea, and the plains and the mountains, and the favours of God were multiplied upon them, and they had government, and prophecy, and religion, and law, but they transgressed and offended, and opposed their prophets, and made wickedness to abound in the earth, whereupon God, whose name be exalted, sent against them an army of Angels, who took possession of the earth, and drove away the Jinn to the regions of the islands, and made many of them prisoners, and of those who were made prisoners was 'Azázeel [afterwards called Iblees, from his *de-par*], and a slaughter was made among them. At that time, 'Azázeel was young he grew up among the Angels [and probably for that reason was called one of them], and became learned in their knowledge, and assumed the government of them, and his days were prolonged until he became their chief, and thus it continued for a long time, until the affair between him and Adam happened, as God, whose name be exalted, hath said, 'When we said unto the Angels, Worship⁵² ye Adam, and [all] worshipped except Iblees, [who] was [one] of the Jinn.'⁵³

"Iblees," we are told by another authority, "was sent as a governor upon the earth, and judged among the Jinn a thousand years, after which he ascended into heaven, and remained employed in worship until the creation of Adam"⁵⁴. The name of Iblees was originally, according to some, 'Azázeel (as before mentioned); and according to others, El-Háarith: his patronymic is Abou-Murrah, or Abu-l-Ghunn.⁵⁵—It is disputed whether

⁴⁷ 'Ekriméh, from Ibn-'Abbás, in the *Mir-át ez-Zemán*

⁴⁸ *Mu'yáhid*, from the same, *ibid*

⁴⁹ Hence the appellations of "Jinn" and "Jánn"

⁵⁰ Tradition from the Prophet, in the *Mir-át ez-Zemán*.

⁵¹ *Mir-át ez-Zemán*

⁵² The worship here spoken of is prostration, as an act of obedience to a superior being

⁵³ *Kur-án*, ch. xvii. v. 48

⁵⁴ *Et-Tabaree*, quoted in the *Mir-át ez-Zemán*

⁵⁵ *Mir-át ez-Zemán*.

he was of the Angels or of the Jinn. There are three opinions on this point —1. That he was of the Angels, from a tradition from Ibn-'Abbás —2. That he was of the Sheytáns (or evil Jinn), as it is said in the Kur-án, "except Iblees, [who] was [one] of the Jinn" this was the opinion of El-Hasan El-Basree, and is that commonly held —3. That he was neither of the Angels nor of the Jinn, but created alone, of fire —Ibn-'Abbás founds his opinion on the same text from which El-Hasan El-Basree derives his "When we said unto the Angels, Worship ye Adam, and [all] worshipped except Iblees, [who] was [one] of the Jinn" (before quoted) which he explains by saying, that the most noble and honourable among the Angels are called "the Jinn," because they are veiled from the eyes of the other Angels on account of their superiority, and that Iblees was one of these Jinn. He adds, that he had the government of the lowest heaven and of the earth, and was called the Táos (literally, Peacock) of the Angels, and that there was not a spot in the lowest heaven but he had prostrated himself upon it. but when the Jinn rebelled upon the earth, God sent a troop of Angels who drove them to the islands and mountains, and Iblees being elated with pride, and refusing to prostrate himself before Adam, God transformed him into a Sheytán —But this reasoning is opposed by other verses, in which Iblees is represented as saying, "Thou hast created me of fire, and hast created *him* [Adam] of earth"⁵⁶ It is therefore argued, "If he created originally of fire, how was he created of light?" for the Angels were [all] created of light"⁵⁷—The former verse may be explained by the tradition, that Iblees, having been taken captive, was exalted among the Angels, or perhaps there is an ellipsis after the word "Angels," for it might be inferred that the command given to the Angels was also (and *a fortiori*) to be obeyed by the Jinn.

According to a tradition, Iblees and all the Sheytáns are distinguished from the other Jinn by a longer existence. "The Sheytáns," it is added, "are the children of Iblees, and die not but with him whereas the [other] Jinn die before him,"⁵⁸ though they may live many centuries. But this is not altogether accordant with the popular belief. Iblees and many other evil Jinn are to survive mankind, but they are to die before the general resurrection, as also even the Angels, the last of whom will be the Angel of Death, 'Azrael. Yet not all the evil Jinn are to live thus long. many of them are killed by shooting stars, hurled at them from heaven, wherefore, the Arabs, when they see a shooting star (shuháb, often exclaim, "May God transfix the enemy of the faith!" —Many also are killed by other Jinn, and some, even by men. The fire of which the Jinnee is created circulates in his veins, in place of blood therefore, when he receives a mortal wound, this fire, issuing from his veins, generally consumes him to ashes —The Jinn, it has been already shown, are peccable. They also eat and drink, and propagate their species, sometimes in conjunction with human beings, in which latter case, the offspring partakes of the nature of both parents. In all these respects they differ from the Angels. Among the evil Jinn are distinguished the five sons of their chief, Iblees, namely, Teer, who brings about calamities, losses, and injuries, El-Aawar, who encourages debauchery, Šót, who suggests lies, Dásim, who causes hatred between man and wife, and Zeleinboor, who presides over places of traffic.⁵⁹

The most common forms and habitations or places of resort of the Jinn must now be described.

The following traditions from the Prophet are the most to the purpose that I have seen.—The Jinn are of various shapes, having the forms of serpents, scorpions, lions, wolves, jackals, &c.⁶⁰—The Jinn are of three kinds, one on the land, one in the sea, and one in the air.⁶¹ The Jinn consist of forty troops, each troop consisting of six hundred thousand.⁶²—The Jinn are of three kinds; one have wings, and fly, another

⁵⁶ Ch vii v 11, and chap xxxviii v 77.

⁵⁷ Mir-át ez-Zemán.

⁵⁸ El-Hasan El-Basree, in the Mir-át ez-Zemán —My interpolation of the word "other" is required by his opinion before stated.

⁵⁹ Mujalid, quoted by El-Kazwenee.

⁶⁰ The same, from Ibn-'Abbás, in the Mir-át ez-Zemán.

⁶¹ El-Hasan El-Basree, *ibid*.

⁶² 'Ekrimch, from Ibn-'Abbas, *ibid*.

are snakes, and dogs; and the third move about from place to place like men⁶³—Domestic snakes are asserted to be Jinn on the same authority⁶⁴

The Prophet ordered his followers to kill serpents and scorpions if they intruded at prayers, but on other occasions, he seems to have required first to admonish them to depart, and then, if they remained, to kill them. The Doctors, however, differ in opinion whether *all* kinds of snakes or serpents should be admonished first, or whether *any* should; for the Prophet, say they, took a covenant of the Jinn [probably after the above-mentioned command], that they should not enter the houses of the faithful; therefore, it is argued, if they enter, they break their covenant, and it becomes lawful to kill them without previous admonishment. Yet it is related that 'Āshch, the Prophet's wife, having killed a serpent in her chamber, was alarmed by a dream, and, fearing that it might have been a Muslim Jinnee, as it did not enter her chamber when she was undressed, gave in alms, as an expiation, twelve thousand dirhems (about £300), the price of the blood of a Muslim⁶⁵

The Jinn are said to appear to mankind most commonly in the shapes of serpents, dogs, cats, or human beings. In the last case, they are sometimes of the stature of men, and sometimes of a size enormously gigantic. If good, they are generally resplendently handsome if evil, horribly hideous. They become visible at pleasure (by a rapid extension or rarefaction of the particles which compose them), or suddenly disappear in the earth or air, or through a solid wall. Many Muslims in the present day profess to have seen and held intercourse with them.

The Zóba'ah, which is a whirlwind that raises the sand or dust in the form of a pillar of prodigious height, often seen sweeping across the deserts and fields, is believed to be caused by the flight of an evil Jinnee. To defend themselves from a Jinnee thus "riding in the whirlwind," the Arabs often exclaim, "Iron 'Iron' (Hadeed 'Hadeed'), or, 'Iron' thou unlucky!" (Hadeed 'yá mashoom'), as the Jinn are supposed to have a great dread of that metal or they exclaim, "God is most great" (Allahu akbar)⁶⁶. A similar superstition prevails with respect to the water spout at sea, as the reader may have discovered from the first instance of the description of a Jinnee in the present work, which occasions this note to be here inserted.

It is believed that the chief abode of the Jinn is in the Mountains of Káf, which are supposed (as mentioned on a former occasion) to encompass the whole of our earth. But they are also believed to pervade the solid body of our earth, and the firmament, and to choose, as their principal places of resort, or of occasional abode, baths, wells, the latrina, ovens, ruined houses, market-places, the junctures of roads, the sea, and rivers. The Arabs, therefore, when they pour water, &c., on the ground, or enter a bath, or let down a bucket into a well, or visit the latrina, and on various other occasions, say, "Permission!" or "Permission, ye blessed!" (Destoor 'or, Destoor yá mubárakeen!)"⁶⁷—The evil spirits (or evil Jinn), it is said, had liberty to enter any of the seven heavens till the birth of Jesus, when they were excluded from three of them, on the birth of Mohammad, they were forbidden the other four.⁶⁸ They continue, however, to ascend to the confines of the lowest heaven, and there listening to the conversation of the Angels respecting things decreed by God, obtain knowledge of futurity, which they sometimes impart to men, who, by means of talismans, or certain invocations, make them to serve the purposes of magical performances. To this particular subject it will be necessary to revert.—What the Prophet said of Iblees, in the following tradition, applies also to the evil Jinn over whom he presides.—His chief abode [among men] is the bath, his chief places of resort are the markets, and the junctures of roads, his food is whatever is killed without the name of God being pronounced over it, his drink, whatever is intoxicating, his mueddin, the miznár (a

⁶³ Mishkát el-Masábeeh, vol. II p. 314

⁶⁴ Ibid vol. II pp. 311 and 312

⁶⁵ Mir-át ez-Zemán

⁶⁶ "Modern Egyptians," vol. I ch. x

⁶⁷ Ibid

⁶⁸ See, in a note on chap. xv of the Kur-án.

musical pipe; i. e. any musical instrument); his *ḳurán*, poetry; his written character, the marks made in geomancy,⁶⁹ his speech, falsehood; his snares are women⁷⁰

That particular Jinnees presided over particular places, was an opinion of the early Arabs. It is said in the *Kur-án*, "And there were certain men who sought refuge with certain of the Jinn."⁷¹ In the Commentary of the Jeláleyñ, I find the following remark on these words—"When they halted, on their journey, in a place of fear, each man said, 'I seek refuge with the lord of this place, from the mischief of his foolish ones'" In illustration of this, I may insert the following tradition, translated from El-Kazweenee—"It is related by a certain narrator of traditions, that he descended into a valley, with his sheep, and a wolf carried off a ewe from among them; and he arose, and raised his voice, and cried, 'O inhabitant of the valley' whereupon he heard a voice saying, 'O wolf, restore to him his sheep'" and the wolf came with the ewe, and left her, and departed—"The same opinion is held by the modern Arabs, though probably they do not use such an invocation—A similar superstition, a relic of ancient Egyptian credulity, still prevails among the people of Cairo. It is believed that each quarter of this city has its peculiar guardian genius, or Agathodæmon, which has the form of a serpent.⁷²

It has already been mentioned that some of the Jinn are Muslims, and others, infidels. The good Jinn acquit themselves of the imperative duties of religion, namely, prayers, alms-giving, fasting during the month of Ramadán, and pilgrimage to Mekkeh and Mount 'Arafát but in the performance of these duties they are generally invisible to human beings. Some examples of the mode in which good Jinn pay the alms required of them by the law, I have given in a former work.⁷³

Of the services and injuries done by Jinn to men, some account must be given.

It has been stated, that, by means of talismans, or certain invocations, men are said to obtain the services of Jinn, and the manner in which the latter are enabled to assist magicians, by imparting to them the knowledge of future events, has been explained. No man ever obtained such absolute power over the Jinn as Suleymán Ibn-Dáood (Solomon, the Son of David). This he did by virtue of a most wonderful talisman which is said to have come down to him from heaven. It was a seal-ring, upon which was engraved "the most great name" of God, and was partly composed of brass, and partly of iron. With the brass he stamped his written commands to the good Jinn with the iron (for a reason before mentioned), those to the evil Jinn, or Devils. Over both orders he had unlimited power, as well as over the birds and the winds;⁷⁴ and, as is generally said, the wild beasts. His Wezeer, Asaf the son of Barkhiya, is also said to have been acquainted with "the most great name," by uttering which, the greatest miracles may be performed, even that of raising the dead. By virtue of this name, engraved on his ring, Suleymán compelled the Jinn to assist in building the Temple of Jerusalem, and in various other works. Many of the evil Jinn he converted to the true faith, and many others of this class, who remained obstinate in infidelity, he confined in prisons. He is said to have been monarch of the whole earth. Hence, perhaps, the name of Suleymán is given to the universal monarchs of the preadamite Jinn, unless the story of his own universal dominion originated from confounding him with those kings of the Jinn.

The injuries related to have been inflicted upon human beings by evil Jinn are of various kinds. Jinnees are said to have often carried off beautiful women, whom they have forcibly kept as their wives or concubines. I have mentioned in a former work, that malicious or disturbed Jinnees are asserted often to station themselves on the roofs,

⁶⁹ So I translate the word "*ḳhaft*," but in a work by Es-Suyootee, (a MS in my possession, entitled "*Nuzhet el-Mulaammul wa-Murshid el-Mutahhl*," section 7.) I find, in its place, the word "*washm*," or "tattooing," and there are

some other slight variations and omissions in this tradition as there quoted.

⁷⁰ El-Kazweenee

⁷¹ Ch lxxii v 6

⁷² "Modern Egyptians," vol i ch x

⁷³ Idem, vol. ii ch xi

⁷⁴ *Kur-án* ch xxvii v 17, and ch xxxvii v 35

or at the windows, of houses, and to throw down bricks and stones on persons passing by⁷⁵ When they take possession of an uninhabited house, they seldom fail to persecute terribly any person who goes to reside in it They are also very apt to pilfer provisions, &c. Many learned and devout persons, to secure their property from such depredations, repeat the words "In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful" on locking the doors of their houses, rooms, or closets, and on covering the bread-basket, or anything containing food⁷⁶ During the month of Ramadán, the evil Jinns are believed to be confined in prison, and therefore, on the last night of that month, with the same view, women sometimes repeat the words above mentioned, and sprinkle salt upon the floors of the apartments of their houses⁷⁷

To complete this sketch of Arabian mythology, an account must be added of several creatures generally believed to be of inferior orders of the Jinn

One of these is the Ghool, which is commonly regarded as a kind of Sheytán, or evil Jinnee, that eats men, and is also described by some as a Jinnee or an enchanter who assumes various forms The Ghools are said to appear in the forms of various animals, and of human beings, and in many monstrous shapes, to haunt burial-grounds and other sequestered spots, to feed upon dead human bodies, and to kill and devour any human creature who has the misfortune to fall in their way whence the term "Ghool" is applied to any cannibal An opinion quoted by a celebrated author, respecting the Ghool, is, that it is a demoniacal animal, which passes a solitary existence in the deserts, resembling both man and brute, that it appears to a person travelling alone in the night and in solitary places, and, being supposed by him to be itself a traveller, lures him out of his way⁷⁸ Another opinion stated by him is this—that, when the Sheytáns attempt to hear words by stealth [from the confines of the lowest heaven], they are struck by shooting stars, and some are burnt, some, falling into a sea, or rather a large river (bahr), become converted into crocodiles, and some, falling upon the land, become Ghools The same author adds the following tradition—"The Ghool is any Jinnee that is opposed to travels, assuming various forms and appearances,"⁷⁹ and affirms that several of the Companions of the Prophet saw Ghools in their travels, and that 'Omar, among them, saw a Ghool while on a journey to Syria, before El-Islám, and struck it with his sword—It appears that "Ghool" is, properly speaking, a name only given to a female demon of the kind above described the male is called "Kutrub"⁸⁰ It is said that these beings, and the Ghaddar, or Gharrár, and other similar creatures which will presently be mentioned, are the offspring of Iblees and of a wife whom God created for him of the fire of the Samoom (which here signifies, as in an instance before mentioned, "a smokeless fire"); and that they sprang from an egg⁸¹ The female Ghool, it is added, appears to men in the deserts, in various forms, converses with them, and sometimes prostitutes herself to them.⁸²

The Sealáh, or Saalál, is another demoniacal creature described by some [or rather, by most authors] as of the Jinn. It is said that it is mostly found in forests, and that when it captures a man, it makes him dance, and plays with him as the cat plays with the mouse. A man of Islahán asserted that many beings of this kind abounded in his country, that sometimes the wolf would hunt one of them by night, and devour it, and that, when it had seized it, the Sealáh would cry out, "Come to my help, for the wolf devoureth me" or it would cry, "Who will liberate me? I have a hundred deenárs, and he shall receive them" but the people knowing that it was the cry of the Sealáh, no one would liberate it, and so the wolf would eat it⁸³—An island in the sea of Es-Seen (or China) is called "the Island of the Sealáh," by Arab geographers, from its being said to be inhabited by the demons so named they are described as

⁷⁵ "Modern Egyptians," vol. 1 ch. x

⁷⁶ Ibid

⁷⁷ Ibid

⁷⁸ El-Kazweenee

⁷⁹ El-Jáhez ("Amr Ibn-Bahr)

⁸⁰ Seláh, and Kamoom

⁸¹ Tradition from Wáhh Ibn-Munebbih, quoted in the account of the early Arabs in the Mir'át ez-Zemán

⁸² El-Kazweenee

⁸³ Ibid

creatures of hideous forms, supposed to be Sheytáns, the offspring of human beings and Jinn, who eat men ⁸⁴

The Ghaddár, or Gharrár (for its name is written differently in two different MSS. in my possession), is another creature of a similar nature, described as being found in the borders of El-Yemen, and sometimes in Tihámeh, and in the upper parts of Egypt. It is said that it entices a man to it, and either tortures him in a manner not to be described, or merely terrifies him, and leaves him. ⁸⁵

The Delhán is also a demoniacal being, inhabiting the islands of the seas, having the form of a man, and riding on an ostrich. It eats the flesh of men whom the sea casts on the shore from wrecks. Some say that a Delhán once attacked a ship in the sea, and desired to take the crew, but they contended with it, whereupon it uttered a cry which caused them to fall upon their faces, and it took them ⁸⁶—In my MS of Ibn-El-Wardee, I find the name written "Dahlán." He mentions an island called by this name, in the Sea of 'Omán; and describes its inhabitants as cannibal Sheytáns, like men in form, and riding on birds resembling ostriches.

The Shikk is another demoniacal creature, having the form of half a human being (like a man divided longitudinally), and it is believed that the Nesnás is the offspring of a Shikk and of a human being. The Shikk appears to travellers, and it was a demon of this kind who killed, and was killed by, 'Alkamah, the son of Safwán, the son of Umeiyeh, of whom it is well known that he was killed by a Jinnee. So says El-Kazwenee.

The Nesnás (above mentioned) is described as resembling half a human being, having half a head, half a body, one arm, and one leg, with which it hops with much agility, as being found in the woods of El-Yemen, and being endowed with speech. "but God," it is added, "is all-knowing" ⁸⁷. It is said that it is found in Hadramót as well as El-Yemen, and that one was brought alive to El-Mutawekkil. It resembled a man in form, excepting that it had but half a face, which was in its breast, and a tail like that of a sheep. The people of Hadramót, it is added, eat it, and its flesh is sweet. It is only generated in their country. A man who went there asserted that he saw a captured Nesnás, which cried out for mercy, conjuring him by God and by himself ⁸⁸. A race of people whose head is in the breast is described as inhabiting an island called Jábeh (supposed to be Java, in the Sea of El-Hind, or India) ⁸⁹. A kind of Nesnás is also described as inhabiting the Island of Ráy, in the Sea of Es-Seen, or China, and having wings like those of the bat ⁹⁰.

The Hátf is a being that is heard, but not seen, and is often mentioned by Arab writers. It is generally the communicator of some intelligence in the way of advice, or direction, or warning.

Here terminating this long note, I must beg the reader to remark, that the superstitious fancies which it describes are prevalent among all classes of the Arabs, and the Muslims in general, learned as well as vulgar. I have comprised in it much matter not necessary to illustrate the introductory portion of this work, in order to avoid frequent recurrence to the same subject. Another apology for its length may also be offered—its importance as confuting Schlegel's opinion, that the frequent mention of Genii is more consistent with Indian than with Arab notions.

NOTE 22. This chest is described in some copies as formed of glass.

NOTE 23. The term "Efreet" has been explained above, in Note 21.

NOTE 24. Most of the copies of the original, it appears, make the number of rings ninety-eight; therefore, I have substituted this, as less extraordinary, for five hundred and seventy, which is the number mentioned in the Cairo edition.

⁸⁴ Ibn-El-Wardee

⁸⁵ El-Kazwenee, and Mir at ez-Zeman

⁸⁶ El-Kazwenee

⁸⁷ El-Kazwenee, in the khatmech of his work

⁸⁸ Mir-at ez-Zeman

⁸⁹ Ibn-El-Wardee

⁹⁰ Idem

NOTE 25. Almost every Muslim who can afford it has a seal-ring, for a reason shewn in a former note (No 11).⁹¹

NOTE 26. For the story of Yoosuf and Zeleekha (or Joseph and the wife of Potiphar), see the *Kur'án*, ch. xii.

NOTE 27 — *On the wickedness of Women.* The wickedness of women is a subject upon which the stronger sex among the Arabs, with an affected feeling of superior virtue, often dwell in common conversation. That women are deficient in judgment or good sense is held as a fact not to be disputed even by themselves, as it rests on an assertion of the Prophet; but that they possess a superior degree of cunning is pronounced equally certain and notorious. Their general depravity is pronounced to be much greater than that of men. "I stood," said the Prophet, "at the gate of Paradise; and lo, most of its inmates were the poor and I stood at the gate of Hell; and lo, most of its inmates were women."⁹² In allusion to women, the Khaleefeh' Omar said, "Consult them, and do the contrary of what they advise." But this is not to be done merely for the sake of opposing them, nor when other advice can be had. "It is desirable for a man," says a learned Imám, "before he enters upon any important undertaking, to consult ten intelligent persons among his particular friends; or, if he have not more than five such friends, let him consult each of them twice, or, if he have not more than one friend, he should consult him ten times, at ten different visits: if he have not one to consult, let him return to his wife, and consult her, and whatever she advises him to do, let him do the contrary: so shall he proceed rightly in his affair, and attain his object."⁹³ A truly virtuous wife is, of course, excepted in this rule: such a person is as much respected by Muslims as she is (at least, according to their own account) rarely met with by them. When woman was created, the Devil, we are told, was delighted, and said, "Thou art half of my host, and thou art the depository of my secret, and thou art my arrow, with which I shoot, and miss not."⁹⁴ What are termed by us affairs of gallantry were very common among the Pagan Arabs, and are scarcely less so among their Muslim posterity. They are, however, unfrequent among most tribes of Bedawees, and among the descendants of those tribes not long settled as cultivators. I remember being roused from the quiet that I generally enjoyed in an ancient tomb in which I resided at Thebes, by the cries of a young woman in the neighbourhood, whom an Arab was severely beating for an impudent proposal that she had made to him.

NOTE 28.—*On the cruelty ascribed to Shahriyár.* I wish that I could accuse the author of inventing, in this case, an incident of an incredible nature, and entirely unparalleled; but, alas, acts of equal cruelty are recorded of Arab princes: traits of benevolence, and crimes of the blackest hue, are related in their histories, sometimes

⁹¹ In a great collection of Indian tales, the "*Kathá Sarit Ságará*," is a story which may have been the original of that to which this note refers. "Two young Brahmans travelling are benighted in a forest, and take up their lodging in a tree near a lake. Early in the night a number of people come from the water, and having made preparation for an entertainment, retire, a Yaksha, a genie, then comes out of the lake with his two wives, and spends the night there: when he and one of his wives are asleep, the other, seeing the youths, invites them to approach her, and to encourage them, shews them a hundred rings received from former gallants, notwithstanding her husband's precautions, who keeps her locked up in a chest at the bottom of the lake. The Hindu story-teller is more moral than the Arab. The youths reject her advances, she wakes the genie,

who is going to put them to death, but the rings are produced in evidence against the unfaithful wife, and she is turned away with the loss of her nose. The story is repeated in the next section with some variation, the lady has ninety and nine rings, and is about to complete the hundredth, when her husband, who is here a Naga, a snake-god, wakes, and consumes the guilty pair with bre from his mouth."—*British and Foreign Review*, No. xxi. page 266.

⁹² *Kitáb el-'Unwán fee Mekáid en-Niswán*, a work on the stratagems of women (MS in my possession).

⁹³ *El-Imám El-Jar'a'ee*, in his book entitled "*Shir'at el-Islám*," *ibid.*

⁹⁴ *Nuzhet el-Mutaammil wa-Murshid el-Muttaahhil*, section 2.

in the same page. I have not read of any case exactly resembling that to which this note relates; but the following anecdote will shew, that if conduct still more atrocious had been described in the latter, it might have been founded on fact. "In the year of the Flight 423, the Khaleefeh of Egypt, Ez-Zâhir, the son of El-Hâkim, collected together all the female slaves that were in the palace, and said to them, 'Assemble together, and I will make a day of pleasure for you, such as hath not before been seen in Egypt' He ordered, also, that every person who had a female slave should bring her, and that none of them should come but with her ornaments of jewels and gold. They did so; and there was not a single one that did not come. He then placed them in a chamber, and, calling some masons, made them build up the door of the chamber upon them, and so they all died. Thus happened on Friday (the Mohammadan Sabbath,) the 6th of Showwâl. The number of them was two thousand six hundred and sixty female slaves. After they had remained six months, he heaped lighted combustibles upon them, and burned them, together with their clothes and ornaments. May God [says the narrator] shew no mercy to him!"⁹⁵

NOTE 29 I here deviate a little from my original, in which Shahrazâd is made to say, "Either I shall live, or I shall be a ransom for the daughters of the Muslims, and the cause of their deliverance from him." Upon this, the sheikh Mohammed 'Eiyâd has remarked in a marginal note, "It would seem that she had contrived some stratagem to prevent his marrying again if he determined to kill her—otherwise, the mere killing her would not be a means of rescuing the other maidens."

NOTE 30—*On the Language of Birds, &c.* It is commonly believed by the Muslims (learned and unlearned), that all kinds of birds, and many (if not all) beasts, have a language by which they communicate their thoughts to each other, and we are told in the Kur-ân,⁹⁶ that Suleymân (or Solomon) was taught the language of birds.⁹⁷ I thought that I could boast of an accomplishment very rare in Christian countries, in having learned, in Egypt, somewhat of this language, for instance, that the common cry of the pigeon is "Allâh ' Allâh'" ("God! God!"), that of the ringdove, "Keerem ' Towwâb'" ("Bountiful! Propitious"—an ejaculation addressed to God); that of the common dove, "Wahhidoo rabbakumu-llezeê khalakakum, yeghfir-lakum zembakum'" ("Assert the unity of your Lord who created you, so will He forgive you your sin") but I afterwards found that several specimens of this language were given by Ez-Zamakhshereh, and had been published in Europe—see "Alcoranus Marraccu," p. 511. The cock cries, "Uzkuru-llâha, yâ ghâfiloon'" ("Commemorate God, O ye negligent") the katâ (a kind of grouse),⁹⁸ "Men seket selim'" ("He who is silent is safe"). The latter, however, would do better if it did itself attend to the maxim it utters, for its cry, which, to the un instructed in the language of birds, sounds merely, "katâ ' katâ'" as its own name, tells where it is to be found by the sportsman, and thus causes its own destruction. Hence the proverb—"More voracious than the katâ."

NOTE 31 In the houses of persons of the middle classes in Arabian countries, there is generally an apartment on the ground-floor fitted up as a stable for a horse, mule, or ass, or for two or more such animals; and the cattle of the farmer, if not very numerous, are usually lodged during the night in similar quarters, or in an open court enclosed within, or immediately adjacent to, his house.

NOTE 32. It is a common custom in the East to sprinkle the ground, during the summer, in order to cool the air.

NOTE 33. Cut straw is the usual fodder of asses and other beasts of burden in Egypt and other countries of the East.

⁹⁵ Es-Suyootee, History of Egypt, account of the strange events that have happened in Egypt during the time of El-Islâm

⁹⁶ Ch xxvii v 16

⁹⁷ Mantik el-foyr

⁹⁸ Of the family *Pterocles* Lr (Pr Bon.) Fd.

NOTE 34. The phrase with which the bull commences his address to the ass, is one dictated by an indispensable rule of Muslim politeness, which requires that these or some similar words should be uttered by a person whenever he sees another with food before him, and does not partake of it. If this were not done, it would be feared that the food had been poisoned, or rendered of no avail, by an envious eye.

NOTE 35. The peasants in the East use a hand-mill for grinding their corn. The larger mills used for this and other purposes are turned by cattle.

NOTE 36. In the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred nights, the ass is made to quote verses to the bull. Hast thou not, he asks him, heard the poet say —

I occupy myself every day and night in anxious service of him in whose prosperity I have no enjoyment,

Like the bleacher who blackens his face in the sun, while he watches the whitening of the clothes of others

NOTE 37. I read "nat'an," as in the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred nights, instead of "kita'an" in the Cairo edition. The nata is a large round piece of leather, which, spread upon the ground, serves as a table for dinner, &c. It is particularly convenient, and therefore much used, in travelling. Around the edge is a running string, which, being drawn, converts it into a bag to hold what is left of the food.

NOTE 38. — *On the office of Kádee*. The Kádee is a judge, or minister of justice, who passes sentence in all cases of law, religious, moral, civil, and criminal. This he generally does, in the present day, in accordance with the decision of a Muftée, or doctor of the law. In small towns and villages, he is often employed to draw up written contracts of various kinds.

NOTE 39. The famous Saadee attained the age here mentioned; but instances of equal longevity, among the Orientals, are rare⁹⁹

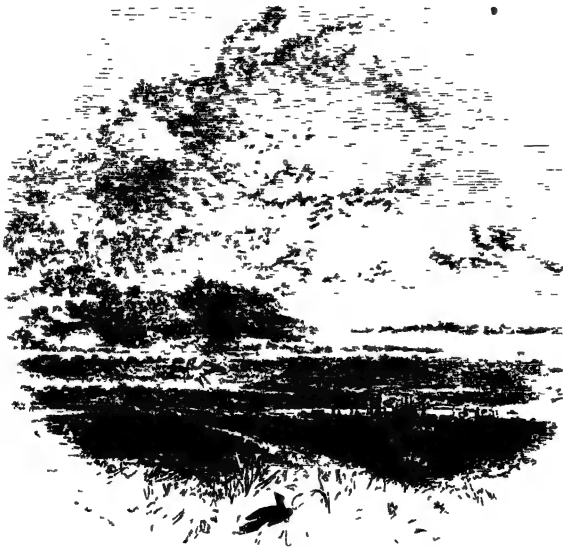
NOTE 40. To perform the ablution preparatory to prayer in the expectation of almost immediate death, is a supererogatory act which, I believe, is seldom observed.

NOTE 41. Both religion and climate make the Muslim an early riser. It is his duty to perform the first of the five daily prayers at, or soon after, daybreak, and he generally awakes before this period. While Shahriyár, therefore, was waiting for the dawn of day to acquit himself of this duty, in accordance with the common custom of Mohammedan kings, Shahrazád amused him by the recitation of her tales. That he should be described as thus strict with regard to religious exercises, when about to give orders for the murder of his innocent wife, needs not excite our surprise: such conduct is consistent with the character of many Muslims. In the year 1834, when I was residing in Cairo, a General in the service of Mohammad 'Alée hired a large party of men to perform a recital of the Kur-án, in his house in that city, and then went up into his harem, and strangled his wife, in consequence of a report which accused her of incontinence. The religious ceremony was designed as preparatory to this act, though the punishment of the woman was contrary to the law, since her husband neither produced four witnesses of the imputed crime, nor allowed her to clear herself of the charge by her own oath. Another case of diligence in the performance of a religious duty, accompanied by the contemplation of murder, but murder on a larger scale, occurred in the same city shortly after. Suleymán Ágha, the Siláhdár, being occupied in directing the building of a public fountain, as a work of charity to place to the account of a deceased brother, desired to extend the original plan of the structure; and to do this, it

⁹⁹ Ibn-'Arab-Sháh, however, has given an account of a man called the sheikh El-'Oryán, an inhabitant of Samarkand, and a devotee, who was said to have attained the age of 350 [lunar] years [or nearly 340 solar years], and yet preserved an erect stature, a comely appearance, and such

strength that it seemed as if he had not attained to mature years. The old men of the place asserted that they remembered him to have had the same appearance when they were children, and that their fathers and grandfathers had said the same — History of Teemoor, p. 470, Calcutta edition

was necessary that he should purchase two houses adjoining the plot in which the foundations had been laid but the owners of these houses refused to sell them, and he therefore employed a number of workmen to undermine them by night, and cause them to fall upon their inhabitants. His scheme, however, but partially succeeded, and no lives were sacrificed. This man was notorious for cruelty, but he was a person of pleasing and venerable countenance, and engaging manners whenever I chanced to meet him, I received from him a most gracious salutation. He died before I quitted Egypt.





CHAPTER I.

COMMENCING WITH THE FIRST NIGHT, AND ENDING WITH PART OF THE THIRD

THE STORY OF THE MERCHANT AND THE JINNEE.

It has been related to me, O happy King, said Shahrazád, that there was a certain merchant who had great wealth, and traded extensively with surrounding countries; and one day he mounted his horse, and journeyed to a neighbouring country to collect what was due to him, and, the heat oppressing him, he sat under a tree, in a garden,¹ and put his hand into his saddle-bag,² and ate a morsel of bread and a date which were among his provisions. Having eaten the date, he threw aside the stone,³ and immediately there appeared before him an 'Efreet, of enormous height, who, holding a drawn sword in his hand, approached him, and said, Rise, that I may kill thee, as thou hast killed my son. The merchant asked him, How have I killed thy son? He answered, When thou atest the date, and throwest aside the stone, it struck my son upon the chest,⁴ and, as fate had decreed against him, he instantly died.⁵

The merchant, on hearing these words,⁶ exclaimed, Verily to God we belong, and verily to Him we must return ! There is no strength nor power but in God, the High, the Great ! If I killed him, I did it not intentionally, but without knowing it ; and I trust in thee that thou wilt pardon me.—The Jinnee answered, Thy death is indispensable, as thou hast killed my son :—and so saying, he dragged him, and threw him on the ground, and raised his arm to strike him with the sword. The merchant, upon this, wept bitterly, and said to the Jinnee, I commit my affair unto God, for no one can avoid



what He hath decreed :—and he continued his lamentation, repeating the following verses :—

Time consists of two days, this, bright, and that, gloomy and life, of two
moieties, this, safe, and that, fearful
Say to him who hath taunted us on account of misfortunes, Doth fortune
oppose any but the eminent ?
Dost thou not observe that corjwes float upon the sea, while the precious pearls
remain in its furthest depths ?
When the hands of time play with us, misfortune is imparted to us by its
protracted kiss
In the heaven are stars that cannot be numbered ; but none is eclipsed save the
sun and the moon
How many green and dry trees are on the earth, but none is assailed with
stones save that which beareth fruit !
Thou thoughtest well of the days when they went well with thee, and fearest
not the evil that destiny was bringing

—When he had finished reciting these verses, the Jinnee said to him,
Spare thy words, for thy death is unavoidable.

Then said the merchant, Know, O 'Efreet, that I have debts to
pay, and I have much property, and children, and a wife, and I have
pledges also in my possession : let me, therefore, go back to my
house, and give to every one his due, and then I will return to thee I
bind myself by a vow and covenant that I will return to thee, and
thou shalt do what thou wilt ; and God is witness of what I say.—
Upon this, the Jinnee accepted his covenant, and liberated him ;
granting him a respite until the expiration of the year.

The merchant, therefore, returned to his town, accomplished all
that was upon his mind to do, paid every one what he owed him, and
informed his wife and children of the event which had befallen him ;
upon hearing which, they and all his family and women wept. He
appointed a guardian over his children, and remained with his family
until the end of the year ; when he took his grave-clothes under his
arm,⁷ bade farewell to his household and neighbours, and all his
relations, and went forth, in spite of himself ; his family raising cries
of lamentation, and shrieking.⁸

He proceeded until he arrived at the garden before mentioned ;
and it was the first day of the new year ; and as he sat, weeping for
the calamity which he expected soon to befall him, a sheykh,⁹ advanced
in years, approached him, leading a gazelle with a chain attached to
its neck. This sheykh saluted the merchant, wishing him a long
life, and said to him, What is the reason of thy sitting alone in this
place, seeing that it is a resort of the Jinn ? The merchant therefore



informed him of what had befallen him with the 'Efreet, and of the cause of his sitting there; at which the sheykh, the owner of the gazelle, was astonished, and said, By Allah, O my brother, thy faithfulness is great, and thy story is wonderful! if it were engraved upon the intellect, it would be a lesson to him who would be admonished!— And he sat down by his side, and said, By Allah, O my brother, I will not quit this place until I see what will happen unto thee with this 'Efreet. So he sat down, and conversed with him. And the merchant became almost senseless, fear entered him, and terror, and violent grief, and excessive anxiety. And as the owner of the gazelle sat by his side, lo, a second sheykh approached them, with two black hounds, and inquired of them, after saluting them, the reason of their sitting in that place, seeing that it was a resort of the Jánn:¹⁰ and they told him the story from beginning to end. And he had hardly sat down when there approached them a third sheykh, with a dapple mule; and he asked them the same question, which was answered in the same manner.

Immediately after, the dust was agitated, and became an enormous revolving pillar, approaching them from the midst of the desert; and this dust subsided, and behold, the Jinnee, with a drawn sword in his hand, his eyes casting forth sparks of fire. He came to them, and dragged from them the merchant, and said to him, Rise, that I may kill thee, as thou killedst my son, the vital spirit of my heart. And the merchant wailed and wept; and the three sheykhs also manifested their sorrow by weeping and crying aloud and wailing: but the first sheykh, who was the owner of the gazelle, recovering his self-possession, kissed the hand of the 'Efreet, and said to him, O thou Jinnee, and crown of the kings of the Jánn, if I relate to thee the story of myself and this gazelle, and thou find it to be wonderful, and more so than the adventure of this merchant, wilt thou give up to me a third



of thy claim to his blood ? He answered, Yes, O sheykh, if thou relate to me the story, and I find it to be as thou hast said, I will give up to thee a third of my claim to his blood.

THE STORY OF THE FIRST SHEYKH AND THE GAZELLE

THEN said the sheykh, Know, O 'Efrect, that this gazelle is the daughter of my paternal uncle,¹¹ and she is of my flesh and my blood I took her as my wife when she was young,¹² and lived with her about thirty years ; but I was not blessed with a child by her ; so I took to me a concubine slave,¹³ and by her I was blessed with a male child, like the rising full moon, with beautiful eyes, and delicately-shaped eyebrows, and perfectly-formed limbs ; and he grew up by little and little until he attained the age of fifteen years. At this period, I unexpectedly had occasion to journey to a certain city, and went thither with a great stock of merchandisc.

Now my cousin,¹⁴ this gazelle, had studied enchantment and divination from her early years ; and during my absence, she transformed the youth above mentioned into a calf ; and his mother, into



them ; but I would not. What, said I, have ye gained in your travels, that I should expect to gain ? They importuned me ; but I would not comply with their request ; and we remained selling and buying in our shops a whole year Still, however, they persevered in proposing that we should travel, and I still refused, until after the lapse of six entire years, when at last I consented, and said to them, O my brothers, let us calculate what property we possess. We did so, and found it to be six thousand pieces of gold : and I then said to them, We will bury half of it in the earth, that it may be of service to us if any misfortune befall us, in which case each of us shall take a thousand pieces, with which to traffic.²¹ Excellent is thy advice, said they. So I took the money and divided it into two equal portions, and buried three thousand pieces of gold ; and of the other half, I gave to each of them a thousand pieces. We then prepared merchandise, and hired a ship, and embarked our goods, and proceeded on our voyage for the space of a whole month, at the expiration of which we arrived at a city, where we sold our merchandise ; and for every piece of gold we gained ten.



And when we were about to set sail again, we found, on the shore of the sea, a maiden clad in tattered garments, who kissed my hand, and said to me, O my master, art thou possessed of charity and kindness? If so, I will requite thee for them. I answered, Yes, I have those qualities, though thou requite me not. Then said she, O my master, accept me as thy wife, and take me to thy country; for I give myself to thee ²⁴ act kindly towards me; for I am one who requires to be treated with kindness and charity, and who will requite thee for so doing; and let not my present condition at all deceive thee. When I heard these words, my heart was moved with tenderness towards her, in order to the accomplishment of a purpose of God, to whom be ascribed all might and glory; and I took her, and clothed her, and furnished for her a place in the ship in a handsome manner, and regarded her with kind and respectful attention.

We then set sail; and I became most cordially attached to my wife, so that, on her account, I neglected the society of my brothers, who, in consequence, became jealous of me, and likewise envied me my wealth, and the abundance of my merchandise; casting the eyes of covetousness upon the whole of the property. They therefore consulted together to kill me, and take my wealth; saying, Let us kill our brother, and all the property shall be ours:—and the devil made these actions to seem fair in their eyes; so they came to me while I was sleeping by the side of my wife, and took both of us up, and threw us into the sea. But as soon as my wife awoke, she shook herself, and became transformed into a Jinneeyeh.²⁵ She immediately bore me away, and placed me upon an island, and, for a while, disappeared. In the morning, however, she returned, and said to me, I am thy wife, who carried thee, and rescued thee from death, by permission of God, whose name be exalted. Know that I am a Jinneeyeh: I saw thee, and my heart loved thee for the sake of God; for I am a believer in God and his Apostle, God bless and save him!²⁶ I came to thee in the condition in which thou sawest me, and thou didst marry me; and see, I have rescued thee from drowning. But I am incensed against thy brothers, and I must kill them.—When I



heard her tale, I was astonished, and thanked her for what she had done ;—But, said I, as to the destruction of my brothers, it is not what I desire. I then related to her all that had happened between myself and them from first to last ; and when she had heard it, she said, I will, this next night, fly to them, and sink their ship, and destroy them. But I said, I conjure thee by Allah that thou do it not ; for the author of the proverb saith, O thou benefactor of him who hath done evil, the action that he hath done is sufficient for him²⁷—besides, they are at all events my brothers. She still, however, said, They must be killed ;—and I continued to propitiate her towards them . and at last she lifted me up, and soared through the air, and placed me on the roof of my house.²⁸

Having opened the doors, I dug up what I had hidden in the earth ; and after I had saluted my neighbours, and bought merchandise, I opened my shop. And in the following night, when I entered my house, I found these two dogs tied up in it ; and as soon as they saw me, they came to me, and wept, and clung to me ; but I knew not what had happened until immediately my wife appeared before

me, and said, These are thy brothers. And who, said I, hath done this unto them? She answered, I sent to my sister and she did it; and they shall not be restored until after the lapse of ten years. And I was now on my way to her, that she might restore them, as they have been in this state ten years, when I saw this man, and, being informed of what had befallen him, I determined not to quit the place until I should have seen what would happen between thee and him.—This is my story.—Verily, said the Jinnee, it is a wonderful tale; and I give up to thee a third of the claim that I had to his blood on account of his offence.

Upon this, the third sheykh, the owner of the mule, said to the Jinnee,⁴⁹ As to me, break not my heart if I relate to thee nothing more than this —



THE STORY OF THE THIRD SHEYKH AND THE MULE

THE mule that thou seest was my wife. she became enamoured of a black slave; and when I discovered her with him, she took a mug of water, and, having uttered a spell over it, sprinkled me, and transformed me into a dog. In this state, I ran to the shop of a butcher, whose daughter saw me, and, being skilled in enchantment, restored me to my original form, and instructed me to enchant my wife in the manner thou beholdest.—And now I hope that thou wilt remit to me also a third of the merchant's offence. Divinely was he gifted who said,

Sow good, even on an unworthy soil; for it will not be lost wherever it is sown

When the sheykh had thus finished his story, the Jinnee shook

with delight, and remitted the remaining third of his claim to the merchant's blood. The merchant then approached the sheykhs, and thanked them, and they congratulated him on his safety ; and each went his way.

But this, said Shahrazád, is not more wonderful than the story of the fisherman. The King asked her, And what is the story of the fisherman ? And she related it as follows .—





NOTES TO CHAPTER FIRST

NOTE 1 The words "in a garden" are omitted in my original, but they are required by the sequel. I may here remark, that, in future, when I find trifling insertions of this kind to be requisite in my translation, I shall not deem it necessary to mention them in a note.

NOTE 2 An Eastern traveller often makes a long journey with no other encumbrance than a well filled pair of saddle-bags. In one bag he puts his provisions, and in the other, such articles of clothing as he may require in addition to those in which he sets out, including a spare shirt, and perhaps no other clean linen. For he is as indifferent with regard to this comfort as he is careful respecting his *personal* cleanliness.

NOTE 3 Perhaps no reader of this work will require to be told that the date has not a *shell*. I only make this remark on account of an error in the old translation—As dates are very nutritious, and are preserved by being merely dried in the sun, they are an excellent article of provision for travellers.

NOTE 4. The merchant was culpably careless, before throwing aside the date-stone with sufficient force to kill a Jinnee who happened to be near him (though at the time invisible), he should have asked permission by the exclamation "Destoor!" as explained in a note appended to the Introduction.

NOTE 5—*On Fate and Destiny.* The belief in fate and destiny ("el-kada wa l-kadar") exercises a most powerful influence upon the actions and character of the Muslims, and it is therefore highly important that the reader of the present work should be acquainted with the notions which these people entertain respecting such matters of faith. I use two words (perhaps the best that our language affords) to express corresponding Arabic terms, which some persons regard as synonymous, but others distinguish by different shades of meaning. On what I consider the best authority, the word which I render "fate" respects the decrees of God in a general sense; while that which I translate "destiny" relates to the particular applications of those decrees. In such senses these terms are here to be understood when separately employed.

Many Muslims hold that fate is, in some respects, absolute and unchangeable, in others, admitting of alteration, and almost all of them *act*, in many of the affairs of life, as if this were their belief. In the former case, it is called "el-kada el-Mohkam" in the latter, "el-kada el-Mubram" (which term, without the explanation here given,

might be regarded as exactly synonymous with the former). Hence, the Prophet, it is said, prayed to be preserved from the latter, as knowing that it might be changed; and in allusion to this changeable fate, God, we are told, says, "God will cancel what He pleaseth, and confirm,"¹ while, on the contrary, the fate which is termed "Mohkam" is appointed "destiny" decreed by God.²

Many doctors have argued, that destiny respects only the *final state* of a certain portion of men (believers and unbelievers), and that, in general, man is endowed with free will, which he should exercise according to the laws of God and his own conscience and judgment, praying to God for a blessing on his endeavours, or imploring the intercession of the Prophet, or of any of the saints, in his favour, and propitiating them by offering alms or sacrifices in their names, relying upon God for the result, which he may then, and then only, attribute to fate or destiny. They hold, therefore, that it is criminal to attempt resistance to the will when its dictates are conformable with the laws of God and our natural consciences and prudence, and so passively to await the fulfilment of God's decrees.—The doctrine of the Kur-án and the Traditions respecting the decrees of God, or fate and destiny, appears, however, to be, that they are altogether absolute and unchangeable,—written, in the beginning of the creation, on the "Preserved Tablet," in heaven, that God hath predestined every event and action, evil as well as good, at the same time commanding and approving good, and forbidding and hating evil, and that the "cancelling" mentioned in the preceding paragraph relates (as the context seems to shew) to the abrogation of former scriptures, or revelations, not of fate. But still it must be held that He hath not predestined the *will*, though He sometimes inclines it to good, and the Devil sometimes inclines it to evil. It is asked, then, If we have the power to will, but not the power to perform otherwise than as God hath predetermined, how can we be regarded as responsible beings? The answer to this is, that our actions are judged good or evil according to our intentions, if we have faith: good actions or intentions, it should be added, only increase, and do not cause, our happiness, if we are believers, and evil actions or intentions only increase our misery if we are unbelievers or irreligious: for the Muslim holds that he is to be admitted into heaven only by the mercy of God, on account of his faith, and to be rewarded in proportion to his good works.

The Prophet's assertions on the subject of God's decrees are considered of the highest importance as explanatory of the Kur-án—"Whatever is in the universe," said he, "is by the order of God"—"God hath pre-ordained five things on his servants, the duration of life, their actions, their dwelling-places, their travels, and their portions"—"There is not one among you whose sitting-place is not written by God, whether in the fire or in paradise"³—Some of the Companions of the Prophet, on hearing the last-quoted saying, asked him, "O Prophet, since God hath appointed our places, may we confide in this, and abandon our religious and moral duties?" He answered, "No: because the happy will do good works, and those who are of the miserable will do bad works"—The following of his sayings further illustrate this subject—"When God hath ordered a creature to die in any particular place, He causeth his wants to direct him to that place"—A Companion asked, "O Prophet of God, inform me respecting charms, and the medicines which I swallow, and shields which I make use of for protection, whether they prevent any of the orders of God?" Mohammad answered, "These also are by the order of God"⁴—"There is a medicine for every pain: then, when the medicine reaches the pain, it is cured by the order of God."⁵—When a Muslim, therefore, feels an inclination to make use of medicine for the cure of a disease, he should do so, in the hope of its being predestined that he shall be so cured.

On the predestination of diseases, I find the following curious quotation and remark

¹ Kur-án, ch. xiii v. 39

² "El-Insan el Kámil," by 'Abd-El-Kerem El-Jeleel, quoted by El-Is hákee, in his account of Ibráheem Hasha el-Maktool

³ Mishkát el-Masbeeh, vol. i pp. 26—34

⁴ Ibid

⁵ Idem, vol. ii p. 373

in a manuscript work, by Es-Suyootee, in my possession.—“El-Haleemee says, ‘Communicable or contagious diseases are six—small-pox, measles, itch or scab, foul breath or putridity, melancholy, and pestilential maladies, and diseases engendered are also six—leprosy, hectic, epilepsy, gout, elephantiasis, and phthisis’ But this does not contradict the saying of the Prophet, ‘There is no transition of diseases by contagion or infection, nor any omen that brings evil’ for the transition here meant is one occasioned by the disease itself, whereas the effect is of God, who causes pestilence to spread when there is intercourse with the diseased”⁶—A Bedawee asked the Prophet, “What is the condition of camels which stay in the deserts?” verily, you might say, they are deer, in health and in cleanness of skin. then they mix with mangy camels, and they become mangy also” Mohammad said, “What made the first camel mangy?”⁷

Notwithstanding, however, the arguments which have been here adduced, and many others that might be added, declaring or implying the unchangeable nature of all God’s decrees, I have found it to be the opinion of my own Muslim friends, that God may be induced, by supplication, to change certain of his decrees, at least, those regarding degrees of happiness or misery in this world and the next, and that such is the general opinion, appears from a form of prayer which is repeated in the mosques on the eve of the middle (or fifteenth day) of the month of Shaabân, when it is believed that such portions of God’s decrees as constitute the destinies of all living creatures for the ensuing year, are confirmed and fixed. In this prayer it is said, “O God, if Thou *hast recorded* me in thine abode, upon ‘the Original of the Book’ [the Preserved Tablet], miserable, or unfortunate, or scanted in my sustenance, *camel*, O God, of thy goodness, my misery, and misfortune, and scanty allowance of sustenance, and confirm me, in thine abode, upon the Original of the Book, as happy, and provided for, and directed to good,” &c.⁸

The Arabs in general constantly have recourse both to charms and medicines, not only for the cure, but also for the prevention of diseases. They have, indeed, a strange passion for medicine, which shows that they do not consider fate as altogether unconditional. Nothing can exceed the earnestness with which they often press a European traveller for a dose, and the more violent the remedy, the better are they pleased. The following case will serve as an example—Three donkey-drivers, conveying the luggage of two British travellers from Boolák to Cairo, opened a bottle which they observed in a basket, and finding it to contain, as they had suspected, brandy, emptied it down their throats—but he who had the last, on turning up the bottle, got the tail of a scorpion into his mouth, and, looking through the bottle, to his great horror, saw that it contained a number of these reptiles, with tarantulas, vipers, and beetles. Thinking that they had poisoned themselves, but not liking to rely upon fate, they persuaded a man to come to me for medicine. He introduced the subject by saying, “O Efendee, do an act of kindness—there are three men poisoned, in your mercy give them medicine, and save their lives” and then he related the whole affair, without concealing the theft. I replied, that they did not deserve medicine, but he urged that, by giving it, I should obtain an immense reward. “Yes,” said I; “‘he who saveth a soul alive shall be as if he had saved the lives of all mankind’”⁹ I said this to try the feeling of the applicant, who, expressing admiration of my knowledge, urged me to be quick, lest the men should die, thus showing himself to be no unconditional fatalist. I gave him three strong doses of tartar emetic, and he soon came back to thank me, saying that the medicine was most admirable, for the men had hardly swallowed it, when they almost vomited their hearts and livers, and everything else in their bodies.

From a distrust in faith, some Muslims even shut themselves up during the prevalence of plague, but this practice is generally condemned. A Syrian friend of mine, who did

⁶ Nuzhet el-Mutaammil wa-Murshid el-Mutaah-hil, section 7

⁷ Mishkát el-Maṣābeeh, vol. ii p. 361

⁸ For a translation of the whole of this prayer, see “Modern Egyptians,” vol. ii. ch. xli.

⁹ Kur-án, ch. v. v. 35.

so, nearly had his door broken open by his neighbours. Another of my friends, one of the most distinguished of the 'Ulamā, confessed to me his conviction of the lawfulness of quarantine, and argued well in favour of it, but said that he dared not openly avow such an opinion. "The Apostle of God," said he, "God bless and save him! hath commanded that we should not enter a city where there is pestilence, nor go out from it. Why did he say, 'Enter it not?'—because, by so doing, we should expose ourselves to the disease. Why did he say, 'Go not out from it?'—because, by so doing, we should carry the disease to others. The Prophet was tenderly considerate of our welfare, but the present Muslims in general are like bulls [brute beasts]; and they hold the meaning of this command to be, Go not into a city where there is pestilence, because this would be rashness, and go not out from it, because this would be distrusting God's power to save you from it."

Many of the vulgar and ignorant among modern Muslims, believe that the unchangeable destinies of every man are written upon his head, in what are termed the sutures of the skull.

NOTE 6 The paragraph thus commencing, and the verses comprised in it, are translated from the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred nights.

NOTE 7 It is a common custom for a Muslim, on a military expedition, or during a long journey, especially in the desert, to carry his grave-linen with him, for he is extremely careful that he may be buried according to the law.¹⁰ It seems to be implied in our tale, that the merchant hoped that the Jinnee, or some passing traveller, would wash, shroud, and bury him.

NOTE 8 It is thus that the Arab women generally do on the occasion of a funeral.

NOTE 9—*On the title of Sheykh* "Sheykh" is an appellation which literally signifies "an elder," or "an aged person," and in this sense it is here used, but it is also commonly employed as synonymous with our appellation of "Mister," and particularly applied to a learned man, or a reputed saint. In every case, it is a title of respect, and never given to any but a Muslim.

NOTE 10 "Jānn" is here used as synonymous with "Jinn."

NOTE 11. A cousin (the daughter of a paternal uncle) is often chosen as a wife, on account of the tie of blood, which is likely to attach her more strongly to her husband, or on account of an affection conceived in early years. The various customs relating to marriage, I shall describe on a future occasion.

NOTE 12 A bride is called young, by the Arabs, when she is about twelve years of age. In the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred nights, the wife in this tale is said to have been of this age when she was first married.

NOTE 13—*On Slaves* A slave, among Muslims, is either a person taken captive in war, or carried off by force, and being at the time of capture an infidel, or the offspring of a female slave by another slave, or by any man who is not her owner, or by her owner, if he does not acknowledge himself to be the father. But the offspring of a male slave by a free woman is free. A person who embraces the Mohammedan faith after having been made a slave, does not by this act become free, unless he flees from a foreign infidel master to a Muslim country, and there becomes a Mohammedan. A person cannot have as a slave one whom he acknowledges to be within the prohibited degrees of marriage.¹¹—The slaves of the Arabs are mostly from Abyssinia and the Negro countries. A few, mostly in the houses of wealthy individuals, are from Georgia and Circassia.

Slaves have no civil liberty, but are entirely under the authority of their owners,

¹⁰ See "Modern Egyptians," vol ii ch xv

¹¹ These degrees of relationship will be ex-

plained when I describe the customs relating to marriage

whatever may be the religion, sex, or age, of the latter, and can possess no property, unless by the owner's permission. The owner is entire master, while he pleases, of the person and goods of his slave, and of the offspring of his female slave, which, if begotten by him or presumed to be so, he may recognise as his own legitimate child, or not the child, if recognised by him, enjoys the same privileges as the offspring of a free wife, and if not recognised by him, is his slave. The master may even kill his own slave with impunity for any offence, and he incurs but a slight punishment (as imprisonment for a period at the discretion of the judge) if he kills him wantonly. He may give away or sell his slaves, excepting in some cases which will be mentioned, and may marry them to whom he will, but not separate them when married. A slave, however, according to most of the doctors, cannot have more than two wives at the same time. Unemancipated slaves, at the death of their master, become the property of his heirs, and when an emancipated slave dies, leaving no male descendants or collateral relations, the former master is the heir, or, if he be dead, his heirs inherit the slave's property. As a slave enjoys less advantages than a free person, the law, in some cases, ordains that his punishment for an offence shall be half of that to which the free is liable to the same offence, or even less than half. If it be a fine, or pecuniary compensation, it must be paid by the owner, to the amount, if necessary, of the value of the slave, or the slave must be given in compensation.

The owner, but not the part-owner, may cohabit with any of his female slaves who is a Mohammadan, a Christian, or a Jewess, if he has not married her to another man, but not with two or more who are sisters, or who are related to each other in any of the degrees which would prevent their both being his wives at the same time if they were free. After having so lived with one, he must entirely relinquish such intercourse with her before he can do the same with another who is so related to her. He cannot have this intercourse with a pagan slave. A Christian or Jew may have slaves, but not enjoy the privilege above mentioned with one who is a Mohammadan. The master must wait a certain period (generally from a month to three months) after the acquisition of a female slave, before he can have such intercourse with her. If he find any fault in her within three days, he is usually allowed to return her.

When a man, from being the husband, becomes the master, of a slave, the marriage is dissolved, and he cannot continue to live with her but as her master, enjoying, however, all a master's privileges, unless he emancipates her, in which case he may again take her as his wife with her consent. In like manner, when a woman, from being the wife, becomes the possessor, of a slave, the marriage is dissolved, and cannot be renewed unless she emancipates him, and he consents to the re-union.

Complete and immediate emancipation is sometimes granted to a slave gratuitously, or for a future pecuniary compensation. It is conferred by means of a written document, or by a verbal declaration (expressed in the words, "Thou art free," or some similar phrase) in the presence of two witnesses, or by returning the certificate of sale obtained from the former owner. Future emancipation is sometimes covenanted to be granted on the fulfilment of certain conditions; and more frequently, to be conferred on the occasion of the owner's death. In the latter case, the owner cannot sell the slave to whom he has made this promise, and, as he cannot alienate by will more than one-third of the whole property that he leaves, the law ordains that, if the value of the said slave exceeds that portion, the slave must obtain and pay the additional sum. When a female slave has borne a child to her master, and he acknowledges the child to be his own, he cannot sell this slave, and she becomes free on his death.

Abyssinians and white female slaves are kept by many men of the middle and higher classes, and often instead of wives, as requiring less expense, and being more subservient; but they are generally indulged with the same luxuries as free ladies, their vanity is gratified by costly dresses and ornaments, and they rank high above free servants; as do also the male slaves. Those called Abyssinians appear to be a mixed race between negroes and whites, and are from the territories of the Gallas. They are

mostly kidnapped and sold by their own countrymen. The negro female slaves, as few of them have considerable personal attractions (which is not the case with the Abyssinians, many of whom are very beautiful), are usually employed only in cooking, and other menial offices. The female slaves of the higher classes are often instructed in plain needlework and embroidery, and sometimes in music and dancing. Formerly, many of them possessed sufficient literary accomplishments to quote largely from esteemed poems, or even to compose extemporaneous verses, which they would often accompany with the lute. The condition of many concubine slaves is happy; and that of many, quite the contrary. These, and all other slaves of either sex, are generally treated with kindness, but at first they are usually importuned, and not unfrequently used with much harshness, to induce them to embrace the Mohammedan faith, which almost all of them do. Their services are commonly light, the usual office of the male white slave, who is called "memlook," is that of a page, or a military guard. Eunuchs are employed as guardians of the women, but only in the houses of men of high rank, or of great wealth, on account of the important and confidential office which they fill, they are generally treated in public with especial consideration. I used to remark, in Cairo, that few persons saluted me with a more dignified and consequential air than these pitiable but self-conceited beings. Most of them are Abyssinians or Negroes. Indeed, the slaves in general take too much advantage of the countenance of their masters, especially when they belong to men in power. The master is bound to afford his slaves proper food and clothing, or to let them work for their own support, or to sell, give away, or liberate them. It is, however, considered disgraceful for him to sell a slave who has been long in his possession, and it seldom happens that a master emancipates a female slave, without marrying her to some man able to support her, or otherwise providing for her.

The Prophet strongly enjoined the duty of kindness to slaves. "Feed your memlooks," said he, "with food of that which ye eat, and clothe them with such clothing as ye wear, and command them not to do that which they are unable."¹²—These precepts are generally attended to, either entirely or in a great degree. Some other sayings of the Prophet on this subject well deserve to be mentioned, as the following—"He who beats his slave without fault, or slaps him on the face, his atonement for this is freeing him"—"A man who behaves ill to his slave will not enter into paradise"—"Whoever is the cause of separation between mother and child, by selling or giving, God will separate him from his friends on the day of resurrection"—"When a slave wishes well to his master, and worships God well, for him are double rewards."¹³—It is related of 'Othmán, "that he twisted the ear of a memlook belonging to him, on account of disobedience, and afterwards, repenting of it, ordered him to twist his ear in like manner, but he would not. 'Othmán urged him, and the memlook advanced, and began to wring it by little and little. He said to him, 'Wring it hard, for I cannot endure the punishment of the day of judgment [on account of this act]'. The memlook answered, 'O my master, the day that thou fearest, I also fear.'"¹⁴—It is related also of Zeynel-'Abdeen, that he had a memlook who seized a sheep, and broke its leg, and he said to him, 'Why didst thou this?' He answered, 'To provoke thee to anger.' 'And I,' said he, 'will provoke to anger him who taught thee, and he is blees—go, and be free, for the sake of God.'"¹⁵—Many similar anecdotes might be added, but the general assertions of travellers in the East are more satisfactory evidence in favour of the humane conduct of most Muslims to their slaves.

It sometimes happens, though rarely, that free girls are sold as slaves.¹⁶ A remarkable instance is related in the "Mir'ât ez-Zemân"¹⁷—Fâtmech, surnamed Ghareeb, a slave of the Khaleefeh El-Montasim, the son of Hâroon, was a poetess, accomplished in singing and calligraphy, and extremely beautiful. Her mother was an orphan, and

¹² Nuzhet el-Mutaammil wa-Murshid el-Muta-ahhil, section 9

¹³ Mishkât el-Maqâbeeh, vol. ii pp 140 and 141

1.

¹⁴ Nuzhet el-Mutaammil, &c, loco laudato

¹⁵ See "Modern Egyptians," vol. i ch vii

¹⁶ Events of the year 227

Jaafar, the famous Wezeer of Hároon Er-Rasheed, took her as his wife; but his father, Yahya, reproached him for marrying a woman whose father and mother were unknown, and he therefore removed her from his own residence to a neighbouring house, where he frequently visited her, and she bore him a daughter, the above-mentioned Ghareeb, and died. Jaafar committed her infant to the care of a Christian woman, to nurse, and, on the overthrow of his family, this woman sold her young charge as a slave. El-Emeen, the successor of Er-Rasheed, bought her of a man named Sumbul, but never paid her price; and when he was killed, she returned to her former master; but on the arrival of El-Ma-moon at Baghdád, she was described to him, and he compelled Sumbul to sell her to him. This Sumbul loved her so passionately, that he died of grief at her loss. On the death of El-Ma-moon, his successor, El-Monta-~~am~~, bought her for a hundred thousand dirhems, and emancipated her. The historian adds, that she composed several well-known airs and verses.

NOTE 14. An Arab who is married to his cousin generally calls her by this appellation rather than that of wife, as the tie of blood is, to him, in every respect, stronger than that of matrimony.

NOTE 15.—*On Magic*. The Arabs and other Mohammadans enjoy a remarkable advantage over us in the composition of works of fiction—in the invention of incidents which we should regard as absurd in the extreme, *they* cannot be accused by their countrymen of exceeding the bounds of probability. A case similar to that here described was related to me as a fact, in Cairo. A person in that city, I was told, was suddenly surprised by the disappearance of his brother, and by finding, in his place, an ass—but this animal increased his astonishment, and that of every person who beheld him, by manifesting a sagacity singularly opposed to the proverbial dulness of the generality of his species. Yet, strange as it may seem, it was not imagined that this brute was the lost man in a transformed state, till, one day, an old woman, seeing him, quickly covered her face, and declared the fact. She discovered this by her knowledge of magic, and, by her skill in this art, she agreed to restore the enchanted person to his proper shape. Having collected a number of herbs, she boiled them in a large vessel, and when the decoction had cooled, she took the vessel, and, muttering a certain spell, threw its contents over the animal, endeavouring to do so in such a manner that every part of it should be wetted. Every part of it *was* wetted, excepting one hind-foot, and, accordingly, it was restored to the original human form, with the exception of one foot, which remained like that of an ass.

An implicit belief in magic is entertained by almost all Muslims, and he, among them, who denies its truth, they regard as a freethinker, or an infidel. Some are of opinion that it ceased on the mission of Mohammad, but these are comparatively few. Many of the most learned Muslims, to the present age, have deeply studied it; and a much greater number of persons of inferior education (particularly school-masters) have, more or less, devoted their time and talents to the pursuit of this knowledge. Recourse is had to it for the discovery of hidden treasures, for alchymical purposes, for the acquisition of the knowledge of futurity, to procure offspring, to obtain the affection of a beloved object, to effect cures, to guard against the influence of the evil eye, to afflict or kill an enemy or a rival, and to attain various other objects of desire.

There are two descriptions of magic, one is spiritual, and regarded by all but freethinkers as true; the other, natural, and denounced by the more religious and enlightened as deceptive.

I. Spiritual magic, which is termed “er-Roohánee” (vulgo “Rowhánee”), chiefly depends upon the virtues of certain names of God, and passages from the Kur’án, and the agency of Angels and Jinns, or Genii. It is of two kinds—High and Low (“‘Ilwee” and “Suflee”), or Divine and Satanic (“Rahmánee,” i. e. relating to “the Compassionate” [who is God], and “Sheytánee”).

1 Divine magic is regarded as a sublime science, and is studied only by good men, and practised only for good purposes. Perfection in this branch of magic consists in the knowledge of "the most great name" of God ("el-Isim el-Aazam"), but this knowledge is imparted to none but the peculiar favourites of Heaven. By virtue of this name, which was engraved on his seal-ring, Suleymán (or Solomon) subjected to his dominion the Jinn and the birds and the winds, as mentioned in a former note. By pronouncing it, his minister Ásaf, also, transported, in an instant, to the presence of his sovereign, in Jerusalem, the throne of the Queen of Sheba.¹⁷ But this was a small miracle to effect by such means; for, by uttering this name, a man may even raise the dead. Other names of the Deity, commonly known, are believed to have particular efficacies when uttered or written, as also are the names of the Prophet; and Angels and good Jinn are said to be rendered subservient to the purposes of divine magic by means of certain invocations. Of such names and invocations, together with words unintelligible to the uninitiated in this science, passages from the Kur-án, mysterious combinations of numbers, and peculiar diagrams and figures, are chiefly composed written charms employed for good purposes. Enchantment, when used for benevolent purposes, is regarded by the vulgar as a branch of lawful or divine magic, but not so by the learned, and the same remark applies to the science of divination.

2. Satanic magic, as its name implies, is a science depending on the agency of the Devil and the inferior evil Jinn, whose services are obtained by means similar to those which propitiate, or render subservient, the good Jinn. It is condemned by the Prophet and all good Muslims, and only practised for bad purposes—Enchantment, which is termed "en-Sehr," is almost universally acknowledged to be a branch of satanic magic, but some few persons assert (agreeably with several tales in this work), that it *may* be, and by some *has* been, studied with good intentions, and practised by the aid of good Jinn, consequently, that there is such a science as *good* enchantment, which is to be regarded as a branch of *divine* or *lawful* magic. The metamorphoses are said to be generally effected by means of spells, or invocations to Jinn, accompanied by the sprinkling of water or dust, &c., on the object to be transformed. Persons are said to be enchanted in various ways—some, paralyzed, or even deprived of life, others, affected with irresistible passion for certain objects, others, again, rendered demonaic, and some, transformed into brutes, birds, &c. The evil eye is believed to enchant in a very powerful and distressing manner. This was acknowledged even by the Prophet.¹⁸ Diseases and death are often attributed to its influence. Amulets, which are mostly written charms, of the kind above described, are worn by many Muslims with the view of counteracting, or preserving from, enchantment; and for the same purpose, many ridiculous ceremonies are practised—Divination, which is termed "el-Kiháneh," is pronounced, on the highest authority, to be a branch of satanic magic; though not believed to be so by all Muslims. According to an assertion of the Prophet, what a fortune-teller says may sometimes be true, because one of the Jinn steals away the truth, and carries it to the magician's ear—for the Angels come down to the region next the earth (the lowest heaven), and mention the works that have been pre-ordained in heaven; and the Devils (or evil Jinn) listen to what the Angels say, and hear the orders predestined in heaven, and carry them to the fortune-tellers. It is on such occasions that shooting-stars are hurled at the Devils.¹⁹ It is said that "the diviner obtains the services of the Sheytán by magic arts, and by names [invoked], and by the burning of perfumes, and he informs him of secret things—for the Devils, before the mission of the Apostle of God," it is added, "used to ascend to heaven, and hear words by stealth."²⁰ That the evil Jinn are believed still to ascend sufficiently near to the lowest heaven to hear the conversation of the Angels, and so to assist magicians, appears from the former quotation, and is asserted by all Muslims. The discovery of hidden treasures, before

¹⁷ Kur-án, ch xxvii. v 40, and Commentary of the Jeláleyn

¹⁹ Idem, vol ii pp 384, et seqq.

¹⁸ See "Mishkát el-Maqábeel," vol ii p 374.

²⁰ Account of the early Arabs, in the 'Mu-at ez-Zemán."

alluded to, is one of the objects for which divination is most studied—The mode of divination called “*Darb el-Mendel*” is by some supposed to be effected by the aid of evil Jinn; but the more enlightened of the Muslims regard it as a branch of natural magic. Some curious performances of this kind, by means of a fluid mirror of ink, have been described in my “*Account of the Manners and Customs of the Modern Egyptians*,” and in No. 117 of the “*Quarterly Review*.”²¹

There are certain modes of divination which cannot properly be classed under the head of spiritual magic, but require a place between the account of this science and that of natural magic—The most important of these branches of *Kihāneh* is Astrology, which is called “*Ilm en-Nujoom*” This is studied by many Muslims in the present day, and its professors are often employed by the Arabs to determine a fortunate period for laying the foundation of a building, commencing a journey, &c., but more frequently by the Persians and Turks. The Prophet pronounced astrology to be a branch of magic²²—Another branch of *Kihāneh* is Geomancy, called “*Darb er-Raml*,” a mode of divination from certain marks made on sand (whence its appellation), or on paper, and said to be chiefly founded on astrology—The science called “*ez-Zijr*,” or “*el-Evāfeh*,” is a third branch of *Kihāneh*, being divination or auguration chiefly from the motions and positions, or postures, of birds, or of gazelles and other beasts of the chase. Thus, what was termed a “*Sāneh*,” that is, such an animal standing or passing with its right side towards the spectator, was esteemed among the Arabs as of good omen, and a “*Bāreh*,” or an animal of this kind with its left side towards the spectator, was held as inauspicious²³—“*El-Kiyāfeh*,” under which term are included Chiromancy and its kindred sciences, is a fourth branch of *Kihāneh*—“*Et-Tefā-ul*,” or the taking an omen, particularly a good one, from a name or words accidentally heard or seen, or chosen from a book, belongs to the same science. The taking a “*fāl*,” or omen, from the *Kur-ān* is generally held to be lawful—Various trifling events are considered as ominous. For instance, a Sultān quitting his palace with his troops, a standard happened to strike a “*thureilā*” (a cluster of lamps, so called from resembling the Pleiades), and broke them—he drew from this an evil omen, and would have relinquished the expedition, but one of his chief officers said to him, “O our lord, thy standards have reached the Pleiades,”—and, being relieved by this remark, he proceeded, and returned victorious²⁴—The interpretation of dreams, “*Taabeer el-Menāmāt*,” must also be classed among the branches of this science. According to the Prophet, it is the only branch of divination worthy of dependence. “Good dreams,” said he, “are one of the parts of prophecy,” and “nothing else of prophecy remains.” “Good dreams are from God, and false dreams, from the Devil.” “When any one of you has a bad dream, spit three times over your left shoulder, and seek protection with God from the Devil thrice, and turn from the side on which the dream was, to the other.”²⁵ This rule is observed by many Muslims. Dreams are generally so fully relied upon by them as to be sometimes the means of deciding contested points in history and science. The sight, in a dream, of anything green or white, or of water, is considered auspicious, anything black or red, or fire, inauspicious—The distinction of fortunate and unfortunate days should also here be mentioned. Thursday and Friday, especially the latter, are considered fortunate, Monday and Wednesday, doubtful, Sunday, Tuesday, and Saturday, especially the last, unfortunate. It is said that there are seven evil days in every [lunar] month, namely, the third, on which Kābeel (or Cain) killed Hābeel (Abel), the fifth, on which God cast down Adam from paradise, and afflicted the people of Yoonus (Jonas), and on which Yoosuf (or Joseph) was cast into the well, the thirteenth, on which God took away the wealth of Eyyoob (or Job), and afflicted him,

²¹ During his last residence in Egypt, Mr Lane thought he had discovered a clue to the means employed in these performances, but he afterwards found that there were cases which remained to him inexplicable—Ed.

²² *Mishkāt el-Masābeeh*, loco laudato

²³ *Mir-āt ez-Zemān*, loco laudato

²⁴ *El-Is hākee*, in his account of the reign of El-Montasim, the son of Hārūn

²⁵ *Mishkāt el-Masābeeh*, vol ii p. 388.

and took away the kingdom from Suleymán (or Solomon), and on which the Jews killed the prophets, the sixteenth, on which God exterminated and buried the people of Loot (or Lot), and transformed three hundred Christians into swine, and Jews into apes, and on which the Jews sawed asunder Zekereeyà (or Zachariah); the twenty-first, on which Pharaoh was born, and on which he was drowned, and on which his nation was afflicted with the plagues, the twenty-fourth, on which Numrood²⁶ (or Nimrod) killed seventy women, and cast El-Khaleel (or Abraham) into the fire, and on which was slaughtered the camel of Sâleh, and the twenty-fifth, on which the suffocating wind was sent upon the people of Hood²⁷

II Natural magic, which is called "es-Seemiyà," is regarded by most persons of the more enlightened classes of Muslims as altogether a deceptive art, no more worthy of respect than legerdemain, but it seems to be nearly allied to enchantment, for it is said to effect, in appearance, the most wonderful transformations, and to cause the most extraordinary visions, affecting the senses and imagination in a manner similar to opium. This and other drugs are supposed, by some persons, to be the chief means by which such illusions are caused, and perfumes, which are generally burnt in these performances, may operate in a similar manner. As such things are employed in performances of the kind called "Darb el-Mendel," before mentioned, these feats are regarded by many as effected by natural magic, notwithstanding what has been said above respecting the services of evil Jinn being procured by means of perfumes—Alchemy ("el-Keemiyà") is a branch of natural magic. It is studied by many Muslims of the present day, and by some of considerable talents and attainments.

The most celebrated of the magicians who have gained notoriety in Egypt during the course of the last hundred years, was the sheykh Ahmad Sâdoomeh, who flourished somewhat more than sixty years ago—I write in 1837. Several persons of Cairo, men of intelligence and of good education, have related to me various most marvellous stories of his performances, on the authority of eye-witnesses whom they considered veracious, but a more credible account of this magician I have found in the work of an excellent historian of Modern Egypt. This author mentions the sheykh Sâdoomeh as an aged man, of venerable appearance, who derived his origin from the town of Semennood, in the Delta, and who acquired a very great and extensive celebrity for his attainments in spiritual and natural magic, and for holding converse, face to face, with Jinn, and causing them to appear to other persons, even to the blind, as men acquainted with him informed the historian. His contemporaries, says this writer, entertained various opinions respecting him, but, among them, a famous grammarian and general scholar, the sheykh Hasan El-Kafrawee, regarded him as a first-rate saint, who performed evident miracles, this learned man pronouncing as such the effects of "his legerdemain and natural magic." His fame he describes as having increased until he was induced to try an unlucky experiment. A Memlook chief, Yousuf Bey, saw some magic characters written on the body of one of his female slaves, and, exasperated by jealousy, commanded her, with a threat of instant death, to tell him who had done this. She confessed that a woman had taken her to the sheykh Sâdoomeh, and that he had written this charm to attract to her the Bey's love. Upon hearing this, he instantly sent some attendants to seize the magician, and to put him to death, and throw him into the Nile, which was done.²⁸ But the manner in which the seizure was made, as related to me by one of my friends, deserves to be mentioned. Several persons, one after another, endeavoured to lay hold upon him, but every arm that was stretched forth for this purpose was instantly paralyzed, through a spell muttered by the magician, until a man behind him thrust a gag into his mouth, and so stopped his enchantments.

Of the stories related to me of Sâdoomeh's miracles, the following will serve as a

²⁶ Vulgarly pronounced Nemrood

²⁷ El-Is-hâkee, close of his account of the reign of El Emeen

²⁸ El-Jabartee's Modern Egyptian History (MS

in my possession), account of the death of Yousuf Bey, in the year of the Flight 1191, and account of the death of the sheykh Hasan El-Kafrawee, in the year 1202.

specimen —In order to give one of his friends a treat, he took him to the distance of about half an hour's walk into the desert on the north of Cairo, here they both sat down, upon the pebbly and sandy plain, and, the magician having uttered a spell, they suddenly found themselves in the midst of a garden, like one of the gardens of paradise, abounding with flowers and fruit-trees of every kind, springing up from a soil clothed with verdure brilliant as the emerald, and irrigated by numerous streamlets of the clearest water. A repast of the most delicious viands and fruits and wines was spread before them by invisible hands, and they both ate to satiety, taking copious draughts of the various wines. At length, the magician's guest sank into a deep sleep, and when he awoke, he found himself again in the pebbly and sandy plain, with Sádloomeli still by his side —The reader will probably attribute this vision to a dose of opium or some similar drug, and such I suppose to have been the means employed, for I cannot doubt the integrity of the narrator, though he would not admit such an explanation; regarding the whole as an affair of magic, effected by the operation of Jinns, like similar relations in the present work.

It may be remarked that most of the enchantments described in this work are said to be performed by *women* and reputed *witches* appear to have been much more numerous in all countries than *wizards*. This fact the Muslims readily explain by a saying of their Prophet —That women are deficient in sense and religion —whence they argue that they are more inclined than men to practise what is unlawful.

NOTE 16—*On the Two Grand Festivals* The Muslims observe two grand 'Eeds, or Festivals, in every year. The first of these immediately follows Ramadán, the month of abstinence, and lasts three days: it is called the Minor Festival. The other, which is called the Great Festival, commences on the tenth of Zu-l-Hejjah, the day when the pilgrims, halting on their return from Mount 'Arafát to Mekkeh, in the Valley of Miná (vulgarly called Muná), perform their sacrifice: the observance of this festival also continues three days, or four.

Early in the first morning, on each of these festivals, the Muslim is required to perform a lustration of his whole person, as on the mornings of Friday, and on the first morning of the Minor Festival, he should break his fast with a few dates or some other light food; but on the Great Festival, he abstains from food until he has acquitted himself of the religious duties now to be mentioned. Soon after sunrise, on the first day of each festival, the men, dressed in new or in their best clothes, repair to the mosque, or to a particular place appointed for the performance of the prayers of the 'Eed. On going thither, they should repeat, frequently, "God is most great"—this, on the Minor Festival, they should do maudibly on the other, aloud. The congregation, having assembled, repeat the prayers of two rek'ahs, after which, the Khatceeb recites a khutbeh, i. e. an exhortation and a prayer. On each of these festivals, in the mosque, or place of prayer, and in the street, and at each other's houses, friends congratulate and embrace one another, generally paying visits for this purpose, and the great receive visits from their dependants. The young, on these occasions, kiss the right hand of the aged; and servants or dependants do the same to their masters or superiors, unless the latter be of high rank, in which case they kiss the end of the hanging sleeve, or the skirt of the outer garment. Most of the shops are closed, excepting those at which eatables and sweet drinks are sold, but the streets are filled with people in their holiday clothes.

On the Minor Festival, which, as it terminates an arduous fast, is celebrated with more rejoicing than the other,²¹ servants and other dependants receive presents of new articles of clothing from their masters or patrons, and the servant receives presents of small sums of money from his master's friends, whom, if they do not visit his master, he goes to congratulate, as well as from any former master, to whom he often takes a

²⁰ Hence it has been called by many travellers, and even by some learned Orientalists, the Great Feast, but it is never so called by the Arabs.

plateful of kahks. These are sweet cakes, or biscuits, of an annular form, composed of flour and butter, with a little 'ajaneeyeh (which is a thick paste consisting of butter, honey, a little flour, and some spices) inside. They are also often sent as presents on this occasion by other people. Another custom required of the faithful on this festival is the giving of alms.

On the Great Festival, after the prayers of the congregation, every one who can afford it performs, with his own hand, or by that of a deputy, a sacrifice of a ram, he-goat, cow or buffalo, or she-camel, part of the meat of which he eats, and part he gives to the poor, or to his friends or dependants. The ram or goat should be at least one year old, the cow or buffalo, two years, and the camel, five years, and the victim should not have any considerable mutilation or infirmity. A cow or buffalo, or a camel, is a sufficient sacrifice for seven persons. The clothes which were put on new at the former festival are generally worn on this occasion; and the presents which are given to servants and others are usually somewhat less.

On each of the two festivals it is also customary, especially with the women, to visit the tombs of relations. The party generally take with them a palm-branch, and place it, broken in several pieces, or merely its leaves, upon the tomb or monument; or some, instead of this, place sweet basil or other flowers. They also usually provide themselves with sweet cakes, bread, dates, or some other kind of food, to distribute to the poor. But their first duty, on arriving at the tomb, is to recite the Fátéhah (the opening Chapter of the Kur-án), or to employ a person to recite previously a longer chapter; generally the thirty-sixth (or Soorat Yá-Seen), or even the whole of the book, or sometimes the visitors recite the Fátéhah, and, after having hired a person to perform a longer recitation, go away before he commences. The women often stay all the days of the festival in the cemeteries, either in tents, or in houses of their own, erected there for their reception on these and other occasions. The tent of each party surrounds the tomb which is the object of their visit. In the outskirts of the cemeteries, swings and whirligigs are erected; and story-tellers, dancers, and jugglers, amuse the populace.

NOTE 17.—*On the Mode of Slaughtering of Animals for Food.* In the old translation, the sheykh is described as preparing to slaughter the cow with a *mult*. This is a mistake of a serious nature, as the flesh of the victim, if so killed, would be legally unclean. The Muslims are required to slaughter animals for food in a particular manner. Sheep, goats, cows or bulls, and buffaloes, must be killed by cutting the throat, at the part next the head, or any other part, dividing the windpipe, gullet, and carotid arteries. The camel is to be slaughtered by *stibny* the throat at the part next the breast. Poultry, also, must be killed by cutting the throat, and so must every tame animal of which the flesh is lawful food. The slaughterer, in every case, must be a Muslim, a Christian, or a Jew, of either sex. On commencing the operation, he must say, "In the name of God! God is most great!"—or at least, "In the name of God!"—but not add, "the Compassionate, the Merciful"—for an obvious reason. Birds or beasts of the chase may be killed by an arrow, a dog, a hawk, &c., but the name of God must be uttered at the time of discharging the arrow, or slipping the dog, &c. When the beast or bird is not killed at once by the arrow, &c., it must be slaughtered as soon as possible, in the same manner as sheep and poultry. The law, as well as humanity, requires this.

NOTE 18.—*On the Influence of Eloquence and Tales upon the Arabs.* The main incident upon which this work is founded, the triumph of the fascination of the tongue over a cruel and unjust determination which nothing else could annul, might be regarded, by persons unacquainted with the character and literature of the Arabs, as a contrivance too improbable in its nature; but such is not the case. Perhaps there are no other people in the world who are such enthusiastic admirers of literature, and so excited by romantic tales, as those above named. Eloquence, with them, is lawful magic it exercises over their minds an irresistible influence. "I swear by God," said their

Prophet, "verily abuse of infidels in verse is worse to them than arrows." ²⁰ This, of course, alludes to Arab unbelievers

In the purest, or Heroic Age of Arabic literature, which was anterior to the triumph of the Mohammadan religion, the conquest which the love of eloquence could achieve over the sanguinary and vindictive feelings of the Arabs was most remarkably exemplified in the annual twenty days' fair of 'Okáz, or 'Okádh. Respecting this fair, I shall here insert a few particulars borrowed from an author who is at present devoting talents of the very highest order to the study and illustration of the history and literature of the early Arabs, and to whose conversation and writings I must acknowledge myself indebted for most valuable information, which will often be of great utility to me in this undertaking, as well as in every branch of my Arabic studies

The fair of 'Okáz "was not only a great mart opened annually to all the tribes of Arabia; but it was also a literary congress, or rather a general concourse of virtues, of glory and of poetry, whither the hero-poets resorted to celebrate their exploits in rhyming verse, and peacefully to contend for every kind of honour. This fair was held in the district of Mekkeh, between Et-Taíf and Nakhleh, and was opened at the new moon of Zu-l-Kaadeh, that is to say, at the commencement of a period of three sacred months, during which all war was suspended, and homicide interdicted. How is it possible to conceive that men whose wounds were always bleeding, who had always acts of vengeance to execute, vengeance to dread, could at a certain epoch impose silence upon their animosities, so as tranquilly to sit by a mortal enemy? How could the brave who required the blood of a father, a brother, or a son, according to the phraseology of the desert and of the Bible,²¹ who long, perhaps, had pursued in vain the murderer,—meet him, accost him peacefully at 'Okáz, and only assault with cadences and rhymes him whose presence alone seemed to accuse him of impotence or cowardice,—him whom he was bound to slay, under pain of infamy, after the expiration of the truce?²² In fine, how could he hear a panegyric celebrating a glory acquired at his own expense, and sustain the fire of a thousand looks, and yet appear unmoved? Had the Arabs no longer any blood in their veins during the continuance of the fair?—These questions so embarrassing,

were determined [to a great degree], during the age of Arab paganism, in a manner the most simple and most refined.—At the fair of 'Okáz, the heroes were masked [or veiled].—In the recitations and improvisations, the voice of the orator was aided by that of a rhapsodist or crier, who was stationed near him, and repeated his words. There is a similar office in the public prayers: it is that of the *inballigh* (transmitter), who is employed to repeat in a loud voice what is said in a lower tone by the *Imám*. These two facts have been revealed to me by the same manuscript which I am translating, and upon which I am commenting. The use of the mask [or veil] might, however, be either adopted or dispensed with, *ad libitum*, as is proved by the narratives of a great number of quarrels begun and ended at 'Okáz. It was in this congress of the Arab poets (and almost every warrior was a poet at the age which I am considering) that the dialects of Arabia became fused into a magic language, the language of the *Hejáá*, which Mohammad made use of to subvert the world, for the triumph of Mohammad is nothing else than the triumph of speech."²³—The *Kur-án* is regarded by the Arabs as an everlasting miracle, surpassing all others, appealing to the understanding of every generation by its immutable eloquence. A stronger proof of the power of language over their minds could hardly be adduced; unless it be their being capable of receiving as a credible fact the tradition that both geni and men were attracted by the eloquent reading of David, when he recited the Psalms; that the wild beasts and the birds were alike fascinated, and that sometimes there were borne out from his assembly as many as four hundred corpses of men who died from the excessive delight with which he thus inspired them.²⁴ It may be added

²⁰ *Mishkát el-Maáfíbeeh*, vol. II p. 424.

²¹ Genesis ix. 5.

²² *Lettres sur l'Histoire des Arabes avant l'Islamisme*, par Fulgence Fresnel. Paris, 1836, pp. 31, et seqq.

²³ *El-Is-hákee*

that the recitation, or chanting, of the *Ḳur-án* is a favourite means of amusing the guests at modern private festivities

In what may be termed the Middle Age of Arabic literature, commencing from the triumph of the Mohammadan religion, and extending to the foundation of the Empire of Baghdád, the power of eloquence over the educated classes of the Arabs probably increased in proportion as it became less familiar to them for, early in this age, they began to simplify their spoken language in consequence of their intercourse with strangers, who could not generally acquire the difficult, old dialect of their conquerors this, therefore, then began to be confined to literary compositions. That such a change took place at this period appears from several anecdotes interspersed in Arabic works The *Khaleefeh El-Weleed* (who reigned near the close of the first century of the Flight), the son of 'Abd-El-Mehk, spoke so corrupt a dialect that he often could not make himself understood by the Arabs of the desert. A ridiculous instance of the mistakes occasioned by his use of the simplified language which is now current is related by Abu-l-Fidá The same author adds, that the father and predecessor of this prince was a man of eloquence, and that he was grieved by the corrupt speech of his son, which he considered as a defect that incapacitated him to be a future ruler of the Arabs, as they were still great admirers of purity of speech, though so large a proportion of them spoke a corrupt dialect, wherefore, he sent him to a house to be instructed by a grammarian, but after the youth had remained there a long time, he returned to his father more ignorant than before. Vulgarisms, however, would sometimes escape from the mouth of 'Abd-El-Mehk himself, yet, so sensible was he to eloquence, that, when a learned man, with whom he was conversing, elegantly informed him of an error of this kind, he ordered his mouth to be filled with jewels "These," said his courteous admonisher, "are things to be treasured up, not to be expended"—and for this delicate hint, he was further rewarded with thirty thousand pieces of silver, and several costly articles of apparel³⁴—It may be aptly added, that this *Khaleefeh* was, in the beginning of his reign, an unjust monarch, and as he thus bore some slight resemblance to our *Shahriyár*, so was he reclaimed to a sense of his duty by means somewhat similar *Beng*, one night, unable to sleep, he called for a person to tell him a story for his amusement "O Prince of the Faithful," said the man thus bidden, "there was an owl in *El-Mósil*, and an owl in *El-Basrah*, and the owl of *El-Mósil* demanded in marriage, for her son, the daughter of the owl of *El-Basrah* but the owl of *El-Basrah* said, 'I will not, unless thou give me, as her dowry, a hundred desolate farms' 'That I cannot do,' said the owl of *El-Mósil*, 'at present, but if our sovereign (may God, whose name be exalted, preserve him') live one year, I will give thee what thou desirest'"—This simple fable sufficed to rouse the prince from his apathy, and he thenceforward applied himself to fulfil the duties of his station³⁵

In the most flourishing age of Arabic poetry and general literature and science, commencing from the foundation of the Empire of Baghdád, and extending to the conquest of Egypt by the 'Osmánlee Turks, the influence of eloquent and entertaining language upon the character of the Arab sovereigns was particularly exemplified. A few illustrative anecdotes may here be inserted

It is related by *El-Asna'e*, that *Hároon Er-Rasheed*, at a grand fête which he was giving, ordered the poet *Abu-l-'Atáhiyeh* to depict, in verse, the voluptuous enjoyments of his sovereign. The poet began thus —

"Live long in safe enjoyment of thy desires, under the shadow of lofty palaces"

"Well said!" exclaimed *Er-Rasheed* "and what next?"

"May thy wishes be abundantly fulfilled, whether at eventide or in the morning!"

"Well!" again said the *Khaleefeh* "then what next?"

"But when the rattling breath struggles in the dark cavity of the chest,

Then shalt thou know surely, that thou hast been only in the midst of illusions."

³⁴ *El-la-hakee*.

³⁵ *Idem*.

—Er-Rasheed wept; and Fadl, the son of Yahya, said, "The Prince of the Faithful sent for thee to divert him, and thou hast plunged him into grief." "Suffer him," said the prince; "for he hath beheld us in blindness, and it displeased him to increase it."²⁶

The family of the Barnekees (one of the most brilliant ornaments of which was the Wezeer Jaafar, who has been rendered agreeably familiar to us by the many scenes in which he is introduced in the present work) earned a noble and enduring reputation by their attachment to literature, and the magnificent rewards they conferred on learned men. It was peculiarly hard, therefore, that literature contributed to their melancholy overthrow. Poets were employed by their enemies to compose songs artfully pointed against them, to be sung before the prince to whom they owed their power. Of one of these songs, the following lines formed a part —

"Would that Hand had fulfilled the promises she made us, and healed the disease under which we suffer!

That she had once, at least, acted for herself' for imbecile, indeed, is he who doth not so"

"Yea! By Allah! Imbecile!" exclaimed the Khaleefeh, on hearing these verses his jealousy was roused, and his vengeance soon after fell heavily upon his former favourites.²⁷

One of the Khaleefehs having invited the poets of his day to his palace, a Bedawee, carrying a water-jar to fill at the river, followed them, and entered with them. The Khaleefeh, seeing this poor man with the jar on his shoulder, asked him what brought him thither. He returned for answer these words —

"Seeing that this company had girded on the saddles

To repair to thy overflowing river, I came with my jar"

The Khaleefeh, delighted with his answer, gave orders to fill his jar with gold.²⁸

In the present declining age of Arabian learning (which may be said to have commenced about the period of the conquest of Egypt by the 'Osmánees), literary recreations still exert a magic influence upon the Arabs. Compositions of a similar nature to the tales of a Thousand and One Nights (though regarded by the learned as idle stories unworthy of being classed with their literature) enable numbers of professional storytellers to attract crowds of delighted listeners to the coffee-shops of the East, and now that the original of the present work is printed, and to be purchased at a moderate price it will probably soon, in a great measure, supersede the romances of Abou-Zeyd, Er-Záhir, and 'Antar. As a proof of the powerful fascinations with which the tales of a Thousand and One Nights affect the mind of a highly-enlightened Muslim, it may be mentioned that the latest native historian of Modern Egypt, the sheikh 'Abd El-Rahmán El-Jabartee, so delighted in their perusal that he took the trouble of refining the language of a copy of them which he possessed, expunging or altering whatever was grossly offensive to morality without the somewhat redeeming quality of wit, and adding many facetiæ of his own, and of other literati. What has become of this copy, I have been unable, though acquainted with several of his friends, to discover.

NOTE 19 It is a common custom among the Muslims to give a present to a person who brings good tidings. The word (*bishárah*) which I render "a reward for bringing good news," literally signifies merely "good news," but it is often used, as in this case, in the former sense.

NOTE 20 A Mohammadan woman is not allowed to show her face to any men excepting certain near relations and others whom the law prohibits her from marrying. Who these are will be mentioned in a future note, descriptive of the general laws and ceremonies of marriage. Respectable females consider it a great disgrace to be seen unveiled by any men but those above alluded to.

²⁶ Fakhr-ed-Deen, in De Sacy's *Chrestomathie Arabe*, vol. i p. 3 of the Arabic Text. 2nd edition.

²⁷ Ibn-Khaldoon, *ubi supra*, vol. i p. 124 of the Arabic text.

²⁸ Halbet el-Kumeyt (*Mis in my possession*), chap. vii.

NOTE 21.—*On the Deenár and Dirhem.* The standards of gold and silver coin, among the Arabs, were the deenár and the dirhem therefore, in this work, I call the former “a piece of gold,” and the latter “a piece of silver.” Their values have varied considerably at different periods, but in the present work, we shall sufficiently approximate to the truth, if we understand the average value of the former to be about ten shillings or half a guinea, and that of the latter, about sixpence.

NOTE 22 —*Description of Shops.* In Eastern cities, most of the great thoroughfare-streets, and many others, have a row of shops along each side, not communicating with the superstructures, which latter are divided into separate lodgings, inhabited by different families, and seldom by the persons who rent the shops beneath. These streets are called, in Arabic, “Sooks,” and are generally termed by us, “Bázárs.” A whole street of this description, or a portion of such a street, commonly contains only or chiefly shops appropriated to a particular trade, and is called the Sook of that trade. In general, the shop is a small recess or cell, about six or seven feet high, and between three and four feet wide, the floor of which is even with the top of a raised seat of stone or brick, called “mastabah,” between two and three feet high, and about the same in breadth, upon which the shopkeeper usually sits.³⁹ The front of the shop is furnished with shutters, which, when closed, at night, are secured by a wooden lock. Several of the engravings in this work will convey a better notion of shops of different kinds than a more detailed description.

NOTE 23 Distrust in his governors and relations and acquaintance often induces an Arab to hide his money under the paved floor of a room, or in some other place, in his house.

NOTE 24 These words, “I give myself to thee,” uttered by a woman to a man, even without the presence of witnesses, if they cannot be easily procured, render her his lawful wife, if he replies that he accepts her, and gives her a dowry.

NOTE 25 I have substituted “Jimneeyeh” (agreeably with the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred nights, and because the context requires it) for “Efreeteh,” which signifies a powerful and evil female genie.—The tale to which this note refers may be illustrated by the following anecdote, which was related to me by a Persian with whom I was acquainted in Cairo, named Abu-l-Kásim, a native of Geelan, then superintendent of the Báshá's Printing-office at Boolák.

One of this person's countrymen, whom he asserted to be a man of indubitable veracity, was sitting on the roof of a house which he had hired, overlooking the Ganges, and was passing the closing hour of the day, according to his usual custom, smoking his Persian pipe, and teasing his eyes by gazing at the beautiful forms of Indian maidens bathing in the river, when he beheld among them one so lovely that his heart was overpowered with desire to have her for his wife. At nightfall she came to him, and told him that she had observed his emotion, and would consent to become his wife; but on the condition that he should never admit another female to take or share her place, and that she should only be with him in the night-time. They took the marriage-vow to each other, with none for their witness but God, and great was his happiness, till, one evening, he saw again, among a group of girls in the river, another who excited in him still more powerful emotions. To his surprise, this very form stood before him at the approach of night. He withstood the temptation, mindful of his marriage-vow—she used every allurements, but he was resolute. His fair visitor then told him that she was his wife, that she was a Jimneeyeh; and that she would always thenceforward visit him in the form of any female whom he might chance to prefer.

³⁹ The mastabah, with the picturesque Arab architecture of which it forms a part, is fast disappearing from Egypt. In Cairo and Alexandria, Mohammed 'Alí ordered that the mastabahs in the thoroughfare-streets should be removed, or re-

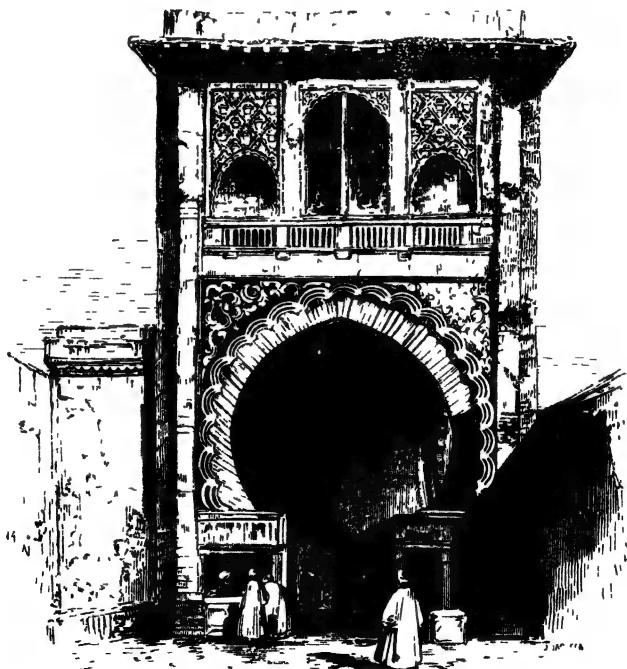
duced to about a foot in width, and interdicted the erection of new meshrebeeyehs (projecting windows of lattice-work), although he allowed the old ones to remain.—Ed

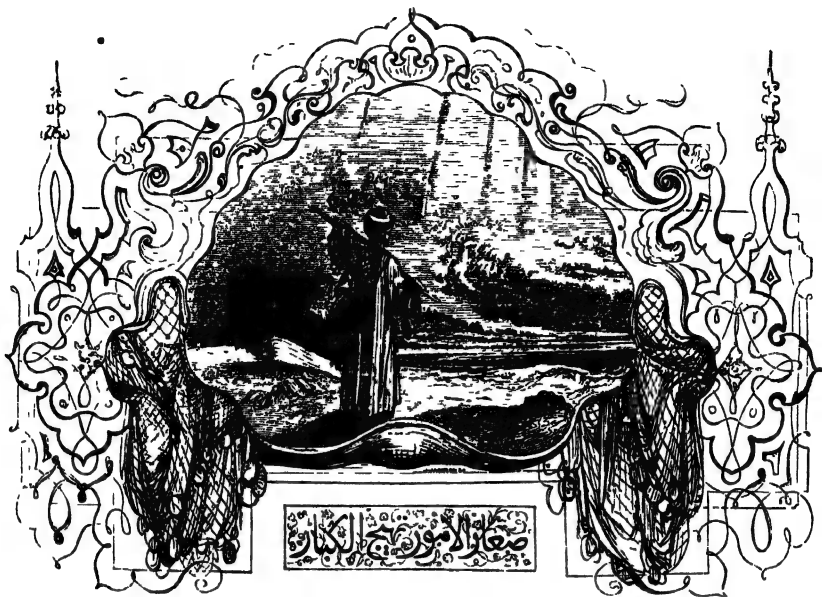
NOTE 26. This form of benediction is almost always added when the Prophet is mentioned in a book by any of his followers, and often also in conversation.

NOTE 27. Perhaps it is needless to explain this proverb by the words of the Bible—"Vengeance is mine, I will repay, saith the Lord" (Romans, xii 19) For the honour of the Muslims I must say that this maxim is often observed by them, excepting in cases to which the law of retaliation applies

NOTE 28. The houses in Arabian countries generally have flat roofs, upon which, in the summer, some of the inhabitants often sleep. the interior, therefore, is as accessible from the roof as from the common entrance

NOTE 29 I here steer a middle course between my usual standard copy—which gives the story of the third sheykh more fully than I have done—and the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred nights, which omits it altogether, as does also the copy from which the old translation was made, perhaps on account of its uninteresting nature.





CHAPTER II

COMMENCING WITH PART OF THE THIRD NIGHT, AND ENDING WITH
PART OF THE NINTH

THE STORY OF THE FISHERMAN.

THERE was a certain fisherman, advanced in age, who had a wife and three children ; and though he was in indigent circumstances, it was his custom to cast his net, every day, no more than four times. One day he went forth at the hour of noon to the shore of the sea, and put down his basket, and cast his net, and waited until it was motionless in the water, when he drew together its strings, and found it to be heavy : he pulled, but could not draw it up : so he took the end of the cord, and knocked a stake into the shore, and tied the cord to it. He then stripped himself, and dived round the net, and continued to pull until he drew it out : whereupon he rejoiced, and put on his clothes ; but when he came to examine the net, he found in it the carcass of an ass. At the sight of this he mourned, and

exclaimed, There is no strength nor power but in God, the High, the Great ! This is a strange piece of fortune !—And he repeated the following verse :—

O thou who occupiest thyself in the darkness of night, and in peril ! Spare thy trouble, for the support of Providence is not obtained by toil ¹¹

He then disencumbered his net of the dead ass, and wrung it out ; after which he spread it, and descended into the sea, and—exclaiming, In the name of God !—cast it again, and waited till it had sunk and was still, when he pulled it, and found it more heavy and more difficult to raise than on the former occasion. He therefore concluded that it was full of fish : so he tied it, and stripped, and plunged and dived, and pulled until he raised it, and drew it upon the shore ; when he found in it only a large jar, full of sand and mud ; on seeing which, he was troubled in his heart, and repeated the following words of the poet :—

O angry fate, forbear ! or, if thou wilt not forbear, relent !
Neither favour from fortune do I gain, nor profit from the work of my hands.
I came forth to seek my sustenance, but have found it to be exhausted
How many of the ignorant are in splendour ! and how many of the wise, in
obscurity !

So saying, he threw aside the jar, and wrung out and cleansed his net ; and, begging the forgiveness of God for his impatience, returned to the sea the third time, and threw the net, and waited till it had sunk and was motionless : he then drew it out, and found in it a quantity of broken jars and pots.

Upon this, he raised his head towards heaven, and said, O God, Thou knowest that I cast not my net more than four times ; and I have now cast it three times ! Then—exclaiming, In the name of God !—he cast the net again into the sea, and waited till it was still ; when he attempted to draw it up, but could not, for it clung to the bottom. And he exclaimed, There is no strength nor power but in God !—and stripped himself again, and dived round the net, and pulled it until he raised it upon the shore ; when he opened it, and found in it a bottle² of brass, filled with something, and having its mouth closed with a stopper of lead, bearing the impression of the seal of our lord Suleymán.³ At the sight of this, the fisherman was rejoiced, and said, This I will sell in the copper-market ; for it is worth ten pieces of gold. He then shook it, and found it to be heavy, and said, I must open it, and see what is in it, and store it in my bag ; and then I will sell the bottle in the copper-market. So he took out a knife, and picked

at the lead until he extracted it from the bottle. He then laid the bottle on the ground, and shook it, that its contents might pour out ; but there came forth from it nothing but smoke, which ascended towards the sky, and spread over the face of the earth ; at which he wondered excessively. And after a little while, the smoke collected together, and was condensed, and then became agitated, and was converted into an 'Efreet, whose head was in the clouds, while his feet rested upon the ground ⁴ his head was like a dome : his hands were like winnowing forks ;⁵ and his legs, like masts : his mouth resembled a cavern . his teeth were like stones ; his nostrils, like trumpets ;⁶ and his eyes, like lamps ; and he had dishevelled and dust-coloured hair.



When the fisherman beheld this 'Efreet, the muscles of his sides quivered, his teeth were locked together, his spittle dried up, and he saw not his way. The 'Efreet, as soon as he perceived him, exclaimed, There is no deity but God : Suleymán is the Prophet of God. O Prophet of God, slay me not ; for I will never again oppose thee in word, or rebel against thee in deed !—O Márid,⁷ said the fisherman, dost thou say, Suleymán is the Prophet of God ? Suleymán hath been dead a thousand and eight hundred years ; and we are now in the end of time. What is thy history, and what is thy tale, and what was the cause of thy entering this bottle ? When the Márid heard these words of the fisherman, he said, There is no deity but God ! Receive news, O fisherman !—Of what, said the fisherman, dost thou give me news ? He answered, Of thy being instantly put to a most cruel death. The fisherman exclaimed, Thou deservest, for this news, O master of the 'Efrees, the withdrawal of protection from thee, O thou remote !” Wherefore wouldst thou kill me ? and what requires thy killing me, when I have liberated thee from the bottle, and rescued thee from the bottom of the sea, and brought thee up upon the dry land ?—The 'Efreet answered, Choose what kind of death thou wilt die, and in what manner thou shalt be killed.—What is my offence, said the fisherman, that this should be my recompense from thee ? The 'Efreet replied, Hear my story, O fisherman.—Tell it then, said the fisherman, and be short in thy words ; for my soul hath sunk down to my feet.

Know then, said he, that I am one of the heretical Jinn : I rebelled against Suleymán the son of Dáood : I and Şakhr the Jinnee ;⁹ and he sent to me his Wezeer, Ásaf the son of Barkhiyâ, who came upon me forcibly, and took me to him in bonds, and placed me before him : and when Suleymán saw me, he offered up a prayer for protection against me, and exhorted me to embrace the faith, and to submit to his authority ; but I refused ; upon which he called for this bottle, and confined me in it, and closed it upon me with the leaden stopper, which he stamped with the Most Great Name : he then gave orders to the Jinn, who carried me away, and threw me into the midst of the sea. There I remained a hundred years ; and I said in my heart, Whosoever shall liberate me, I will enrich him for ever :—but the hundred years passed over me, and no one liberated me : and I entered upon another hundred years ; and I said, Whosoever shall liberate me, I will open to him the treasures of the earth ;—but no one did so : and four hundred years more passed over me, and I said,

Whosoever shall liberate me, I will perform for him three wants :— but still no one liberated me. I then fell into a violent rage, and said within myself, Whosoever shall liberate me now, I will kill him, and only suffer him to choose in what manner he will die. And lo, now thou hast liberated me, and I have given thee thy choice of the manner in which thou wilt die.

When the fisherman had heard the story of the 'Efreet, he exclaimed, O Allah ! that I should not have liberated thee but in such a time as this ! Then said he to the 'Efreet, Pardon me, and kill me not, and so may God pardon thee, and destroy me not, lest God give power over thee to one who will destroy thee. The Márid answered, I must positively kill thee ; therefore choose by what manner of death thou wilt die. The fisherman then felt assured of his death ; but he again implored the 'Efreet, saying, Pardon me by way of gratitude for my liberating thee.—Why, answered the 'Efreet, I am not going to kill thee but for that very reason, because thou hast liberated me —O Sheykh of the 'Efrees, said the fisherman, do I act kindly towards thee, and dost thou recompense me with baseness ? But the proverb lieth not that saith,—

We did good to them, and they returned us the contrary, and such, by my life,
is the conduct of the wicked.

Thus he who acteth kindly to the undeserving is recompensed in the same manner
as the aider of Umm-'Ámir ¹⁰

The 'Efreet, when he heard these words, answered by saying, Covet not life, for thy death is unavoidable. Then said the fisherman within himself, This is a Jinnee, and I am a man ; and God hath given me sound reason ; therefore, I will now plot his destruction with my art and reason, like as he hath plotted with his cunning and perfidy. So he said to the 'Efreet, Hast thou determined to kill me ? He answered, Yes. Then said he, By the Most Great Name engraved upon the seal of Sulcymán, I will ask thee one question ; and wilt thou answer it to me truly ? On hearing the mention of the Most Great Name, the 'Efreet was agitated, and trembled, and replied, Yes ; ask, and be brief. The fisherman then said, How wast thou in this bottle ? It will not contain thy hand or thy foot ; how then can it contain thy whole body ? —Dost thou not believe that I was in it ? said the 'Efreet. The fisherman answered, I will never believe thee until I see thee in it. Upon this, the 'Efreet shook, and became converted again into smoke, which rose to the sky, and then became condensed, and entered the bottle by little and little, until it was all enclosed ; when the fisherman



hastily snatched the sealed leaden stopper, and, having replaced it in the mouth of the bottle, called out to the 'Efreet, and said, Choose in what manner of death thou wilt die. I will assuredly throw thee here into the sea, and build me a house on this spot ; and whosoever shall come here, I will prevent his fishing in this place, and will say to him, Here is an 'Efreet, who, to any person that liberates him, will propose various kinds of death, and then give him his choice of one of them. On hearing these words of the fisherman, the 'Efreet endeavoured to escape, but could not, finding himself restrained by the impression of the seal of Suleymán, and thus imprisoned by the fisherman as the vilest and filthiest and least of 'Efrees. The fisherman then took the bottle to the brink of the sea. The 'Efreet exclaimed, Nay! nay!—to which the fisherman answered, Yea, without fail! yea, without fail! The Márid then addressing him with a soft voice and humble manner, said, What dost thou intend to do with me, O fisherman? He answered, I will throw thee into the sea ; and if thou hast been there a thousand and eight hundred years, I will make thee to remain there until the hour of judgment. Did I not say to thee, Spare me, and so may God spare thee ; and destroy me not, lest God destroy thee? But thou didst reject my petition, and wouldest nothing but

treachery ; therefore God hath caused thee to fall into my hand, and I have betrayed thee.—Open to me, said the 'Efreet, that I may confer benefits upon thee. The fisherman replied, Thou liest, thou accursed ! I and thou are like the Wezeer of King Yoonán¹¹ and the sage Doobán.¹²—What, said the 'Efreet, was the case of the Wezeer of King Yoonán and the sage Doobán, and what is their story ? The fisherman answered as follows :—

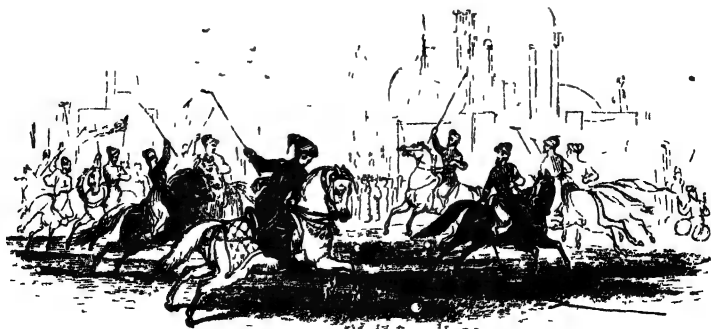
THE STORY OF KING YOONÁN AND THE SAGE DOOBÁN.

KNOW, O 'Efreet, that there was, in former times, in the country of the Persians,¹³ a monarch who was called King Yoonán, possessing great treasures and numerous forces, valiant, and having troops of every description ; but he was afflicted with leprosy, which the physicians and sages had failed to remove ; neither their potions, nor powders, nor ointments were of any benefit to him ; and none of the physicians was able to cure him. At length there arrived at the city of this king a great sage, stricken in years, who was called the sage Doobán : he was acquainted with ancient Greek, Persian, modern Greek, Arabic, and Syriac books, and with medicine and astrology, both with respect to their scientific principles and the rules of their practical applications for good and evil ; as well as the properties of plants, dried and fresh ; the injurious and the useful : he was versed in the wisdom of the philosophers, and embraced a knowledge of all the medical and other sciences.

After this sage had arrived in the city, and remained in it a few days, he heard of the case of the King, of the leprosy with which God had afflicted him, and that the physicians and men of science had failed to cure him. In consequence of this information, he passed the next night in deep study ; and when the morning came, and diffused its light, and the sun saluted the Ornament of the Good,¹⁴ he attired himself in the richest of his apparel, and presented himself before the King. Having kissed the ground before him, and offered up a prayer for the continuance of his power and happiness, and greeted him in the best manner he was able, he informed him who he was, and said, O King, I have heard of the disease which hath attacked thy person, and that many of the physicians are unacquainted with the means of removing it ; and I will cure thee without giving thee to drink any potion, or anointing thee with ointment. When King Yoonán heard

his words, he wondered, and said to him, How wilt thou do this? By Allah, if thou cure me, I will enrich thee and thy children's children, and I will heap favours upon thee, and whatever thou shalt desire shall be thine, and thou shalt be my companion and my friend. —He then bestowed upon him a robe of honour,¹⁵ and other presents, and said to him, Wilt thou cure me of this disease without potion or ointment? He answered, Yes, I will cure thee without any discomfort to thy person. And the King was extremely astonished, and said, O Sage, at what time, and on what day, shall that which thou hast proposed to me be done? Hasten it, O my Son.—He answered, I hear and obey.

He then went out from the presence of the King, and hired a house, in which he deposited his books, and medicines, and drugs. Having done this, he selected certain of his medicines and drugs, and made a goff-stick, with a hollow handle, into which he introduced them; after which he made a ball for it, skilfully adapted; and on the following day, after he had finished these, he went again to the King, and kissed the ground before him, and directed him to repair to the horse-course, and to play with the ball and goff-stick. The King, attended by his Emceers and Chamberlains and Wczeers, went thither, and, as soon as he arrived there, the sage Doobán presented himself before him, and handed to him the goff-stick, saying, Take this goff-stick, and grasp it thus, and ride along the horse-course, and strike the ball with it with all thy force, until the palm of thy hand and thy whole body become moist with perspiration, when the medicine will penetrate into thy hand, and pervade thy whole body; and when thou hast done this, and the medicine remains in thee, return to



thy palace, and enter the bath,¹⁶ and wash thyself, and sleep : then shalt thou find thyself cured : and peace be on thee. So King Yoonán took the goff-stick from the sage, and grasped it in his hand, and mounted his horse ; and the ball was thrown before him, and he urged his horse after it until he overtook it, when he struck it with all his force ; and when he had continued this exercise as long as was necessary, and bathed and slept, he looked upon his skin, and not a vestige of the leprosy remained : it was clear as white silver. Upon this he rejoiced exceedingly ; his heart was dilated, and he was full of happiness.

On the following morning he entered the council-chamber, and sat upon his throne ; and the Chamberlains and great officers of his court came before him. The sage Doobán also presented himself ; and when the King saw him, he rose to him in haste, and seated him by his side. Services of food were then spread before them, and the sage ate with the King, and remained as his guest all the day ;¹⁷ and when the night approached, the King gave him two thousand pieces of gold, besides dresses of honour and other presents, and mounted him on his own horse, and so the sage returned to his house.¹⁸ And the King was astonished at his skill, saying, This man hath cured me by an external process, without anointing me with ointment : by Allah, this is consummate science ; and it is incumbent on me to bestow favours and honours upon him, and to make him my companion and familiar friend as long as I live. He passed the night happy and joyful on account of his recovery, and when he arose, he went forth again, and sat upon his throne ; the officers of his court standing before him, and the Emeers and Wezeers sitting on his right hand and on his left ; and he called for the sage Doobán, who came, and kissed the ground before him ; and the King rose, and seated him by his side, and ate with him, and greeted him with compliments. He bestowed upon him again a robe of honour and other presents, and, after conversing with him till the approach of night, gave orders that five other robes of honour should be given to him, and a thousand pieces of gold ; and the sage departed, and returned to his house.

Again, when the next morning came, the King went as usual to his council-chamber, and the Emeers and Wezeers and Chamberlains surrounded him. Now there was, among his Wezeers, one of ill aspect, and of evil star ;¹⁹ sordid, avaricious, and of an envious and malicious disposition, and when he saw that the King had made the sage Doobán his friend, and bestowed upon him these favours, he



envied him this distinction, and meditated evil against him ; agreeably with the adage which saith, There is no one void of envy ;^o—and another, which saith, Tyranny lurketh in the soul : power manifesteth it, and weakness concealeth it. So he approached the King, and kissed the ground before him, and said, O King of the age, thou art he whose goodness extendeth to all men, and I have an important piece of advice to give thee : if I were to conceal it from thee, I should be a base-born wretch : therefore, if thou order me to impart it, I will do so. The King, disturbed by these words of the Wezeer, said, What is thy advice ? He answered, O glorious King, it hath been said, by the ancients, He who looketh not to results, fortune will not attend him :—now I have seen the King in a way that is not right ; since he hath bestowed favours upon his enemy, and upon him who desireth the downfall of his dominion : he hath treated him with kindness, and honoured him with the highest honours, and admitted him to the

closest intimacy: I therefore fear, for the King, the consequence of this conduct.—At this the King was troubled, and his countenance changed; and he said, Who is he whom thou regardest as mine enemy, and to whom I shew kindness? He replied, O King, if thou hast been asleep, awake! I allude to the sage Doobán.—The King said, He is my intimate companion, and the dearest of men in my estimation; for he restored me by a thing that I merely held in my hand, and cured me of my disease which the physicians were unable to remove, and there is not now to be found one like to him in the whole world, from west to east. Wherefore, then, dost thou utter these words against him? I will, from this day, appoint him a regular salary and maintenance, and give him every month a thousand pieces of gold; and if I gave him a share of my kingdom it were but a small thing to do unto him. I do not think that thou hast said this from any other motive than that of envy. If I did what thou desirest, I should repent after it, as the man repented who killed his parrot.²¹



THE STORY OF THE HUSBAND AND THE PARROT

THERE was a certain merchant, of an excessively jealous disposition, having a wife endowed with perfect beauty, who had prevented him from leaving his home; but an event happened which obliged him to make a journey; and when he found his doing so to be indispensable, he went to the market in which birds were sold, and bought a parrot, which he placed in his house to act as a spy, that, on his return, she might inform him of what passed during his absence; for

this parrot was cunning and intelligent, and remembered whatever she heard.²² So, when he had made his journey, and accomplished his business, he returned, and caused the parrot to be brought to him, and asked her respecting the conduct of his wife. She answered, Thy wife has a lover, who visited her every night during thy absence:—and when the man heard this, he fell into a violent rage, and went to his wife, and gave her a severe beating.

The woman imagined that one of the female slaves had informed him of what had passed between her and her paramour during his absence: she therefore called them together, and made them swear; and they all swore that they had not told their master anything of the matter; but confessed that they had heard the parrot relate to him what had passed. Having thus established, on the testimony of the slaves, the fact of the parrot's having informed her husband of her intrigue, she ordered one of these slaves to grind with a hand-mill under the cage, another to sprinkle water from above, and a third to move a mirror from side to side, during the next night on which her husband was absent; and on the following morning, when the man returned from an entertainment at which he had been present, and inquired again of the parrot what had passed that night during his absence, the bird answered, O my master, I could neither see nor hear anything, on account of the excessive darkness, and thunder, and lightning, and rain. Now this happened during summer: so he said to her, What strange words are these? It is now summer, when nothing of what thou hast described ever happens.—The parrot, however, swore by Allah the Great that what she had said was true, and that it had so happened: upon which the man, not understanding the case, nor knowing the plot, became violently enraged, and took out the bird from the cage, and threw her down upon the ground with such violence that he killed her.

But after some days, one of his female slaves informed him of the truth; yet he would not believe it, until he saw his wife's paramour going out from his house; when he drew his sword,²³ and slew the traitor by a blow on the back of his neck: so also did he to his treacherous wife; and thus both of them went, laden with the sin which they had committed, to the fire; and the merchant discovered that the parrot had informed him truly of what she had seen; and he mourned grievously for her loss.

When the Wezeer heard these words of King Yoonán, he said, O King of great dignity, what hath this crafty sage—this man from

whom nought but mischief proceedeth—done unto me, that I should be his enemy, and speak evil of him, and plot with thee to destroy him? I have informed thee respecting him in compassion for thee, and in fear of his despoiling thee of thy happiness; and if my words be not true, destroy me, as the Wezeer of Es-Sindibád was destroyed.—The King asked, How was that? And the Wezeer thus answered—

THE STORY OF THE ENVIOUS WEZEER AND THE PRINCE
AND THE GHOOLEH

THE King above mentioned had a son who was ardently fond of the chase,¹ and he had a Wezeer whom he charged to be always with this son wherever he went. One day the son went forth to hunt, and his father's Wezeer was with him; and as they rode together, they saw a great wild beast; upon which the Wezeer exclaimed to the Prince, Away after this wild beast! The King's son pursued it until he was out of the sight of his attendants, and the beast also escaped from before his eyes in the desert; and while the Prince wandered in perplexity, not knowing whither to direct his course, he met in his way a damsel, who was weeping. He said to her, Who art thou?—and she answered, I am a daughter of one of the kings of India; I was in the desert, and slumber overtook me, and I fell from my horse in a state of insensibility, and being thus separated from my attendants, I lost my way. The Prince, on hearing this, pitied her forlorn state, and placed her behind him on his horse; and as they proceeded, they passed by a ruin,² and the damsel said to him, O my master, I would alight here for a little while. The Prince therefore lifted her from his horse at this ruin; but she delayed so long to return, that he wondered wherefore she had loitered so, and entering after her, without her knowledge, perceived that she was a Ghooleh,³ and heard her say, My children, I have brought you to-day a fat young man:—on which they exclaimed, Bring him in to us, O mother! that we may fill our stomachs with his flesh. When the Prince heard their words, he felt assured of destruction; the muscles of his sides quivered, and fear overcame him, and he retreated. The Ghooleh then came forth, and, seeing that he appeared alarmed and fearful, and that he was trembling, said to him, Wherefore dost thou fear? He answered, I have an enemy of whom I am in fear. The Ghooleh said, Thou assertest thyself to be the son of the King. He replied, Yes.—Then, said she, wherefore dost thou not



give some money to thine enemy, and so conciliate him ? He answered, He will not be appeased with money, nor with anything but life ; and therefore do I fear him : I am an injured man. She then said to him, If thou be an injured man, as thou affirmest, beg aid of God against thine oppressor, and He will avert from thee his mischievous design, and that of every other person whom thou fearest. Upon this, therefore, the Prince raised his head towards heaven, and said, O thou who answerest the distressed when he prayeth to Thee, and dispellest evil, assist me, and cause mine enemy to depart from me ; for Thou art able to do whatsoever Thou wilt !—and the Ghooleh no sooner heard his prayer, than she departed from him. The Prince then returned to his father, and informed him of the conduct of the Wezeer ; upon which the King gave orders that the minister should be put to death.

CONTINUATION OF THE STORY OF KING YOONÁN AND THE
SAGE DOOBÁN

And thou, O King, continued the Wezeer of King Yoonán, if thou trust in this sage, he will kill thee in the foulest manner. If thou continue to bestow favours upon him, and to make him thine intimate companion, he will plot thy destruction. Dost thou not see that he hath cured thee of the disease by external means, by a thing that thou heldest in thy hand? Therefore thou art not secure against his killing thee by a thing that thou shalt hold in the same manner.—King Yoonán answered, Thou hast spoken truth: the case is as thou hast said, O faithful Wezeer: it is probable that this sage came as a spy to accomplish my death; and if he cured me by a thing I held in my hand, he may destroy me by a thing that I may smell: what then, O Wezeer, shall be done respecting him? The Wezeer answered, Send to him immediately, and desire him to come hither; and when he is come, strike off his head, and so shalt thou avert from thee his evil design, and be secure from him. Betray him before he betray thee.—The King said, Thou hast spoken right.

Immediately, therefore, he sent for the sage, who came, full of joy, not knowing what the Compassionate²⁷ had decreed against him, and addressed the King with these words of the poet:—

If I fail any day to render thee due thanks, tell me for whom I have composed
my verse and prose

Thou hast loaded me with favours unsolicited, bestowed without delay on thy
part, or excuse

How then should I abstain from praising thee as thou deservest, and lauding
thee both with my heart and voice?

Nay, I will thank thee for thy benefits conferred upon me they are light upon
my tongue, though weighty to my back

Knowest thou, said the King, wherefore I have summoned thee? The sage answered, None knoweth what is secret but God, whose name be exalted! Then said the King, I have summoned thee that I may take away thy life. The sage, in the utmost astonishment at this announcement, said, O King, wherefore wouldst thou kill me, and what offence hath been committed by me? The King answered, It hath been told me that thou art a spy, and that thou hast come hither to kill me: but I will prevent thee by killing thee first:—and so saying, he called out to the executioner, Strike off the head of this traitor, and relieve me from his wickedness.—Spare me, said the sage, and so may

God spare thee ; and destroy me not, lest God destroy thee.—And he repeated these words several times, like as I did, O 'Efreet ; but thou wouldst not let me go, desiring to destroy me.

King Yoonán then said to the sage Doobán, I shall not be secure unless I kill thee ; for thou curedst me by a thing that I held in my hand, and I have no security against thy killing me by a thing that I may smell, or by some other means.—O King, said the sage, is this my recompense from thee ? Dost thou return evil for good ?—The King answered, Thou must be slain without delay. When the sage, therefore, was convinced that the King intended to put him to death, and that his fate was inevitable, he lamented the benefit that he had done to the undeserving. The executioner then advanced, and bandaged his eyes, and, having drawn his sword, said, Give permission. Upon this the sage wept, and said again, Spare me, and so may God spare thee ; and destroy me not, lest God destroy thee ! Wouldst thou return me the recompense of the crocodile ?—What, said the King, is the story of the crocodile ? The sage answered, I cannot relate it while in this condition,²⁸ but I conjure thee by Allah to spare me, and so may He spare thee. And he wept bitterly. Then one of the chief officers of the King arose, and said, O King, give up to me the blood of this sage ; for we have not seen him commit any offence against thee ; nor have we seen him do aught but cure thee of thy disease, which wearied the other physicians and sages. The King answered, Ye know not the reason wherefore I would kill the sage : it is this, that if I suffered him to live, I should myself inevitably perish, for he who cured me of the disease under which I suffered by a thing that I held in my



hand, may kill me by a thing that I may smell ; and I fear that he would do so, and would receive an appointment on account of it ; seeing that it is probable he is a spy who hath come hither to kill me ; I must therefore kill him, and then shall I feel myself safe.—The sage then said again, Spare me, and so may God spare thee ; and destroy me not, lest God destroy thee.

But he now felt certain, O 'Efreet, that the King would put him to death, and that there was no escape for him ; so he said, O King, if my death is indispensable, grant me some respite, that I may return to my house, and acquit myself of my duties, and give directions to my family and neighbours to bury me, and dispose of my medical books ; and among my books is one of most especial value, which I offer as a present to thee, that thou mayest treasure it in thy library.—And what, said the King, is this book ? He answered, It contains things not to be enumerated, and the smallest of the secret virtues that it possesses is this ; that, when thou hast cut off my head, if thou open this book, and count three leaves, and then read three lines on the page to the left, the head will speak to thee, and answer whatever thou shalt ask. At this the King was excessively astonished, and shook with delight, and said to him, O Sage, when I have cut off thy head will it speak ? He answered, Yes, O King ; and this is a wonderful thing

The King then sent him in the custody of guards ; and the sage descended to his house, and settled all his affairs on that day ; and on the following day he went up to the court and the Emceers and Wezeers, and Chamberlains and Deputies, and all the great officers of the state, went thither also : and the court resembled a flower-garden " And when the sage had entered, he presented himself before the King, bearing an old book, and a small pot containing a powder : and he sat down, and said, Bring me a tray. So they brought him one ; and he poured out the powder into it, and spread it. He then said, O King, take this book, and do nothing with it until thou hast cut off my head ; and when thou hast done so, place it upon this tray, and order some one to press it down upon the powder ; and when this is done, the blood will be stanch'd : then open the book. As soon as the sage had said this, the King gave orders to strike off his head ; and it was done. The King then opened the book, and found that its leaves were stuck together ; so he put his finger to his mouth, and moistened it with his spittle, and opened the first leaf, and the second, and the third ; but the leaves were not opened without difficulty. He



opened six leaves, and looked at them ; but found upon them no writing. So he said, O Sage, there is nothing written in it. The head of the sage answered, Turn over more leaves. The King did so ; and in a little while, the poison penetrated into his system ; for the book was poisoned ; and the King fell back, and cried out, The poison hath penetrated into me !—and upon this, the head of the sage Doobán repeated these verses —

They made use of their power, and used it tyrannically , and soon it became
as though it never had existed
Had they acted equitably, they had experienced equity , but they oppressed ,
wherefore fortune oppressed them with calamities and trials
Then did the case itself announce to them, This is the reward of your conduct,
and fortune is blameless

And when the head of the sage Doobán had uttered these words, the King immediately fell down dead.³⁰

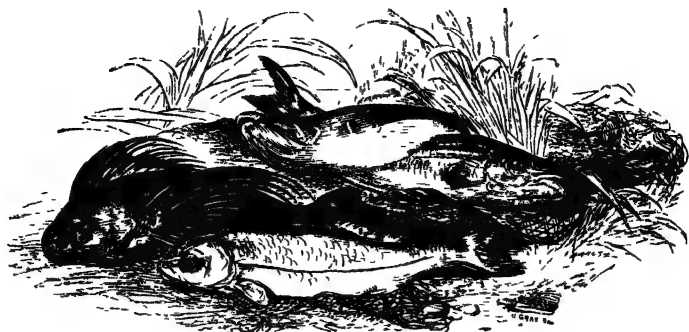
CONTINUATION OF THE STORY OF THE FISHERMAN

Now, O 'Efreet, continued the fisherman, know that if King Yoonán had spared the sage Doobán, God had spared him ; but he refused, and desired his destruction ; therefore God destroyed him : and thou, O 'Efreet, if thou hadst spared me, God had spared thee, and I had spared thee ; but thou desiredst my death ; therefore will I put thee to death imprisoned in this bottle, and will throw thee here into the sea. The Márid, upon this, cried out, and said, I conjure thee by Allah, O fisherman, that thou do it not : spare me in generosity, and be not angry with me for what I did ; but if I have done evil, do thou

good, according to the proverb,—O thou benefactor of him who hath done evil, the action that he hath done is sufficient for him.—do not therefore as Umámeh did to 'Átikeh.—And what, said the fisherman, was their case? The 'Efreet answered, This is not a time for telling stories, when I am in this prison; but when thou liberatest me, I will relate to thee their case.³¹ The fisherman said, Thou must be thrown into the sea, and there shall be no way of escape for thee from it; for I endeavoured to propitiate thee, and humbled myself before thee, yet thou wouldest nothing but my destruction, though I had committed no offence to deserve it, and had done no evil to thee whatever, but only good, delivering thee from thy confinement; and when thou didst thus unto me, I perceived that thou wast radically corrupt: and I would have thee know, that my motive for throwing thee into this sea, is, that I may acquaint with thy story every one that shall take thee out, and caution him against thee, that he may cast thee in again: thus shalt thou remain in this sea to the end of time, and experience varieties of torment.—The 'Efreet then said, Liberate me, for this is an opportunity for thee to display humanity, and I vow to thee that I will never do thee harm; but, on the contrary, will do thee a service that shall enrich thee for ever.

Upon this the fisherman accepted his covenant that he would not hurt him, but that he would do him good; and when he had bound him by oaths and vows, and made him swear by the Most Great Name of God, he opened to him, and the smoke ascended until it had all come forth, and then collected together, and became, as before, an 'Efreet of hideous form. The 'Efreet then kicked the bottle into the sea. When the fisherman saw him do this, he made sure of destruction, and said, This is no sign of good:—but afterwards he fortified his heart, and said, O 'Efreet, God, whose name be exalted, hath said, Perform the covenant, for the covenant shall be inquired into:³²—and thou has covenanted with me, and sworn that thou wilt not act treacherously towards me; therefore, if thou so act, God will recompense thee; for He is jealous; He respiteth, but suffereth not to escape; and remember that I said to thee as said the sage Doobán to King Yoonán, Spare me, and so may God spare thee.

The 'Efreet laughed, and, walking on before him, said, O fisherman, follow me. The fisherman did so, not believing in his escape, until they had quitted the neighbourhood of the city, and ascended a mountain, and descended into a wide desert tract, in the midst of which was a lake of water. Here the 'Efreet stopped, and ordered



the fisherman to cast his net and take some fish ; and the fisherman, looking into the lake, saw in it fish of different colours, white and red and blue and yellow ; at which he was astonished ; and he cast his net, and drew it in, and found in it four fish, each fish of a different colour from the others, at the sight of which he rejoiced. The 'Efreet then said to him, Take them to the Sultán,³³ and present them to him, and he will give thee what will enrich thee ; and for the sake of God accept my excuse, for, at present, I know no other way of rewarding thee, having been in the sea a thousand and eight hundred years, and not seen the surface of the earth until now : but take not fish from the lake more than once each day : and now I commend thee to the care of God.—Having thus said, he struck the earth with his feet, and it clove asunder, and swallowed him.

The fisherman then went back to the city, wondering at all that had befallen him with the 'Efreet, and carried the fish to his house ; and he took an earthen bowl, and, having filled it with water, put the fish into it ; and they struggled in the water : and when he had done this, he placed the bowl upon his head, and repaired to the King's palace, as the 'Efreet had commanded him, and, going up unto the King, presented to him the fish ; and the King was excessively astonished at them, for he had never seen any like them in the course of his life ; and he said, Give these fish to the slave cook-maid. This maid had been sent as a present to him by the King of the Greeks, three days before ; and he had not yet tried her skill. The Wezeer, therefore, ordered her to fry the fish, and said to her, O maid, the King saith unto thee, I have not reserved my tear but for the time of my difficulty :—to-day, then, gratify us by a specimen of thy excellent cookery, for a person hath brought these fish as a present to the Sultán. After having thus charged her, the Wezeer returned, and the King ordered him to give the fisherman four hundred pieces of

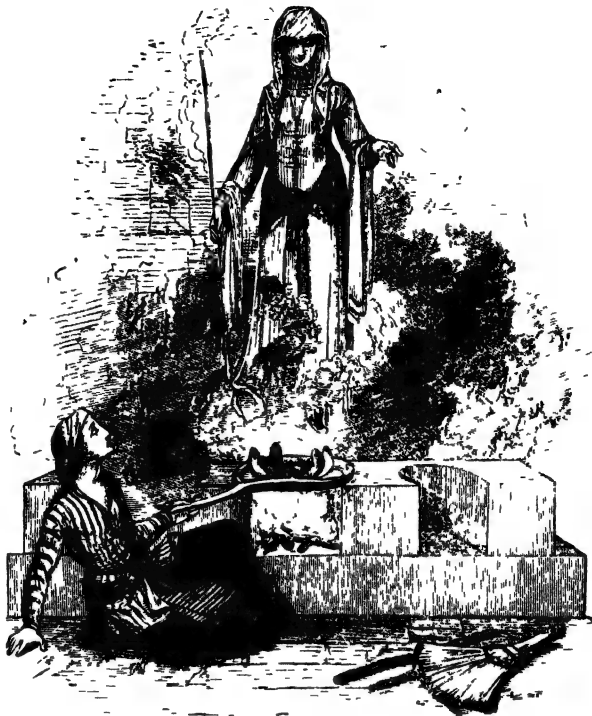


gold : so the Wezeer gave them to him , and he took them in his lap, and returned to his home and his wife, joyful and happy, and bought what was needful for his family.

Such were the events that befell the fisherman : now we must relate what happened to the maid.—She took the fish, and cleaned them, and arranged them in the frying-pan, and left them until one side was cooked, when she turned them upon the other side ; and lo, the wall of the kitchen clove asunder, and there came forth from it a damsel of tall stature, smooth-checked, of perfect form, with eyes adorned with kohl,⁴⁴ beautiful in countenance, and with heavy, swelling hips ; wearing a koofeeyeh³⁵ interwoven with blue silk , with rings in her ears, and bracelets on her wrists, and rings set with precious jewels on her fingers ; and in her hand was a rod of Indian cane : and she dipped the end of the rod in the frying-pan, and said, O fish, are ye remaining faithful to your covenant ? At the sight of this, the cook-maid fainted. The damsel then repeated the same words a second and a third time ; after which the fish raised their heads from the frying-pan, and answered, Yes, yes. They then repeated the following verse :—

If thou return, we return , and if thou come, we come ; and if thou forsake, we
verily do the same

And upon this the damsel overturned the frying-pan, and departed by the way she had entered, and the wall of the kitchen closed up again. The cook-maid then arose, and beheld the four fish burnt like charcoal ; and she exclaimed, In his first encounter his staff broke !—and as she sat reproaching herself, she beheld the Wezeer standing at her head ; and he said to her, Bring the fish to the Sultán :—and she wept, and informed him of what had happened.³⁶



The Wezeer was astonished at her words, and exclaimed, This is indeed a wonderful event ;—and he sent for the fisherman, and when he was brought, he said to him, O fisherman, thou must bring to us four fish like those which thou broughtest before. The fisherman accordingly went forth to the lake, and threw his net, and when he had drawn it in he found in it four fish as before ; and he took them to the Wezeer, who went with them to the maid, and said to her, Rise, and fry them in my presence, that I may witness this occurrence. The maid, therefore, prepared the fish, and put them in the frying-pan, and they had remained but a little while, when the wall clove asunder, and the damsel appeared, clad as before, and holding the rod ; and she dipped the end of the rod in the frying-pan, and said, O fish, O fish, are ye remaining faithful to your old covenant ? Upon which they raised their heads, and answered as before ; and the damsel overturned the frying-pan with the rod, and returned by the way she had entered, and the wall closed up again.

The Wezeer then said, This is an event which cannot be concealed

from the King.—so he went to him, and informed him of what had happened in his presence; and the King said, I must see this with my own eyes. He sent, therefore, to the fisherman, and commanded him to bring four fish like the former; granting him a delay of three days. And the fisherman repaired to the lake, and brought the fish thence to the King, who ordered again that four hundred pieces of gold should be given to him; and then, turning to the Wezeer, said to him, Cook the fish thyself here before me. The Wezeer answered, I hear and obey. He brought the frying-pan, and, after he had cleaned the fish, threw them into it; and as soon as he had turned them, the wall clove asunder, and there came forth from it a negro, in size like a bull, or like one of the tribe of 'Ád,³⁷ having in his hand a branch of a green tree; and he said, with a clear but terrifying voice, O fish, O fish, are ye remaining faithful to your old covenant? Upon which they raised their heads, and answered as before, Yes, yes.

If thou return, we return, and if thou come, we come, and if thou forsake, we verily do the same

The black then approached the frying-pan, and overturned it with the branch, and the fish became like charcoal, and he went away as he had come.

When he had thus disappeared from before their eyes, the King said, This is an event respecting which it is impossible to keep silence, and there must, undoubtedly, be some strange circumstance connected with these fish. He then ordered that the fisherman should be brought before him, and when he had come, he said to him, Whence came these fish? The fisherman answered, From a lake between four mountains behind this mountain which is without thy city. The King said to him, How many days' journey³⁸ distant? He answered, O our lord the Sultán, a journey of half-an-hour. And the Sultán was astonished, and ordered his troops to go out immediately with him and the fisherman, who began to curse the 'Efreet. They proceeded until they had ascended the mountain, and descended into a wide desert tract which they had never before seen in their whole lives; and the Sultán and all the troops wondered at the sight of this desert, which was between four mountains, and at the fish, which were of four colours, red and white and yellow and blue. The King paused in astonishment, and said to the troops, and to the other attendants who were with him, Hath any one of you before seen this lake in this place? They all answered, No. Then said the King, By Allah, I will not enter my city, nor will I sit upon my throne, until I know the true history of

this lake, and of its fish. And upon this he ordered his people to encamp around these mountains ; and they did so. He then called for the Wezeer, who was a well-informed, sensible, prudent, and learned man ; and when he had presented himself before him, he said to him, I desire to do a thing with which I will acquaint thee ; and it is this. —I have resolved to depart alone this night, to seek for information respecting this lake and its fish : therefore, sit thou at the door of my pavilion, and say to the Emeers and Wezcers and Chamberlains, The Sultán is sick, and hath commanded me not to allow any person to go in unto him :—and acquaint no one with my intention.

The Wezeer was unable to oppose his design , so the King disguised himself, and slung on his sword, and withdrew himself from the midst of his troops. He journeyed the whole of the night, until the morning, and proceeded until the heat became oppressive to him : he then paused to rest ; after which he again proceeded the remainder of the day and the second night until the morning, when there appeared before him, in the distance, something black, at the sight of which he rejoiced, and said, Perhaps I shall there find some person who will inform me of the history of the lake and its fish. And when he approached this black object, he found it to be a palace built of black stones, and overlaid with iron ; and one of the leaves of its doors was open, and the other shut. The King was glad, and he stood at the door, and knocked gently, but heard no answer ; he knocked a second and a third time, but again heard no answer : then he knocked a fourth time, and with violence , but no one answered. So he said, It is doubtless empty :—and he took courage, and entered from the door into the passage, and cried out, saying, O inhabitants of the palace, I am a stranger and a traveller ! have ye any provision ? And he repeated these words a second and a third time ; but heard no answer.



And upon this he fortified his heart, and emboldened himself, and proceeded from the passage into the midst of the palace ; but he found no one there, and only saw that it was furnished, and that there was, in the centre of it, a fountain with four lions of red gold, which poured forth the water from their mouths, like pearls and jewels · around this were birds ; and over the top of the palace was extended a net which prevented their flying out. At the sight of these objects he was astonished, and he was grieved that he saw no person there whom he could ask for information respecting the lake, and the fish, and the mountains, and the palace. He then sat down between the doors,³⁹ reflecting upon these things ; and as he thus sat, he heard a voice of lamentation from a sorrowful heart, chanting these verses :—

O fortune, thou pitiest me not, nor releasest me ! See my heart is straitened
between affliction and peril !

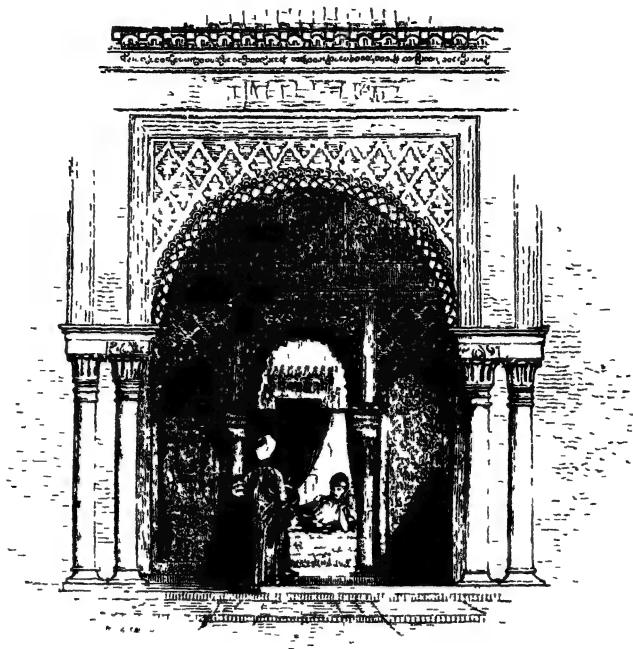
Will not you [O my wife] have compassion on the mighty whom love hath abased,
and the wealthy who is reduced to indigence ?

We were jealous even of the zephyr which passed over you but when the divine
decree is issued, the eye becometh blind !

What resource hath the archer when in the hour of conflict, he desireth to
discharge the arrow, but findeth his bow-string broken ?

And when troubles are multiplied upon the noble-minded, where shall he find
refuge from fate and from destiny ?⁴⁰

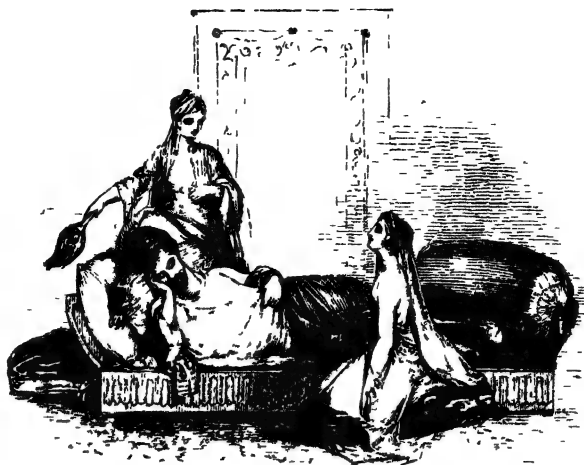
When the Sultán heard this lamentation, he sprang upon his feet, and, seeking the direction whence it proceeded, found a curtain suspended before the door of a chamber ; and he raised it, and beheld behind it a young man sitting on a couch raised to the height of a cubit from the floor. He was a handsome youth, well-shaped, and of eloquent speech, with shining forehead, and rosy cheek, marked with a mole resembling ambergris. The King was rejoiced at seeing him, and saluted him ; and the young man (who remained sitting, and was clad with a vest of silk, embroidered with gold, but who exhibited traces of grief) returned his salutation, and said to him, O my master, excuse my not rising.—O youth ! said the King, inform me respecting the lake, and its fish of various colours, and respecting this palace, and the reason of thy being alone in it, and of thy lamentation. When the young man heard these words, tears trickled down his cheeks, and he wept bitterly.⁴¹ And the King was astonished, and said to him, What causeth thee to weep, O youth ? He answered, How can I refrain from weeping, when this is my state ?—and so saying, he stretched forth his hand, and lifted up the skirts of his clothing ; and lo, half of him, from his waist to the soles of his feet, was stone ; and from



his waist to the hair of his head, he was like other men. He then said, Know, O King, that the story of the fish is extraordinary, if it were engraved upon the intellect, it would be a lesson to him who would be admonished —and he related as follows. —

THE STORY OF THE YOUNG KING OF THE BLACK ISLANDS

My father was king of the city which was here situate: his name was Mahmood, and he was lord of the Black Islands, and of the four mountains. After a reign of seventy years, he died, and I succeeded to his throne; whereupon I took as my wife the daughter of my uncle; and she loved me excessively, so that when I absented myself from her, she would neither eat nor drink till she saw me again. She remained under my protection five years. After this, she went one day to the bath; and I had commanded the cook to prepare the supper, and entered this palace, and slept in my usual place.⁴² I had ordered two maids to fan me;⁴³ and one of them sat at my head, and the other at my feet, but I was restless, because my wife was not with me; and I could not sleep. My eyes were closed, but my spirit



was awake ; and I heard the maid at my head say to her at my feet, O Mes'oodeh, " verily our lord is unfortunate in his youth, and what a pity is it that it should be passed with our depraved, wicked mistress !—Perdition to unfaithful wives !" replied the other but (added she) such a person as our lord, so endowed by nature, is not suited to this profligate woman, who passes every night absent from his bed.—Verily, rejoined she at my head, our lord is careless in not making any inquiry respecting her—Wo to thee ! said the other. hath our lord any knowledge of her conduct, or doth she leave him to his choice ? Nay, on the contrary, she contriveth to defraud him by means of the cup of wine " which he drinketh every night before he sleepeth, putting benj " into it , in consequence of which he sleepeth so soundly that he knoweth not what happeneth, nor whither she goeth, nor what she doeth ; for, after she hath given him the wine to drink, she dresseth herself, and goeth out from him, and is absent until daybreak, when she returneth to him, and burneth a perfume under his nose, upon which he awaketh from his sleep.

When I heard this conversation of the maids, the light became darkness before my face, and I was hardly conscious of the approach of night, when my cousin returned from the bath. The table was prepared, and we ate, and sat a while drinking our wine as usual. I then called for the wine which I was accustomed to drink before I lay down to sleep, and she handed to me the cup ; but I turned away, and, pretending to drink it as I was wont to do, poured it into my bosom, and immediately lay down : upon which she said, Sleep on ; I wish

that thou wouldst never wake again ! By Allah, I abhor thee, and abhor thy person, and my soul is weary of thy company !—She then arose, and attired herself in the most magnificent of her apparel, and, having perfumed herself, and slung on a sword, opened the door of the palace, and went out. I got up immediately, and followed her until she had quitted the palace, and passed through the streets of the city, and arrived at the city-gates, when she pronounced some words that I understood not ; whereupon the locks fell off, and the gates opened, and she went out, I still following her, without her knowledge. Thence she proceeded to a space among the mounds,⁴⁷ and arrived at a strong edifice, in which was a kubbeh⁴⁸ constructed of mud, with a door, which she entered. I then climbed upon the roof of the kubbeh, and, looking down upon her through an aperture, saw that she was visiting a black slave, whose large lips, one of which overlapped the other, gathered up the sand from the pebbly floor, while he lay, in a filthy and wet condition, upon a few stalks of sugar-cane.

She kissed the ground before this slave ; and he raised his head towards her, and said, Wo to thee ! Wherefore hast thou remained away until this hour ? The other blacks have been here drinking wine, and each of them has gone away with his mistress ; and I refused to drink on thy account.—She answered, O my master, and beloved of my heart, knowest thou not that I am married to my cousin, and that I abhor every man who resembles him, and hate myself while I am in his company ? If I did not fear to displease thee, I would reduce the city to ruins, so that the owl and the raven should cry in it, and would transport its stones beyond Mount Káf.⁴⁹—Thou liest, thou infamous woman, replied the slave ; and I swear by the generosity of the blacks (and if I speak not truth, may our valour be as the valour of the whites), that if thou loiter as thou hast now done till this hour, I will no longer give thee my company, nor approach thy person, thou faithless one ! Dost thou inconvenience me for the sake of thine own pleasure, thou filthy wretch, and vilest of the whites ?—When I heard (continued the King) their words, and witnessed what passed between them, the world became dark before my face, and I knew not where I was.—My cousin still stood weeping, and abasing herself before him, and said, O my beloved, and treasure of my heart, there remaineth to me none but thee for whom I care, and if thou cast me off, alas for me ! O my beloved ! O light of mine eye !—Thus she continued to weep, and to humble herself before him, until he became pacified towards her, upon which she rejoiced, and arose, and, having dis-

robed herself, said to him, O my master, hast thou here anything that thy maid may eat ? He answered, Uncover the dough-pan ; it contains some cooked rats' bones :⁵⁰ eat of them, and pick them ; and take this earthen pot : thou wilt find in it some boozah⁵¹ to drink. So she arose, and ate and drank, and washed her hands ; after which she lay down by the side of the slave, upon the stalks of sugar-cane, and covered herself with his tattered clothes and rags.

When I saw her do this, I became unconscious of my existence, and, descending from the roof of the *kubbeh*, entered, and took the sword from the side of my cousin, with the intention of killing them both. I struck the slave upon his neck, and thought that he was killed ; but the blow, which I gave with the view of severing his head, only cut the gullet and skin and flesh ; and when I thought that I had killed him, he uttered a loud snore, upon which my cousin started up, and, as soon as I had gone, took the sword, and returned it to its



scabbard, and came back to the city and to the palace, and lay down again in my bed, in which she remained until the morning.

On the following day, I observed that my cousin had cut off her hair, and put on the apparel of mourning;⁵² and she said to me, O my cousin, blame me not for what I do; for I have received news that my mother is dead, and that my father hath been slain in a holy war, and that one of my two brothers hath died of a poisonous sting, and the other by the fall of a house: it is natural, therefore, that I should weep and mourn. On hearing these words, I abstained from upbraiding her, and said, Do what seemeth fit to thee; for I will not oppose thee. Accordingly, she continued mourning and weeping and wailing a whole year; after which she said to me, I have a desire to build for myself, in thy palace, a tomb, with a kubbch, that I may repair thither alone to mourn, and I will call it the House of Lamentations.⁵³ I replied, Do what thou seest fit. So she built for herself a house for mourning, with a kubbch in the middle of it, like the tomb of a saint;⁵⁴ after which she removed thither the slave, and there she lodged him. He was in a state of excessive weakness, and unable to render her any service, though he drank wine; and from the day on which I had wounded him, he had never spoken; yet he remained alive, because the appointed term of his life had not expired. My cousin every day visited him in this tomb early and late, to weep and mourn over him, and took to him wine to drink, and boiled meats; and thus she continued to do, morning and evening, until the expiration of the second year, while I patiently suffered her, till, one day, I entered her apartment unawares, and found her weeping, and slapping her face, and repeating these verses:—

I have lost my existence among mankind since your absence, for my heart loveth none but you

Take my body, then, in mercy, to the place where you are laid, and there bury me by your side

And if, at my grave, you utter my name, the moaning of my bones shall answer to your call

As soon as she had finished the recitation of these verses, I said to her, holding my drawn sword in my hand, This is the language of those faithless women who renounce the ties of affinity, and regard not lawful fellowship!—and I was about to strike her with the sword, and had lifted up my arm to do so, when she rose—for she knew that it was I who had wounded the slave—and, standing before me, pronounced some words which I understood not, and said, May God, by means of my enchantment, make thee to be half of stone, and half of

the substance of man !—whereupon I became as thou seest, unable to move, neither dead nor alive, and when I had been reduced to this state, she enchanted the city and its markets and fields. The inhabitants of our city were of four classes; Muslims, and Christians, and Jews, and Magians; and she transformed them into fish: the white are the Muslims; the red, the Magians; the blue, the Christians; and the yellow, the Jews.⁵⁵ She transformed, also, the four islands into four mountains, and placed them around the lake; and from that time she has continued every day to torture me, inflicting upon me a hundred lashes with a leathern whip, until the blood flows from my wounds; after which she puts on my upper half a vest of hair-cloth, beneath these garments.—Having said thus, the young man wept, and ejaculating the following verses —

Give me patience, O Allah, to bear what Thou decreest ! I will be patient, if so
I may obtain thine approval

I am straitened, indeed, by the calamity that hath befallen me but the Family
of the favoured Prophet shall intercede for me !⁵⁶

Upon this, the King, looking towards the young man, said to him, O youth, thou hast increased my anxiety. And where (he added) is this woman?—The young man answered, She is in the tomb where the slave is lying, in the kubbeh, and every day, before she visits him, she strips me of my clothing, and inflicts upon me a hundred lashes with the whip, while I weep and cry out, unable to move so as to repulse her. After thus torturing me, she repairs early to the slave, with the wine and boiled meat.—By Allah, O youth, said the King, I will do thee an act of kindness for which I shall be remembered, and a favour which historians shall record in a biography after me.

He then sat and conversed with him until the approach of night, upon which he arose, and waited till the first dawn of day, when he took off his clothes, and slung on his sword, and went to the place where the slave lay. After remarking the candles and lamps, and perfumes and ointments, he approached the slave, and with a blow of his sword slew him: he then carried him on his back, and threw him into a well which he found in the palace, and, returning to the kubbeh, clad himself with the slave's clothes, and lay down with the drawn sword by his side. Soon after, the vile enchantress went to her cousin, and, having pulled off his clothes, took the whip, and beat him, while he cried, Ah ! it is enough for me to be in this state ! Have pity on me then !—Didst thou shew pity to me, she exclaimed, and didst thou



spare my lover?—She then put on him the hair-cloth vest and his outer garments, and repaired to the slave with a cup of wine, and a bowl of boiled meat. Entering the tomb, she wept and wailed, exclaiming, O my master, answer me! O my master, speak to me!—and poured forth her lamentation in the words of this verse :—

How long shall this aversion and harshness continue? Sufficient is the evil which my passion hath brought upon me! 7

Then, weeping as before, she exclaimed again, O my master, answer me, and speak to me! Upon this the King, speaking in a low voice, and adapting his tongue to the pronunciation of the blacks, ejaculated, Ah! Ah! there is no strength nor power but in God! On hearing these words, she screamed with joy, and fell down in a swoon; and when she recovered, she exclaimed, Possibly my master is restored to health! The King, again lowering his voice, as if from weakness, replied, Thou profligate wretch, thou deservest not that I should address thee.—Wherefore? said she. He answered, Because all the day long thou tormentest thy husband, while he calleth out, and imploreth the aid of God, so that thou hast prevented my sleeping from the commencement of darkness until morning: thy husband hath not ceased to humble himself, and to imprecate vengeance upon thee, till he hath distracted me; and had it not been for this, I had recovered my strength: this it is which hath prevented my answering thee.—Then, with thy permission, she replied, I will liberate him from his present sufferings.—Liberate him, said the King, and give us ease.

She replied, I hear and obey;—and immediately arose, and went out from the kubbah to the palace, and, taking a cup, filled it with water, and pronounced certain words over it, upon which it began to boil like a cauldron. She then sprinkled some of it upon her cousin, saying, By virtue of what I have uttered, be changed from thy present state to that in which thou wast at first!—and instantly he shook, and stood upon his feet, rejoicing in his liberation, and exclaimed, I testify

that there is no deity but God, and that Mohamammad is God's Apostle ; God bless and save him ! She then said to him, Depart, and return not hither, or I will kill thee :—and she cried out in his face : so he departed from before her, and she returned to the kubbeh, and said, O my master, come forth to me that I may behold thee. He replied, with a weak voice, What hast thou done ? Thou hast relieved me from the branch, but hast not relieved me from the root.—O my beloved, she said, and what is the root ? He answered, The people of this city, and of the four islands : every night, at the middle hour, the fish raise their heads, and imprecate vengeance upon me and upon thee ; and this is the cause that preventeth the return of vigour to my body ; therefore, liberate them, and come, and take my hand, and raise me ; for vigour hath already in part returned to me.

On hearing these words of the King, whom she imagined to be the slave, she said to him with joy, O my master, on my head and my eye ! In the name of Allah ¹⁵⁸—and she sprang up, full of happiness, and hastened to the lake, where, taking a little of its water, she pronounced over it some unintelligible words, whereupon the fish became agitated, and raised their heads, and immediately became converted into men as before. Thus was the enchantment removed from the inhabitants of the city, and the city became repopled, and the market-streets re-erected, and every one returned to his occupation : the mountains also became changed into islands as they were at the



first. The enchantress then returned immediately to the King, whom she still imagined to be the slave, and said to him, O my beloved, stretch forth thy honoured hand, that I may kiss it.—Approach me, said the King in a low voice. So she drew near to him; and he, having his keen-edged sword ready in his hand, thrust it into her bosom, and the point protruded from her back: he then struck her again, and clove her in twain, and went forth.

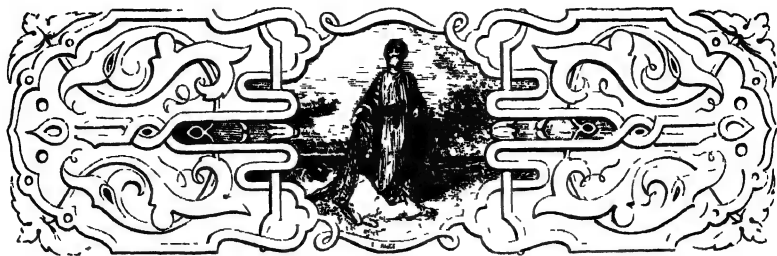
He found the young man who had been enchanted waiting his return, and congratulated him on his safety; and the young prince kissed his hand, and thanked him. The King then said to him, Wilt thou remain in thy city, or come with me to my capital?—O King of the age, said the young man, dost thou know the distance that is between thee and thy city? The King answered, Two days and a half.—O King, replied the young man, if thou hast been asleep, awake: between thee and thy city is a distance of a year's journey to him who travelleth with diligence; and thou camest in two days and a half only because the city was enchanted: but, O King, I will never quit thee for the twinkling of an eye. The King rejoiced at his words, and said, Praise be to God, who hath in his beneficence given thee to me: thou art my son; for during my whole life, I have never been blest with a son—and they embraced each other, and rejoiced exceedingly. They then went together into the palace, where the King who had been enchanted informed the officers of his court that he was about to perform the holy pilgrimage: so they prepared for him everything that he required; and he departed with the Sultán; his heart burning with reflections upon his city, because he had been deprived of the sight of it for the space of a year.

He set forth, accompanied by fifty men, and provided with presents, and they continued their journey night and day for a whole year, after which they drew near to the city of the Sultán, and the Wezeer and the troops, who had lost all hope of his return, came forth to meet him. The troops, approaching him, kissed the ground before him, and congratulated him on his safe return; and he entered the city, and sat upon the throne. He then acquainted the Wezeer with all that had happened to the young King, on hearing which, the Wezeer congratulated the latter, also, on his safety; and when all things were restored to order, the Sultán bestowed presents upon a number of his subjects, and said to the Wezeer, Bring to me the fisherman who presented to me the fish. So he sent to this fisherman, who had been the cause of the restoration of the inhabitants of the enchanted city,

and brought him ; and the King invested him with a dress of honour, and inquired of him respecting his circumstances, and whether he had any children. The fisherman informed him that he had a son and two daughters ; and the King, on hearing this, took as his wife one of the daughters, and the young prince married the other.⁶⁰ The King also conferred upon the son the office of treasurer. He then sent the Wezeer to the city of the young prince, the capital of the Black Islands, and invested him with its sovereignty, despatching with him the fifty memlooks who had accompanied him thence, with numerous robes of honour to all the Emeers : and the Wezeer kissed his hands, and set forth on his journey ; while the Sultán and the young prince remained. And as to the fisherman, he became the wealthiest of the people of his age ; and his daughters continued to be the wives of the Kings until they died.

But this (added Shahrazád) is not more wonderful than what happened to the porter.





NOTES TO CHAPTER SECOND

NOTE 1. The sentiment expressed in this verse is one which is often heard from the mouth of a Mushin, but generally when his toil is ended, and its result seen, though not unfrequently as an excuse for indolence

NOTE 2 The bottle is here described (by the term "kumkum") as of a kind commonly used for sprinkling rose-water, &c, having a spherical or wide body, with a long and narrow neck I remember seeing a gilt brass bottle of this kind, of very beautiful workmanship, for which nearly as much as ten pieces of gold was demanded

NOTE 3 The seal of Suleymán, or Solomon, has twice been mentioned in former notes, in No 21 of the notes appended to the Introduction, and in No 15 of those to the first chapter

NOTE 4. It is necessary to remark, that this and many other descriptions in the present work are not designed to be understood in their literal sense The reader will often be required to make some allowance for Oriental hyperbole, and to distinguish between expressions characterised by this figure, and such as are purely accordant with Eastern grandeur and magnificence, or with Mushin superstition

NOTE 5. The end of the winnowing-fork bears a rude resemblance to a gigantic hand, having several long prongs of wood

NOTE 6 Instead of "ibreek" (a ewer), in the Cairo edition, I read "abwák" (trumpets), as in other editions

NOTE 7. This appellation has been mentioned in a former note, as signifying an evil Jinnee of the most powerful class.

NOTE 8 It is a rule observed in decent society, by the Arabs, to avoid, as much as possible, the mention of opprobrious epithets, lest any person present should imagine such epithets to be addressed insidiously to himself For this reason, when any malediction or offensive language is repeated in a story, it is usual with them to designate the object of such language by this term, which signifies both remote or absent from the person or persons in whose presence the words are repeated, and remote from virtue or good. In the present instance, "remote" is an epithet substituted by Shuhrazád for some other of a gross nature, from respect to the king to whom she is relating the story.

NOTE 9. I read "Sakhr el-Jinne" for "Şakhr el-Jinn." — Sakhr was an evil Jinnee, and a terrible enemy of Solomon. His last act of treachery to that monarch, and

his fate, are thus related by commentators on the Kur-án—Solomon having, through negligence, suffered one of his women to practise idolatry under his roof God saw fit to punish him It was the custom of this King, on certain occasions, “to intrust his signet, on which his kingdom depended, with a concubine of his, named El-Eneeneh. One day, therefore, when she had the ring in her custody, a devil [or evil Jinnee], named Sakhr, came to her in the shape of Solomon, and received the ring from her, by virtue of which he became possessed of the kingdom, and sat on the throne in the shape which he had borrowed, making what alterations in the law he pleased Solomon, in the meantime, being changed in his outward appearance, and known to none of his subjects, was obliged to wander about, and beg alms for his subsistence, till at length, after the space of forty days, which was the time the image had been worshipped in his house, the devil flew away, and threw the signet into the sea The signet was immediately swallowed by a fish, which being taken and given to Solomon, he found the ring in its belly, and having by this means recovered the kingdom, he took Sakhr, and, tying a great stone to his neck, threw him into the Lake of Tiberias”¹

NOTE 10 “Umin-’Ámir” is an appellation of the hyena It is scarcely necessary to mention, that the proverb here quoted is said to have originated from the fact of a man’s having been devoured by a hyena whom he had aided against an enemy

NOTE 11 In some copies, the personage here mentioned is called “Mehk el-Yoonán,” that is, “King of Ancient Greece,” or—“of the Ancient Greeks” I have followed the Cairo edition, and that of the first two hundred nights, printed at Calcutta, in which “Yoonán” is used as the King’s proper name See also Note 13

NOTE 12 This is the name of the sage in most copies, but in the Cairo edition he is called “Rooyán”

NOTE 13 In the Calcutta edition, the king is merely said to have reigned “in the country of the Persians,” as in my translation, but in the Cairo edition, he is said to have been ‘in the city of the Persians, and the country of Roomán,” which may perhaps mean (though this is hardly allowable) the [eastern] Roman, or later Greek, empire, an unnecessary contradiction. (See Note 22 to Chapter x) It is obviously more agreeable with the story to regard him as a Persian King

NOTE 14 “The Ornament of the Good,” or—“of the Comely,” is an appellation of the Arabian prophet, who is related to have said, ‘The sun never riseth until it hath saluted me” “The sun’s saluting the Ornament of the Good,” or “Comely,” is, therefore, a phrase not unfrequently used by Muslims merely to signify its rising

NOTE 15—*On the Rewards of Men of Literature and Science* It has long been a common custom of Eastern princes to bestow dresses of honour upon men of literature and science, as well as upon their great officers and other servants. These dresses were of different kinds for persons of different classes or professions. The most usual kind was an ample coat. With dresses of this description were often given gold-embroidered turbans, and sometimes, to Emeers (or great military officers), neck-rings or collars (called *tóks*), some of which were set with jewels, as also, bracelets, and swords ornamented with precious stones, &c. and to Wezeers, instead of the *tók*, a necklace of jewels.—The following striking record will convey an idea of the magnificence of some of these dresses of honour, or, in other words, of the liberality of a Muslim prince, and, at the same time, of the very precarious nature of his favour. A person, chancing to look at a register kept by one of the officers of Hároon Er-Rasheed, saw in it the following entry—“Four hundred thousand pieces of gold, the price of a dress of honour for Jaafar, the son of Yahyà, the Wezeer”—A few days after, he saw beneath this written,—“Ten keeráts, the price of naphtha and reeds, for burning the body of

¹ Sale’s Koran, note to chap. xxxviii.

² El-Makreeze’s “*Khutaf*,” chapter entitled “*Khizanet el-Kisawát*”

Jaafar, the son of Yahyà.³—The keerát of Baghdád was the twentieth part of a deenár, or piece of gold.

Arab princes and other great men have generally been famous for highly respecting, and liberally rewarding, men of literature and science, and especially poets. El-Mamoon and many others are well known to us for their patronage of the learned. Er-Rasheed carried his condescension to them so far as to pour the water on the hands of a blind man, Aboo-Mo'áwiyeh, one of the most learned persons of his time, previously to his eating with him, to shew his respect for science.⁴ An anecdote of a Khaleefeh ordering the mouth of a learned man to be filled with jewels, I have related in a former note. To cram the mouth with sugar or sweetmeats for a polite or eloquent speech, or piece of poetry, has been more commonly done, but the usual presents to learned men were, and are, dresses of honour and sums of money. Ibn-'Obeyd El-Bakhterec, an illustrious poet and traditionist, who flourished in the reign of El-Musta'een, is said to have received so many presents, that, after his death, there were found, among the property which he left, a hundred complete suits of dress, two hundred shirts, and five hundred turbans.⁵ A thousand pieces of gold were often given, and sometimes ten, twenty, or thirty, thousand, and even more, for a few verses, nay, for a single couplet.

The prodigality of Arab princes to men of learning may be exemplified by the following anecdote.—Hammád, surnamed Er-Ráwiyeh, or the famous reciter, having attached himself to the Khaleefeh El-Weleed, the son of 'Abd-el-Melik, and shewn a contrary feeling towards his brother Hishám, on the accession of the latter fled to El-Koofeh. While there, a letter arrived from Hishám, commanding his presence at Damascus. It was addressed to the governor, who, being ordered to treat him with honour, gave him a purse containing a thousand pieces of gold, and despatched him with the Khaleefeh's messenger. On his arrival at Damascus, he was conducted before Hishám, whom he found in a splendid saloon, seated under a pavilion of red silk, surmounted by a dome of yellow brocade, attended by two female slaves of beauty unsurpassed, each holding a crystal ewer of wine. His admission during the presence of members of the King's harem, the reader will remark as a very unusual and high honour. The mention of the wine may also surprise him, but this is a subject upon which much may be said, and which will be considered on a future occasion. After Hammád had given the salutation, and the Khaleefeh had returned it, the latter told him that he had sent for him to ask respecting a couplet of which he (the Khaleefeh) could only remember that it ended with the word "ibreck," which signifies "a ewer." The reciter reflected a while, and the lines occurred to his mind, and he repeated them. Hishám cried out, in delight, that the lines were those he meant, drank a cup of wine, and desired one of the female slaves to hand a cup to Hammád. She did so, and the draught, he says, deprived him of one-third of his reason. The Khaleefeh desired him to repeat the lines again, and drank a second cup, and Hammád was deprived of another third of his reason in the same manner, and said, "O Prince of the Faithful, two-thirds of my reason have departed from me." Hishám laughed, and desired him to ask what he would before the remaining third should have gone, and the reciter said, "One of these two female slaves." The Khaleefeh laughed again, and said, "Nay, but both of them are thine, and all that is upon them, and all that they possess, and, beside them, fifty thousand pieces of gold."—"I kissed the ground before him," says Hammád, "and drank a third cup, and was unconscious of what happened after. I did not awake till the close of the night, when I found myself in a handsome house, surrounded by lighted candles, and the two female slaves were putting in order my clothes and other things. so I took possession of the property, and departed, the happiest of the creatures of God."⁶

³ Fakhr-ed-Deen, in De Sacy's *Chrestomathie Arabe*, vol. i. p. 32 of the Arabic text, 2nd ed.

⁴ Idem, p. 4 of the Arabic text.

⁵ D'Herbelot, art. "Bokhteri."

⁶ Halbet el-Kumeyt, chapter the seventh (MS. in my possession).

A whimsical story is told of a king, who denied to poets those rewards to which usage had almost given them a claim. This king, whose name is not recorded, had the faculty of retaining in his memory an ode after having only once heard it, and he had a memlook who could repeat an ode that he had twice heard, and a female slave who could repeat one that she had heard thrice. Whenever a poet came to compliment him with a panegyric ode, the King used to promise him that, if he found his verses to be his original composition, he would give him a sum of money equal in weight to what they were written upon. The poet, consenting, would recite his ode, and the King would say, "It is not new, for I have known it some years," and would repeat it as he had heard it, after which he would add, "And this memlook also retains it in his memory," and would order the memlook to repeat it; which, having heard it twice, from the poet and the king, he would do. The King would then say to the poet, "I have also a female slave who can repeat it," and on his ordering her to do so, stationed behind the curtains, she would repeat what she had thus thrice heard, so the poet would go away empty-handed. The famous poet El-Asma'ee, having heard of this proceeding, and guessing the trick, determined upon outwitting the King, and accordingly composed an ode made up of very difficult words, but this was not his only preparative measure, another will be presently explained, and a third was, to assume the dress of a Bedawee, that he might not be known, covering his face, the eyes only excepted, with a lithán (a piece of drapery) in accordance with a custom of Arabs of the desert. Thus disguised, he went to the palace, and, having asked permission, entered, and saluted the King, who said to him, "Whence art thou, O brother of the Arabs, and what dost thou desire?" The poet answered, "May God increase the power of the King! I am a poet of such a tribe, and have composed an ode in praise of our lord the Sultán"—"O brother of the Arabs," said the King, "hast thou heard of our condition?"—"No," answered the poet, "and what is it, O King of the age?"—"It is," replied the King, "that if the ode be not thine, we give thee no reward, and if it be thine, we give thee the weight in money of what it is written upon"—"How," said El-Asma'ee, "should I assume to myself that which belongs to another, and knowing, too, that living before kings is one of the basest of actions?" But I agree to this condition, O our lord the Sultán." So he repeated his ode. The King, perplexed, and unable to remember any of it, made a sign to the memlook—but he had retained nothing, and called to the female slave, but she also was unable to repeat a word. "O brother of the Arabs," said he, "thou hast spoken truth, and the ode is thine without doubt. I have never heard it before—produce, therefore, what it is written upon, and we will give thee its weight in money, as we have promised"—"Wilt thou," said the poet, "send one of the attendants to carry it?"—"To carry what?" asked the King; "is it not upon a paper here in thy possession?"—"No, O our lord the Sultán," replied the poet, "at the time I composed it I could not procure a piece of paper upon which to write it, and could find nothing but a fragment of a marble column left me by my father, so I engraved it upon this, and it lies in the court of the palace." He had brought it, wrapped up, on the back of a camel. The King, to fulfil his promise, was obliged to exhaust his treasury, and to prevent a repetition of this trick (of which he afterwards discovered El-Asma'ee to have been the author), in future rewarded the poets according to the usual custom of kings.⁷

The following case is also related as an exception to the common custom of great men, with regard to the bestowal of rewards on poets.—"A poet praised a governor in some verses, and the latter ordered an ass s barda'ah (or stuffed saddle) and girth to be given to him. The poet went away with them on his shoulder; and, being asked what he had got, answered, 'I have praised our honoured lord in the best of my verses, and he hath bestowed on me some of the most magnificent articles of his apparel.'"⁸

NOTE 16.—*On the Bath.* The hammám, or bath, is a favourite resort of both men

⁷ Halbet el-Kumeyt, chapter the eighth

⁸ Idem, chapter the seventh

and women of all classes among the Muslims who can afford the trifling expense which it requires, and (it is said) not only of human beings, but also of evil genii, on which account, as well as on that of decency, several precepts respecting it have been dictated by Mohammad. It is frequented for the purpose of performing certain ablutions required by the religion, or by a regard for cleanliness, and for its salutary effects, and for mere luxury.

The following description of a public bath will convey a sufficient notion of those in private houses, which are on a smaller scale, and generally consist of only two or three chambers. The public bath comprises several apartments, with mosaic or tessellated pavements, composed of white and black marble, and pieces of fine red tile, and sometimes other materials. The inner apartments are covered with domes, having a number of small, round, glazed apertures, for the admission of light. The first apartment is the *meslakh*, or disrobing room, which has, in the centre, a fountain of cold water, and, next the walls, wide benches or platforms, encased with marble. These are furnished with mattresses and cushions for the higher and middle classes, and with mats for the poorer sort. The inner division of the building, in the more regularly planned baths, occupies nearly a square: the central and chief portion of it is the principal apartment, or *harárah*, which generally has the form of a cross. In its centre is a fountain of hot water, rising from a base encased with marble, which serves as a seat. One of the angles of the square is occupied by the *beyt-owwal*, or antechamber of the *harárah*: in another, is the fire over which is the boiler, and each of the other two angles is generally occupied by two small chambers: in one of these is a tank filled with warm water, which pours down from a spout in the dome: in the other are two taps, side by side, one of hot, and the other of cold water, with a small trough beneath, before which is a seat. The inner apartments are heated by the steam which rises from the fountain and tanks, and by the contiguity of the fire, but the *beyt-owwal* is not so hot as the *harárah*, being separated from it by a door. In cold weather, the bather undresses in the former, which has two or three raised seats, like those of the *meslakh*.

With a pair of wooden clogs to his feet, and having a large napkin round his loins, and generally a second wound round his head like a turban, a third over his chest, and a fourth covering his back, he enters the *harárah*, the heat of which causes him immediately to perspire profusely. An attendant of the bath removes from him all the napkins excepting the first, and proceeds to crack the joints of his fingers and toes, &c., and several of the vertebrae of the back and neck, kneads his flesh, and rubs the soles of his feet with a coarse earthen rasp, and his limbs and body with a woollen bag which covers his hand as a glove, after which, the bather, if he please, plunges into one of the tanks. He is then thoroughly washed with soap and water, and fibres of the palm-tree, and shaved, if he wish it, in one of the small chambers which contain the taps of hot and cold water, and returns to the *beyt-owwal*. Here he generally reclines upon a mattress, and takes some light refreshment, while one of the attendants rubs the soles of his feet, and kneads the flesh of his body and limbs, previously to his resuming his dress. It is a common custom, now, to take a pipe and a cup of coffee during this period of rest.

The women are especially fond of the bath, and often have entertainments there, taking with them fruits, sweetmeats, &c., and sometimes hiring female singers to accompany them. An hour or more is occupied by the process of plating the hair, and applying the depilatory, &c., and, generally, an equal time is passed in the enjoyment of rest, or recreation, or refreshment. All necessary decorum is observed on these occasions by most females; but women of the lower orders are often seen in the bath without any covering. Some baths are appropriated solely to men, others, only to women, and others, again, to men during the forenoon, and in the afternoon to women. When the bath is appropriated to women, a napkin, or some other piece of drapery, is suspended over the door, to warn men from entering.

Before the time of Muhammad, there were no public baths in Arabia, and he was so

prejudiced against them, for the reasons already alluded to, that he at first forbade both men and women from entering them afterwards, however, he permitted men to do so, if for the sake of cleanliness, on the condition of their having a cloth round the waist, and women also on account of sickness, child-birth, &c, provided they had not convenient places for bathing in their houses. But, notwithstanding this license, it is held to be a characteristic of a virtuous woman, not to go to a bath even with her husband's permission for the Prophet said, "Whatever woman enters a bath, the devil is with her" As the bath is a resort of the Jinn, prayer should not be performed in it, nor the Kur-án recited. The Prophet said, "All the earth is given to me as a place of prayer, and as pure, except the burial-ground and the bath,"⁹ Hence also, when a person is about to enter a bath, he should offer up an ejaculatory prayer for protection against evil spirits, and should place his left foot first over the threshold—Infidels have often been obliged to distinguish themselves in the bath, by hanging a signet to the neck, or wearing anklets, &c, lest they should receive those marks of respect which should be paid only to believers.¹⁰

NOTE 17—*On Meals, and the Manner of Eating* The King (with the sage as his guest) is here described as eating in the presence of his court, agreeably with a common custom of Eastern princes and other great men in the present day, the simple manner in which the meal is served and eaten occasioning but a slight interruption.

The Muslim takes a light breakfast after the morning-prayers, and dinner after the noon-prayers, or a single meal instead of these two, before noon. His principal meal is supper, which is taken after the prayers of sunset. A man of rank or wealth, when he has no guest, generally eats alone, his children eat after him, or with his wife or wives. In all his repasts he is moderate with regard to the quantity which he eats, however numerous the dishes.

In the times to which most of the tales in the present work relate, it appears that the dishes were sometimes, I believe generally, placed upon a round embroidered cloth spread on the floor, and sometimes on a tray, which was either laid on the floor or upon a small stand or stool. The last is the mode now always followed in the houses of the higher and middle classes of the Arabs. The table is usually placed upon a round cloth, spread in the middle of the floor, or in a corner, next two of the deewáns, or low seats which generally extend along three sides of the room. It is composed of a large round tray of silver, or of tinned copper, or of brass, supported by a stool, commonly about fifteen or sixteen inches high, made of wood, and generally inlaid with mother-of-pearl and ebony or other wood, or tortoise-shell, &c. When there are numerous guests, two or more such tables are prepared. The dishes are of silver, or of tinned copper, or of china. Several of these are placed upon the tray; and around them are disposed some round, flat cakes of bread, with spoons of box-wood, ebony, or other material, and, usually, two or three limes, cut in halves, to be squeezed over certain of the dishes. When these preparations have been made, each person who is to partake of the repast receives a napkin, and a servant pours water over his hands. A basin and ewer of either of the metals first mentioned are employed for this purpose, the former has a cover with a receptacle for a piece of soap in its centre, and with numerous perforations through which the water runs during the act of washing, so that it is not seen when the basin is brought from one person to another. It is indispensably requisite to wash at least the right hand before eating with the fingers anything but dry food, and the mouth, also, is often rinsed, the water being taken up into it from the right hand. The company sit upon the floor, or upon cushions, or some of them on the deewán,

⁹ A recent traveller has questioned Mr Lane's authority, in the "Modern Egyptians," for the remark that Muslims should not pray in the bath. A reference to any well known collection of tra-

ditions of the Prophet will, however, prove, by many sayings besides that quoted above, that Mr Lane is in this matter strictly accurate.—Ed
¹⁰ Nuzhot el-Mutaammil, &c, section the seventh.

either cross-legged, or with the right knee raised ¹¹ they retain the napkins before mentioned; or a long napkin, sufficient to surround the tray, is placed upon their knees, and each person, before he begins to eat, says, "In the name of God," or "In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful." The master of the house begins first if he did not so, some persons would suspect that the food was poisoned. The thumb and two fingers of the right hand serve instead of knives and forks, and it is the usual custom for a person to help himself to a portion of the contents of a dish by drawing it towards the edge, or taking it from the edge, with a morsel of bread, which he eats with it when he takes too large a portion for a single mouthful, he generally places it on his cake of bread. He takes from any dish that pleases him, and sometimes a host hands a delicate morsel with his fingers to one of his guests. It is not allowable to touch food with the left hand (as it is used for unclean purposes), excepting in a few cases, when both hands are required to divide a joint.

Among the more common dishes are the following — lamb or mutton cut into small pieces, and stewed with various vegetables, and sometimes with peaches, apricots, or jujubes, and sugar, cucumbers or small *gourds*, or the fruit of the black or white egg-plant, stuffed with rice and minced meat, &c., vine-leaves or pieces of lettuce-leaf or cabbage-leaf, enclosing a similar composition, small morsels of lamb or mutton, roasted on skewers, and called "kebâb," fowls simply roasted or boiled, or boned, and stuffed with raisins, pistachio-nuts, crumbled bread, and parsley, and various kinds of pastry, and other sweet¹². The repast is frequently commenced with soup, and is generally ended with boiled rice, mixed with a little butter, and seasoned with salt and pepper, or after this, is served a water-melon or other fruit, or a bowl of a sweet drink composed of water with raisins, and sometimes other kinds of fruit, boiled in it, and then sugar, and with a little rose-water added to it when cool. The meat, having generally little fat, is cooked with clarified butter, and is so thoroughly done that it is easily divided with the fingers.

A whole lamb, stuffed in the same manner as the fowls above mentioned, is not a very uncommon dish, but one more extraordinary, of which 'Abd-El-Lateef gives an account¹³ as one of the most remarkable that he had seen in Egypt, I am tempted to describe. It was an enormous pie, composed in the following manner — Thirty pounds of fine flour being kneaded with five pounds and a half of oil of sesame, and divided into two equal portions, one of these was spread upon a round tray of copper, about four spans in diameter. Upon this were placed three lambs, stuffed with pounded meat fried with oil of sesame and ground pistachio-nuts, and various hot aromatics, such as pepper, ginger, cinnamon, mastic, coriander-seed, cummin-seed, cardamom, nut [or nutmeg?], &c. These were then sprinkled with rose-water infused with musk, and upon the lambs, and in the remaining spaces, were placed twenty fowls, twenty chickens, and fifty smaller birds, some of which were baked, and stuffed with eggs, some, stuffed with meat, and some, fried with the juice of some grapes, or that of limes, or some similar acid. To the above were added a number of small pies, some filled with meat, and others with sugar and sweetmeats, and sometimes, the meat of another lamb, cut into small pieces, and some fried cheese. The whole being piled up in the form of a dome, some rose-water infused with musk and aloes-wood was sprinkled upon it, and the other half of the paste first mentioned was spread over, so as to close the whole. It was then baked, wiped with a sponge, and again sprinkled with rose-water infused with musk. — A dish still more extraordinary will be described in a note on public Royal feasts.

With respect to clean and unclean meats, the Muslim is subject to nearly the same laws as the Jew. Swine's flesh, and blood, are especially forbidden to him, but camel's flesh is allowed. The latter, however, being of a coarse nature, is never eaten when any

¹¹ A pious Muslim generally sits at his meals with the right knee raised, after the example of the Prophet, who adopted this custom in order to

avoid too comfortable a posture in eating, as tempting to unnecessary gratification — Ed

¹² Pp 180 - 182, ed Oxon 1800

other meat can be obtained, excepting by persons of the lower classes, and by Arabs of the desert. Of fish, almost every kind is eaten (excepting shell-fish), usually fried in oil of game, little, partly in consequence of frequent doubt whether it have been lawfully killed. The diet consists, in a great measure, of vegetables, and includes a large variety of pastry. A very common kind of pastry is a pancake, which is made very thin, and folded over several times like a napkin, it is saturated with butter, and generally sweetened with honey or sugar, as is also another common kind, which somewhat resembles vermicelli.

The usual beverage at meals is water, which is drunk from cooling, porous, earthen bottles, or from cups of brass or other metal but in the houses of the wealthy, sherbet is sometimes served instead of this, in covered glass cups, each of which contains about three quarters of a pint. The sherbet is composed of water made very sweet with sugar, or with a hard conserve of violets or roses or mulberries, &c. After every time that a person drinks, he says, "Praise be to God," and each person of the company says to him, "May it be productive of enjoyment" to which he replies, "May God cause thee to have enjoyment." The Arabs drink little or no water during a meal, but generally take a large draught immediately after. The repast is quickly finished, and each person, as soon as he has done, says, "Praise be to God," or "Praise be to God, the Lord of all creatures." He then washes, in the same manner as before, but more thoroughly, well lathering his beard, and rinsing his mouth.

NOTE 18. This mode of shewing honour to a meritorious individual, or distinguished guest, which is at least as ancient as the time of Ahasuerus,¹³ is still observed in Muslim countries.

NOTE 19. The influence of the stars upon the dispositions and fortunes of mankind is firmly believed by the generality of Muslims, and is often a matter of consideration previously to the uniting of two persons in marriage, though the absurdity of such an opinion is declared in their law.

NOTE 20 — *On the Distribution of Virtues and Vices among Mankind*. I have heard Arabs confess that their nation possesses nine-tenths of the envy that exists among all mankind collectively, but I have not seen any written authority for this. Ibn-'Abbás assigns nine-tenths of the intrigue or artifice that exists in the world to the Copts; nine-tenths of the perfidy, to the Jews, nine-tenths of the stupidity, to the Maghrebians, nine-tenths of the hardness, to the Turks, and nine-tenths of the bravery, to the Arabs. According to Kaab-El-Ahbár, reason and sedition are most peculiar to Syria; plenty and degradation, to Egypt, and misery and health, to the Desert. In another account, faith and modesty are said to be most peculiar to El-Yemen, fortitude and sedition, to Syria; magnificence, or pride, and hypocrisy, to El-Erák, wealth and degradation, to Egypt, and poverty and misery, to the Desert. — Of women, it is said, by Kaab-El-Ahbár, that the best in the world (excepting those of the tribe of Kureysh mentioned by the Prophet), are those of El-Basrah, and the worst in the world, those of Egypt.¹⁴

NOTE 21. In the Cairo edition, King Yoonán is made to say, "I should repent after it, as King Sindbád repented of killing the falcon,"—and thus is introduced an indifferent story in the place of that of the Husband and the Parrot, the former story describing a king as having, under an erroneous idea, killed a falcon that had prevented his drinking poison. The latter story I insert in preference, according to the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred nights, and the edition of Breslau.

NOTE 22 — *On Miraculously-gifted Birds*. An Arab historian would make it to appear, that the intelligence and talent ascribed to this parrot are not nearly so wonderful as those which some birds have been known to display. He mentions a parrot which recited the Soorat Yá-Seen (or 36th chapter of the Kur-án), and a raven which recited the Soorat es-Sydeh (or 32nd chapter), and which, on arriving at the place of prostra-

¹³ See Esther vi 8 and 9

¹⁴ El-Makreeze's "Khatat," and El-Is-háfee

tion (or verse which should be recited with prostration), would perform that action, and say, "My body prostrateth itself to Thee, and my heart confideth in Thee." But these are not the most remarkable cases of the kind. He affirms that there was a parrot in Cairo which recited the Kur-án from beginning to end. The Báshà, he says, desiring to try its talent, caused a man to recite a chapter of the Kur-án in its presence, and to pass irregularly from one chapter to another, with the view of leading the bird into error but, instead of this being the result, the parrot corrected him ¹⁵

NOTE 23 But a few years ago, it was a common custom for an Arab merchant or shopkeeper of the higher class to wear a sword, and this not only during a journey, but also during his ordinary walks or rides. I have seen many persons of this description so armed, and with a pair of pistols stuck in the girdle, though seldom excepting in the former case. A dagger or case-knife is a weapon now more commonly worn by such persons, both at home and abroad.

NOTE 24 — *On Hunting and Hawking* Hunting and hawking, which were common and favourite diversions of the Arabs, and especially of their kings and other great men, have now fallen into comparative disuse among this people. They are, however, still frequently practised by the Persians, and in a manner the same as they are generally described in the present work. Sir John Malcolm was informed that these sports were nowhere found in greater perfection than in the neighbourhood of Aboo-Shahr, where he witnessed and took part in them. I shall, therefore, here avail myself of his observations on this subject.

"The huntsmen," he says, "proceed to a large plain, or rather desert, near the sea-side. They have hawks and greyhounds, the former carried in the usual manner, on the hand of the huntsman, the latter led in a leash by a horseman, generally the same who carries the hawk. When the antelope is seen, they endeavour to get as near as possible, but the animal, the moment it observes them, goes off at a rate that seems swifter than the wind. The horsemen are instantly at full speed, having slipped the dogs. If it is a single deer, they at the same time fly the hawks, but if a herd, they wait till the dogs have fixed on a particular antelope. The hawks, skimming along near the ground, soon reach the deer, at whose head they pounce in succession, and sometimes with a violence that knocks it over. [They are commonly described as pecking at the poor creature's eyes until they blind it.] At all events, they confuse the animal so much as to stop its speed in such a degree that the dogs can come up with it, and, in an instant, men, horses, dogs, and hawks, surround the unfortunate deer, against which their united efforts have been combined. The part of the chase that surprised me most, was the extraordinary combination of the hawks and the dogs, which throughout seemed to look to each other for aid. This, I was told, was the result of long and skilful training.—The antelope is supposed to be the fleetest quadruped on earth, and the rapidity of the first burst of the chase I have described is astonishing. The run seldom exceeds three or four miles, and often is not half so much. A fawn is an easy victory, the doe often runs a good chase, and the buck is seldom taken. The Arabs are, indeed, afraid to fly their hawks at the latter, as these fine birds, in pouncing, frequently impale themselves on its sharp horns.—The hawks used in this sport are of a species that I have never seen in any other country. This breed, which is called Cherkh, is not large, but of great beauty and symmetry.

"Another mode of running down the antelope is practised here, and still more in the interior of Persia. Persons of the highest rank lead their own greyhounds in a long silken leash, which passes through the collar, and is ready to slip the moment the huntsman chooses. The well-trained dog goes alongside the horse, and keeps clear of him when at full speed, and in all kinds of country. When a herd of antelopes is seen, a consultation is held, and the most experienced determine the point towards which

¹⁵ El-Is-háke, reign of the Khaleefeh El-Musta'een, the son of El-Moqtasim

they are to be driven. The field (as an English sportsman would term it) then disperse, and, while some drive the herd in the desired direction, those with the dogs take their post on the same line, at the distance of about a mile from each other, one of the worst dogs is then slipped at the herd, and from the moment he singles out an antelope the whole body are in motion. The object of the horsemen who have greyhounds is to intercept its course, and to slip fresh dogs, in succession, at the fatigued animal. In rare instances, the second dog kills. It is generally the third or fourth, and even these, when the deer is strong, and the ground favourable, often fail. This sport, which is very exhilarating, was the delight of the late King of Persia, Ághâ Mohammad Khán, whose taste is inherited by the present sovereign.

"The novelty of these amusements interested me, and I was pleased, on accompanying a party to a village, about twenty miles from Abou-Shahr, to see a species of hawk—peculiar, I believe, to the sandy plains of Persia, on which the Hobárâ, a noble species of bustard, is found on almost bare plains, where it has no shelter but a small shrub called 'gectuck.' When we went in quest of them, we had a party of about twenty, all well mounted. Two kinds of hawks are necessary for this sport, the first, the Cherkh (the same which is flown at the antelope), attacks them on the ground, but will not follow them on the wing, for this reason, the 'Bhyree,' a hawk well known in India, is flown the moment the Hobárâ rises.—As we rode along in an extended line, the men who carried the Cherkhs every now and then unhooded and held them up, that they might look over the plain. The first Hobárâ we found afforded us a proof of the astonishing quickness of sight of one of the hawks—he fluttered to be loose, and the man who held him gave him a whoop as he threw him off his hand, and set off at full speed. We all did the same. At first we only saw our hawk skimming over the plain, but soon perceived, at a distance of more than a mile, the beautiful speckled Hobárâ, with his head erect and wings outspread, running forward to meet his adversary. The Cherkh made several unsuccessful pounces, which were either evaded or repelled by the beak or wings of the Hobárâ, which at last found an opportunity of rising, when a Bhyree was instantly flown, and the whole party were again at full gallop. We had a flight of more than a mile, when the Hobárâ alighted, and was killed by another Cherkh, who attacked him on the ground. This bird weighed ten pounds. We killed several others, but were not always successful, having seen our hawks twice completely beaten, during the two days we followed this fine sport."¹⁶

The hunting of the wild ass is another sport of the Persians and Arabs, but one of a more difficult nature. This animal is found in Syria, and in the Nubian deserts, as well as in Arabia and Persia. The more common kinds of game are gazelles, or antelopes, hares, partridges, the species of grouse called "katâ," quails, wild geese, ducks, &c. Against all of these, the hawk is generally employed, but assisted in the capture of gazelles and hares by dogs. The usual arms of the sportsmen, in the times to which the present work relates, were the bow and arrow, the cross-bow, the spear, the sword, and the mace. When the game is struck down, but not killed, by any weapon, its throat is immediately cut. If merely stunned, and then left to die, its flesh is unlawful food. Some other laws respecting the killing of game have been mentioned in a former note; but one has been there omitted which is worthy of remark, though it is often disregarded; it is, that hunting is allowable only for the purpose of procuring food, or to obtain the skin of an animal, or for the sake of destroying ferocious and dangerous beasts. Amusement is certainly, in general, the main object of the Muslim huntsman, but he does not, with this view, endeavour to prolong the chase; on the contrary, he strives to take the game as quickly as possible; for this purpose, nets are often employed, and the hunting party, forming what is called the circle of the chase (*halkat es-seyd*), surround the spot in which the game is found.

¹⁶ Sketches of Persia, vol. I. ch. v. [Mr Lane has written some of the Oriental words in this extract according to his own mode.—Ed.]

"On the eastern frontiers of Syria," says Burckhardt, "are several places allotted for the hunting of gazelles these places are called 'masiade' [more properly, 'maşyedeḥ']. An open space in the plain, of about one mile and a half square, is enclosed on three sides by a wall of loose stones, too high for the gazelles to leap over. In different parts of this wall, gaps are purposely left, and near each gap a deep ditch is made on the outside. The enclosed space is situated near some rivulet or spring to which, in summer, the gazelles resort. When the hunting is to begin, many peasants assemble, and watch till they see a herd of gazelles advancing from a distance towards the enclosure, into which they drive them the gazelles, frightened by the shouts of these people, and the discharge of fire-arms, endeavour to leap over the wall, but can only effect this at the gaps, where they fall into the ditch outside, and are easily taken, sometimes by hundreds. The chief of the herd always leaps first the others follow him one by one. The gazelles thus taken are immediately killed, and their flesh is sold to the Arabs and neighbouring Felláhs."¹⁷

NOTE 25. In the Cairo edition, the word "jezeereh" (an island) is erroneously put for "kharábeh" (a ruin)

NOTE 26. "Ghooleh" is the feminine of "Ghool" The Ghool is a fabulous being, of which some account has been given in No. 21 of the notes to the Introduction

NOTE 27. This epithet of the Deity appears to be used in preference to others in this instance, in order to imply that God always decrees what is best for a virtuous man, even when the reverse would seem to us to be the case. He is here described as appointing that the sage should die a violent death, but this death, being unmerited, raised him, according to Mohammadan notions, to the rank of a martyr

In the edition from which my translation is chiefly made, four poetical quotations are here inserted on the subject of fate, and the mutuality of anxious forebodings. The first of these is as follows —

"O thou who fearest thy fate, be at ease, commit thine affairs unto Him who spread out the earth
For what is predestined cannot be cancelled, and thou art secure from every thing that is not predestined"

NOTE 28 — *The Fable of the Crocodile*. Perhaps the reader may desire to know what is the story which the sage Doobán declined to relate, I will therefore supply the omission as well as my memory will allow me. I have heard this fable differently told by different persons, and it is sometimes spun out to a considerable length, but the principal points of it are these — A crocodile, having crawled far from the Nile, over a desert tract, found his strength so exhausted by fatigue and thirst, that he despaired of being able to return to the river. While he was in this unhappy state, an Arab with his camel approached him, proceeding in the desired direction, and he appealed to his compassion, entreating that he would bind him on the back of the camel, and so convey him to the Nile, and promising that he would afterwards, in return for this favour, carry him across to the opposite bank. The Arab answered, that he feared the crocodile would, as soon as he was unbound, turn upon him, and devour him, but the monster swore so solemnly that he would gratefully requite the service he requested, that the man was induced to consent, and, making his camel lie down, bound the crocodile firmly upon his back, and brought him to the bank of the river. No sooner, however, was the horrid creature liberated, than, in spite of his vows, he opened his hideous jaws to destroy his benefactor, who, though he eluded this danger, was unable to rescue his camel. At this moment a fox drew near them. The man, accosting this cunning animal, related his tale; and the crocodile urged in his own excuse, that the man had spitefully bound him on the back of the camel in such a manner that he had almost killed him. The fox replied that he could quickly pursue and capture the man,

¹⁷ Notes on the Bedouins and Wahábys, vol. 1 pp. 220 et seq. 4vo. ed.

but that he must act fairly, and first see the whole transaction repeated before him. The crocodile, assenting, and submitting to have a noose thrown over his jaws, was again bound on the back of the camel, and taken to the place whence he was brought, and as soon as this was done, the man, by the direction of the fox, holding with one hand the halter of his camel, with the other cut the ropes which secured his burden, and hasted away with his beast, leaving the ungrateful and treacherous monster in the same hopeless state in which he had found him.

NOTE 29 This comparison is perfectly just. My first visit to Egypt was not too late for me to witness such a scene as that which is here alluded to, but now, throughout the Turkish dominions, the officers of government are obliged, more or less, to assimilate their style of dress to that which commonly prevails in Europe, gaudy colours are out of fashion among them, and silk embroidery is generally preferred to gold. In Egypt, however, the dress worn by this class of persons has not been so much altered as in Turkey, still retaining an Oriental character, though wanting the shawl which was wound round the red cap, and formed the turban, while the dress worn by other classes has undergone no change. [This note still applies to the inhabitants of Egypt, with the exception of the Turks, who have very generally adopted the modern Turkish, or semi-European dress — ED.]

NOTE 30 This story of the head speaking after it was cut off is not without a parallel in the writings of Arab historians. The head of Sa'eel, the son of Jubeyr, is said to have uttered the words, "There is no deity but God," after it had been severed from his body by order of El-Hajjāj, who is related to have killed a hundred and twenty thousand persons of note, besides those whom he slew in war.

NOTE 31 I do not remember to have read or heard the story of Umámeh and 'Átikah, who, as their names import, were two females.

NOTE 32 The words here quoted are part of the 36th verse of the 17th chapter of the Kur-án.

NOTE 33 The title of "Sultán" is higher than that of "Melik" (or King) a Sultán, properly speaking, being a monarch who has kings or viceroys under his authority.

NOTE 34—*On Kohl, and the mode of applying it.* Kohl is a black powder, with which most of the Arab, and many other, women blacken the edges of the eyelids. The most common kind is the smoke-black which is produced by burning a kind of frankincense. An inferior kind is the smoke-black produced by burning the shells of almonds. These are believed to be beneficial to the eyes, but are generally used merely for the sake of ornament. Among other kinds which are particularly employed for their beneficial effect upon the eye are several ores of lead, reduced to a fine powder. Antimony is said to have been, in former times, the most esteemed kind of kohl. The powder is applied by means of a small probe of wood, ivory, or silver, the end of which is moistened, and then dipped in the powder, and drawn along the edges of the eyelids.¹⁸

NOTE 35 The Koofeeyeh is described in a great Arabic Lexicon (Táj el-'Aroos) as "a thing worn on the head; so called because of its roundness" and this is the only description of it that I have been able to find. I was told in Cairo, that "koofeeyeh" is the correct appellation of the head-kerchief commonly called "keffeeyeh;" but this is a mistake. The latter is a square kerchief, which is worn on the head, measuring about a yard in each direction, and of various colours, generally a dull, brownish red, bright green, and yellow, composing broad and narrow stripes, and having a deep fringe of strings and tassels along two opposite edges. The most common kind is entirely of cotton; another, of cotton interwoven with silk, and a third, of silk interwoven with gold. It is now chiefly worn by the Wahhábees and several tribes of Bedawees, but

¹⁸ A more full account of this custom is given in my work on the Modern Egyptians, vol. i. ch. i.

the former wear only the first kind, as they hold articles of dress composed wholly or partly of silk or gold to be unlawful. In former times it was in common use among the inhabitants of the towns. It is mostly worn by men, and is doubled diagonally, and placed over the cap in such a manner that the two corners which are folded together hang down the back, and the other two corners, in front. A piece of woollen rope, or a strip of rag, or a turban, is generally wound round it, and the corners, or those only which usually hang down in front, are sometimes turned up, and tucked within the upper edge of the turban. The inhabitants of the towns usually wear the turban over the keffeyeh. Burckhardt, who calls this head-kerchief "keffie," mentions, that the Bedawees of Mekkeh and El-Yemen tie over it, instead of the woollen rope which is used by the Northern Bedawees, "a circle made of wax, tar, and butter, strongly kneaded together this," he adds, "is pressed down to the middle of the head, and looks like the airy crown of a saint. It is about the thickness of a finger, and they take it off very frequently to press it between their hands, so that its shape may be preserved."¹⁹ The better kinds of keffeyeh above mentioned are worn by some of the Turks, but not in the Arab manner, being wound tight round the cap.

NOTE 36 — *Anecdote of a Miraculous Fish* This story of the miraculous fish reminds me of one of a similar kind which is related as authentic. A certain just judge of the Israelites, in the time of Solomon, had a wife who, every time that she brought him his food used to ejaculate a prayer that disgrace might befall every unfaithful wife. One day, this woman having placed before her husband a fried fish, and repeated her usual ejaculation, the fish leaped from the dish, and fell upon the floor. This happened three times, and, in consequence of a suspicion expressed by a devotee, who was consulted respecting the meaning of this strange event, the judge discovered that a supposed maid, whom he had purchased as a slave, was a disguised man.²⁰

NOTE 37 This comparison is not intended to be understood in its literal sense, for the smallest of the tribe of 'Ad is said to have been sixty cubits high, the largest, a hundred'. The tribe of 'Ad were a race of ancient Arabs, who, according to the Kur'an and Arab historians, were destroyed by a suffocating wind, for their infidelity, after their rejection of the admonitions of the prophet Hood.

NOTE 38 The Arabs generally calculate distances by time. The average distance of a day's journey is from twenty to twenty-five miles, the former being the usual rate of caravan-travelling.

NOTE 39 — *On the Privacy of Arab Dwellings* In a palace, or large house, there is generally a wide bench of stone, or a wooden couch, within the outer door, for the accommodation of the door-keeper and other servants. The entrance-passage leads to an open court, and, for the sake of preventing persons at the entrance, or a little within it, from seeing into the court, it usually has two turnings. We may, therefore, understand the motive of the King in seating himself in the place here described to have been a desire that he might not, if discovered, be supposed to be prying impertinently into the interior of the palace. Respect for the privacy of another's house is a point that is deemed of so much importance that it is insisted upon in the Kur'an, in these words. — "O ye who have become believers, enter not any houses, besides your own houses, until ye shall have asked leave, and saluted their inhabitants, this will be better for you: peradventure ye will be admonished. And if ye find not in them any person, enter them not, until leave be granted you; and if it be said unto you, Return, then do ye return; this will be more decent for you; and God knoweth what ye do. But it shall be no crime in you that ye enter uninhabited houses wherein ye may find a convenience."²¹ When a visitor finds the door open, and no servant below, he usually claps

¹⁹ Notes on the Bedouins and Wahabys, vol. 1
p. 232, 2vo ed.

²⁰ Kitáb el-'Uhwán fee Mekkát en-Niswán

²¹ Ch. xxiv. v. 27—29

his hands as a signal for some person to come to him; striking the palm of his left hand with the fingers of the right and even when leave has been granted him to enter, it is customary for him, when he has to ascend to an upper apartment, to repeat several times some ejaculation, such as "Permission" or, "O Protector" (that is, "O protecting God"), as he goes up, in order that any female of the family, who may chance to be in the way, may have notice of his approach, and either retire or veil herself. Sometimes the servant who precedes him does this in his stead.

NOTE 40. These verses are translated from the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred nights, as more apposite than those which are inserted in their place in the edition of Cairo.

NOTE 41. That the reader may not form wrong conceptions of the characters of many persons portrayed in this work, it is necessary to observe, that weeping is not regarded by the Arabs as an evidence of an effeminate disposition, or inconsistent with even a heroic mind, though the Muslims in general are remarkable for the calmness with which they endure the heaviest afflictions.

NOTE 42. It is, perhaps, unnecessary to mention, that it is a common custom of the Orientals, as of other natives of warm climates, to take a nap in the afternoon. A tradesman is not unfrequently seen enjoying this luxury in his shop, and seldom, excepting in this case, is it considered allowable to wake a person.

NOTE 43 — *Description of Arab Fans*. The kind of fan most commonly used by the Arabs has the form of a small flag. The flap, which is about six or seven inches in width, and somewhat more in length, is composed of split palm-leaves of various colours, or some plain and others coloured, neatly plaited or woven together. The handle is a piece of palm-stick, about twice the length of the flap. This fan is used by men as well as women, and for the double purpose of moderating the heat and repelling the flies, which, in warm weather, are excessively annoying. It is more effective than the ordinary European fan, and requires less exertion. Arabian fans of the kind here described, brought from Mekkeh to Cairo as articles of merchandise, may be purchased in the latter city for a sum less than a penny each, they are mostly made in the Hejaz. Another kind of fan, generally composed of black ostrich-feathers, of large dimensions, and ornamented with a small piece of looking-glass on the lower part of the front, is often used by the Arabs. A kind of fly-whisk made of palm-leaves is also in very general use. A servant or slave is often employed to wave it over the master or mistress during a meal or an afternoon nap.

NOTE 44. Mes'oodah is the feminine of Mes'ood, a name before explained, as signifying "happy," or "made happy."

NOTE 45. The word which I have here rendered "wine" (namely, "sharâb") is applied to any drink, and particularly to a sweet beverage, but, in the present case, the context shews that its signification is that which I have given it. The description of a carousal in the next chapter will present a more fit occasion for my considering at large the custom of drinking wine as existing among the Arabs.

NOTE 46 — *On the Use of Hemp to induce Intoxication*. The name of "benj," or "beng," is now, and, I believe, generally, given to henbane; but El-Kazweenee states that the leaves of the garden hemp (kinneb bustanee, or shahdânaj,) are the benj which, when eaten, disorders the reason. This is an important confirmation of De Sacy's opinion respecting the derivation of the appellation of "Assassins" from Hashshâsheen (hemp-eaters, or persons who intoxicate themselves with hemp); as the sect which we call "Assassins" are expressly said by the Arabs to have made frequent use of benj.²²

²² See "Modern Egyptians," vol. ii., close of chap. ix. — Since this was written, I have found that El-Idreesee applies the term "Hash-

sheeyeh," which is exactly synonymous with "Hashshâsheen," to the "Assassins." This, therefore, decides the question.

To this subject I shall have occasion to revert. I need only add here, that the custom of using benj, and other narcotics, for purposes similar to that described in this tale, is said to be not very unfrequently practised in the present day, but as many Arab husbands are extremely suspicious of the character of women in general, perhaps there is but little ground for this assertion.

NOTE 47 Most Eastern cities and towns are partly or wholly surrounded by mounds of rubbish, close to the walls, and upon these mounds are thrown the carcasses of camels, horses, and other beasts, to be devoured by dogs and vultures. Immense mounds of this unsightly description entirely surrounded the city of Cairo, but those which extended along its western side, and, in a great measure, screened it from the view of persons approaching from the Nile, have lately been removed by order of the present Báshà of Egypt. [This note was written in the year 1838, in the time of Mohammad 'Alee — Ed.]

NOTE 48. "Kubbeh" generally signifies either a dome or a cupola, or a building or apartment surmounted by a dome. In the present instance it is to be understood in the latter sense. It is also applied to a closet, and to a tent.

NOTE 49 "Káf" is generally to be understood, as it is in the present case, to signify the chain of mountains believed, by the Muslims, to encircle our earth, as mentioned in a former note. It is also the name of the chain of Caucasus, and hence it has been supposed that the fable respecting the mountains before mentioned, originated from an early idea that the chain of Caucasus was the limit of the habitable earth, but it is possible that the latter mountains may have derived their name from an imaginary resemblance to the former.

NOTE 50 Rats, though unlawful food to the Muslim, are occasionally eaten by many of the peasants of the province of Lower Egypt called El-Boheyreh, on the west of the western branch of the Nile. The extraordinary abundance of these animals, and mice, throughout Egypt, gave rise to an absurd fable, which is related by Diodorus Siculus²³ as a matter worthy of serious consideration — that these creatures are generated from the alluvial soil deposited by the Nile. The inundation drives many of them from the fields to the houses and deserts, and destroys the rest, but soon after the waters have subsided, vast numbers of them are seen again, taking refuge in the deep clefts of the parched soil.

NOTE 51 — *On the Beverage called Boorah*. Boorah, or boozeh, is a favourite beverage of the boatmen, and other persons of the lower class, in Egypt, and more especially of the Nubians and negroes, as it was, according to Herodotus²⁴ and other writers, of the ancient Egyptians. It is an intoxicating liquor, a kind of beer, most commonly prepared from barley-bread, crumbled, mixed with water, strained, and left to ferment. It is also prepared from wheat and from millet in the same manner. The account of Herodotus has been confirmed by the discovery of large jars, containing the dregs of the barley-beer in ancient tombs at Thebes.

NOTE 52. — *On the Apparel, &c., of Mourning*. The wearing of mourning appears to have been a custom of both sexes among the Arabs in earlier times, for the black clothing which distinguished the 'Abbásce Khaleefehs and their officers was originally assumed in testimony of grief for the death of the Imám Ibráheem Ibn-Mohammad. It has, however, ceased to be worn by men, as indicating a want of resignation to the decrees of Providence, and is only assumed by women on the occasion of the death of a husband or near relation, and not for an elderly person. In the former cases they dye their shirts, head-veils, face-veils, and handkerchiefs, of a blue or almost black colour, with indigo, and sometimes, with the same dye, stain their hands and arms as high as the elbows, and smear the walls of their apartments. They generally abstain from

²³ Lib. i. cap. 10.

²⁴ Lib. ii. cap. 77.

wearing any article of dress of a bright colour, leave their hair unbraided, and deck themselves with few or no ornaments. They also cease to make use of perfumes, kohl, and henna, and often turn upside-down the carpets, mats, cushions, and coverings of the *deewáns*.

NOTE 53 "Houses of Lamentations," erected in burial-grounds for the accommodation of ladies on the occasions of their visiting the tombs of their relations, have been mentioned in a former note respecting the two grand annual festivals.

NOTE 54. The kind of tomb here alluded to is generally a square building crowned by a dome.

NOTE 55. This passage deserves particular notice, as being one of those which assist us to form some opinion respecting the period when the present work, in the states in which it is known to us, was composed or compiled or remodelled. It is the same in all the copies of the original work that I have seen, and bears strong evidence of having been written subsequently to the commencement of the eighth century of the Flight, or fourteenth of our era, at which period, it appears, the Christians and Jews were first compelled to distinguish themselves by wearing, respectively, blue and yellow turbans, in accordance with an order issued by the Sultán of Egypt, Mohámmad Ibn-Kála-oon²⁵. Thus the white turban became peculiar to the Muslims—An eminent German critic has been unfortunate in selecting the incident of the four fish as affording an argument in favour of his opinion that the *Tales of a Thousand and One Nights* are of Indian origin, on the mere ground that the same word (*varna*) is used in Sanscrit to signify both "colour" and "caste."

NOTE 56. The Muslims often implore the intercession of their prophet, and of various members of his family and other holy persons, though their ordinary prayers are addressed solely to God. The regard which they pay to their reputed saints, both living and deceased, as mediators, is one of the heresies which the Wáhhábees most vehemently condemn.

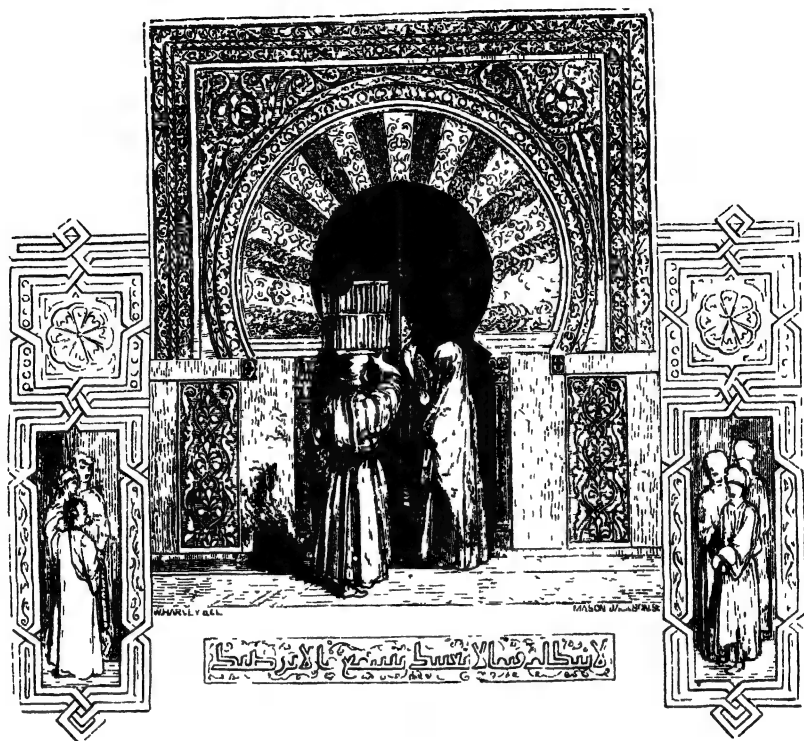
NOTE 57. This verse, translated from my usual prototype, the Cairo edition, is there followed by another, which I omit as being inapposite.

NOTE 58. In the first of the notes to the Introduction, I have mentioned that it is a general custom of the Muslims to repeat this phrase, "In the name of God!" on commencing every lawful action that is of any importance, it is, therefore, here employed, as it is in many similar cases, to express a readiness to do what is commanded or requested, and is equivalent to saying, "I this instant begin to execute thy orders."

NOTE 59. The condition and offices of memlooks, who are male white slaves, have been mentioned in the thirteenth note to the first chapter.

NOTE 60. Eastern histories present numerous instances of marriages as unequal as those here related, the reader, therefore, must not regard this part of the story as inconsistent.

²⁵ El-Makreezee and El-Is-hákee



CHAPTER III.

COMMENCING WITH PART OF THE NINTH NIGHT, AND FADING WITH PART
OF THE EIGHTEENTH.

THE STORY OF THE PORTER AND THE LADIES OF BAGHDÁD,
AND OF THE THREE ROYAL MENDICANTS, &c.

THERE was a man of the city of Baghdád, who was unmarried, and he was a porter; and one day, as he sat in the market, reclining against his crate,¹ there accosted him a female wrapped in an izar² of the manufacture of El-Mósil,³ composed of gold-embroidered silk, with a border of gold lace at each end, who raised her face-veil, and displayed beneath it a pair of black eyes, with lids bordered by long lashes, exhibiting a tender expression, and features of perfect beauty; and she said, with a sweet voice, Bring thy crate, and follow me.

The porter had scarcely heard her words when he took up his crate, and he followed her until she stopped at the door of a house, and knocked; whereupon there came down to her a Christian, and she gave him a piece of gold, and received for it a quantity of olives, and two large vessels of wine,⁴ which she placed in the crate, saying to the porter, Take it up, and follow me. The porter exclaimed, This is, indeed, a fortunate day!—and he took up the crate, and followed her. She next stopped at the shop of a fruiterer, and bought of him Syrian apples, and 'Othmánee quinces,⁵ and peaches of 'Omán, and jasmine of Aleppo, and water-lilies of Damascus, and cucumbers of the Nile, and Egyptian limes, and Sultánee citrons, and sweet-scented myrtle, and sprigs of the hennà-tree, and chamomile, and anemones, and violets, and pomegranate flowers, and eglantine: all these she put into the porter's crate, and said to him, Take it up. So he took it up, and followed her until she stopped at the shop of a butcher, to whom she said, Cut off ten pounds of meat;—and he cut it off for her, and she wrapped it in a leaf of a banana-tree, and put it in the crate, and said again, Take it up, O porter.—and he did so, and followed her. She next stopped at the shop of a seller of dry fruits, and took some of every kind of these, and desired the porter to take up his burden. Having obeyed, he followed her until she stopped at the shop of a confectioner, where she bought a dish, and filled it with sweets of every kind that he had,⁶ which she put into the crate; whereupon the porter ventured to say, If thou hadst informed me beforehand, I had brought with me a mule to carry all these things. The lady smiled at his remark, and next stopped at the shop of a perfumer, of whom she bought ten kinds of scented waters; rose-water, and orange-flower-water, and willow-flower-water,⁷ &c.; together with some sugar, and a sprinkling-bottle⁸ of rose-water infused with musk, and some frankincense, and aloes-wood, and ambergris, and musk, and wax candles; and, placing all these in the crate, she said, Take up thy crate, and follow me. He, therefore, took it up, and followed her until she came to a handsome house, before which was a spacious court. It was a lofty structure, with a door of two leaves, composed of ebony, overlaid with plates of red gold.⁹

The young lady stopped at this door, and knocked gently; whereupon both its leaves were opened, and the porter, looking to see who opened it, found it to be a damsel of tall stature, high-bosomed, fair and beautiful, and of elegant form, with a forehead like the bright new moon, eyes like those of gazelles, eyebrows like the new moon of

Ramaḍán,¹⁰ cheeks resembling anemones, and a mouth like the scal of Suleymán:¹¹ her countenance was like the full moon in its splendour, and the forms of her bosom resembled two pomegranates of equal size. When the porter beheld her, she captivated his reason, the crate nearly fell from his head, and he exclaimed, Never in my life have I seen a more fortunate day than this! The lady-portress, standing within the door, said to the cateress and the porter, Ye are welcome:—and they entered, and proceeded to a spacious saloon,¹² decorated with various colours, and beautifully constructed, with carved wood-work, and fountains, and benches of different kinds, and closets with curtains hanging before them; there was also in it, at the upper end,¹³ a couch of alabaster inlaid with large pearls and jewels, with a musquito-curtain of red satin suspended over it, and within this was a young lady with eyes possessing the enchantment of Bābil,¹⁴ and a figure like the letter Alif,¹⁵ with a face that put to shame the shining sun: she was like one of the brilliant planets, or rather, one of the most high-born of the maidens of Arabia. This third lady,¹⁶ rising from the couch, advanced with a slow and elegant gait to the middle of the saloon, where her sisters were standing, and said to them, Why stand ye still? Lift down the burden from the head of this poor porter—whereupon the cateress placed herself before him, and the portress behind him, and, the third lady assisting them, they lifted it down from his head. They then took out the contents of the crate, and, having put every thing in its place, gave to the porter two pieces of gold, saying to him, Depart, O porter.

The porter, however, stood looking at the ladies, and admiring their beauty and their agreeable dispositions; for he had never seen any more handsome; and when he observed that they had not a man among them, and gazed upon the wine, and fruits, and sweet-scented flowers, which were there, he was full of astonishment, and hesitated to go out, upon which one of the ladies said to him, Why dost thou not go? dost thou deem thy hire too little? Then turning to one of her sisters, she said to her, Give him another piece of gold.—By Allah, O my mistress, exclaimed the porter, my hire is but two half-dirhems,¹⁷ and I thought not what ye have given me too little; but my heart and mind were occupied with reflections upon you and your state, ye being alone, with no man among you, not one to amuse you with his company; for ye know that the menārch¹⁸ standeth not firmly but on four walls: now ye have not a fourth, and the pleasure of women is not complete without men. ye are three only, and have need of a fourth,



who should be a man, a person of sense, discreet, acute, and a concealer of secrets. We are maidens, they replied; and fear to impart our secret to him who will not keep it; for we have read, in a certain history, this verse.—

Guard thy secret from another intrust it not for he who intrusteth a secret
hath lost it.

—By your existence, said the porter, I am a man of sense, and trustworthy: I have read various books, and perused histories. I make known what is fair, and conceal what is foul, and act in accordance with the saying of the poet:—

None keepeth a secret but a faithful person with the best of mankind it remaineth concealed.

A secret is with me as in a house with a lock, whose key is lost, and whose door is sealed.¹⁰

When the ladies heard the verses which he quoted, and the words with which he addressed them, they said to him, Thou knowest that we have expended here a considerable sum of money: hast thou then wherewith to requite us? We will not suffer thee to remain with us

unless thou contribute a sum of money ; for thou desirest to sit with us, and to be our cup-companion, and to gaze upon our beautiful faces. —If friendship is without money, said the mistress of the house, it is not equivalent to the weight of a grain —and the portress added, If thou hast nothing, depart with nothing.—but the cateress said, O sister, let us suffer him ; for, verily, he hath not been deficient in his services for us this day : another had not been so patient with us whatever, therefore, falls to his share of the expense, I will defray for him.—At this the porter rejoiced, and exclaimed, By Allah, I obtained my first and only pay this day from none but thee:—and the other ladies said to him, Sit down . thou art welcome.

The cateress then arose, and, having tightened her girdle, arranged the bottles, and strained the wine, and prepared the table by the pool of the fountain. She made ready all that they required, brought the wine, and sat down with her sisters ; the porter also sitting with them, thinking he was in a dream. And when they had seated themselves, the cateress took a jar of wine, and filled the first cup, and drank it ²⁰ she then filled another, and handed it to one of her sisters ; and in like manner she did to her other sister ; after which she filled again, and handed the cup to the porter, who, having taken it from her hand, repeated this verse :—

I will drink the wine, and enjoy health , for, verily, this beverage is a remedy for disease

The wine continued to circulate among them, and the porter, taking his part in the revels, dancing and singing with them, and enjoying



the fragrant odours, began to hug and kiss them, while one slapped²¹ him, and another pulled him, and the third beat him with sweet-scented flowers, till, at length, the wine made sport with their reason; and they threw off all restraint, indulging their merriment with as much freedom as if no man had been present.²²

Thus they continued until the approach of night, when they said to the porter, Depart, and shew us the breadth of thy shoulders;²³—but he replied, Verily the departure of my soul from my body were more easy to me than my departure from your company; therefore suffer us to join the night to the day, and then each of us shall return to his own, or her own, affairs. The cateress, also, again interceded for him, saying, By my life I conjure you that ye suffer him to pass the night with us, that we may laugh at his drolleries, for he is a witty rogue. So they said to him, Thou shalt pass the night with us on this condition, that thou submit to our authority, and ask not an explanation of anything that thou shalt see. He replied, Good.—Rise then, said they, and read what is inscribed upon the door. Accordingly, he went to the door, and found the following inscription upon it in letters of gold, Speak not of that which doth not concern thee, lest thou hear that which will not please thee.—and he said, Bear witness to my promise that I will not speak of that which doth not concern me.

The cateress then rose, and prepared for them a repast, and, after they had eaten a little, they lighted the candles and burnt some aloes-wood. This done, they sat down again to the table; and, while they were eating and drinking, they heard a knocking at the door, whereupon, without causing any interruption to their meal, one of them went to the door, and, on her return, said, Our pleasure this night is now complete, for I have found, at the door, three foreigners²⁴ with shaven chins, and each of them is blind of the left eye: it is an extraordinary coincidence. They are strangers newly arrived,²⁵ and each of them has a ridiculous appearance: if they come in, therefore, we shall be amused with laughing at them.—The lady ceased not with these words, but continued to persuade her sisters until they consented, and said, Let them enter; but make it a condition with them that they speak not of that which doth not concern them, lest they hear that which will not please them. Upon this she rejoiced, and, having gone again to the door, brought in the three men blind of one eye and with shaven chins, and they had thin and twisted mustaches. Being mendicants, they saluted and drew back; but the ladies rose to them, and



seated them ; and when these three men looked at the porter, they saw that he was intoxicated ; and, observing him narrowly, they thought that he was one of their own class, and said, He is a mendicant like ourselves, and will amuse us by his conversation .—but the porter, hearing what they said, arose, and rolled his eyes, and exclaimed to them, Sit quiet, and abstain from impertinent remarks. Have ye not read the inscription upon the door ?—The ladies, laughing, said to each other, Between the mendicants and the porter we shall find matter for amusement. They then placed before the former some food, and they ate, and then sat to drink. The portress handed to them the wine, and, as the cup was circulating among them, the porter said to them, Brothers, have ye any tale or strange anecdote wherewith to amuse us ? The mendicants, heated by the wine, asked for musical instruments ; and the portress brought them a tambourine of the manufacture of El-Mósil, with a lute of El-'Erák, and a Persian harp ;^{2b} whereupon they



all arose ; and one took the tambourine ; another, the lute ; and the third, the harp : and they played upon these instruments, the ladies accompanying them with loud songs , and while they were thus diverting themselves, a person knocked at the door. The portress, therefore, went to see who was there , and the cause of the knocking was this.

The Khaleefeh²⁷ Hároon Er-Rasheed had gone forth this night to see and hear what news he could collect, accompanied by Jaafar²⁸ his Wezeer, and Mesroor²⁹ his executioner. It was his custom to disguise himself in the attire of a merchant ; and this night, as he went through the city, he happened to pass, with his attendants, by the house of these ladies, and hearing the sounds of the musical instruments, he said to Jaafar, I have a desire to enter this house, and to see who is giving this concert.—They are a party who have become intoxicated, replied Jaafar, and I fear that we may experience some ill usage from them ;—but the Khaleefeh said, We must enter, and I would that thou devise some stratagem by which we may obtain admission to the inmates. Jaafar therefore answered, I hear and obey :—and he advanced, and knocked at the door ; and when the portress came and opened the door, he said to her, My mistress, we are merchants from Tabatecch,³⁰ and have been in Baghdád ten days ; we have brought with us merchandise, and taken lodgings in a Khán ;³¹ and a merchant invited us to an entertainment this night : accordingly, we went to his house, and he placed food before us, and we ate, and sat awhile drinking together, after which he gave us leave to depart ;³² and going out

in the dark, and being strangers, we missed our way to the Khán: we trust, therefore, in your generosity that you will admit us to pass the night in your house; by doing which you will obtain a reward in heaven.—The portress, looking at them, and observing that they were in the garb of merchants, and that they bore an appearance of respectability, returned, and consulted her two companions; and they said to her, Admit them:—so she returned, and opened to them the door. They said to her, Shall we enter with thy permission? She answered, Come in. The Khaleefeh, therefore, entered, with Jaafar and Mesroor; and when the ladies saw them, they rose to them, and served them, saying, Welcome are our guests; but we have a condition to impose upon you, that ye speak not of that which doth not concern you, lest ye hear that which will not please you. They answered, Good:—and when they had sat down to drink, the Khaleefeh looked at the three mendicants, and was surprised at observing that each of them was blind of the left eye; and he gazed upon the ladies, and was perplexed and amazed at their fairness and beauty. And when the others proceeded to drink and converse, the ladies brought wine to the Khaleefeh; but he said, I am a pilgrim;³³—and drew back from them. Whereupon the portress spread before him an embroidered cloth, and placed upon it a China bottle, into which she poured some willow-flower-water, adding to it a lump of ice, and sweetening it with sugar, while the Khaleefeh thanked her, and said within himself, To-morrow I must reward her for this kind action.

The party continued their carousal, and, when the wine took effect upon them, the mistress of the house arose, and waited upon them; and afterwards, taking the hand of the cateress, said, Arise, O my sister, that we may fulfil our debt. She replied, Good. The portress then rose, and, after she had cleared the middle of the saloon, placed the mendicants at the further end, beyond the doors; after which, the ladies called to the porter, saying, How slight is thy friendship! thou art not a stranger, but one of the family. So the porter arose, and girded himself, and said, What would ye?—to which one of the ladies answered, Stand where thou art:—and presently the cateress said to him, Assist me:—and he saw two black bitches, with chains attached to their necks, and drew them to the middle of the saloon; whereupon the mistress of the house arose from her place, and tucked up her sleeve above her wrist, and, taking a whip, said to the porter, Bring to me one of them. Accordingly, he dragged one forward by the chain. The bitch whined, and shook her head at the lady; but the latter fell



to beating her upon the head, notwithstanding her howling, until her arms were tired, when she threw the whip from her hand, and pressed the bitch to her bosom, and wiped away her tears, and kissed her head ; after which she said to the porter, Take her back, and bring the other, —and he brought her, and she did to her as she had done to the first. At the sight of this, the mind of the Khaleefeh was troubled, and his heart was contracted, and he winked to Jaafar that he should ask her the reason ; but he replied by a sign, Speak not

The mistress of the house then looked towards the portress, and said to her, Arise to perform what thou hast to do. She replied, Good —and the mistress of the house seated herself upon a couch of alabaster, overlaid with gold and silver, and said to the portress and the cateress, Now perform your parts. The portress then seated herself upon a couch by her ; and the cateress, having entered a closet, brought out from it a bag of satin with green fringes, and, placing herself before the lady of the house, shook it, and took out from it a lute ; and she tuned its strings, and sang to it these verses —

Restore to my eyelids the sleep which hath been ravished , and inform me of my
reason, whither it hath fled
I discovered, when I took up my abode with love, that Jhumbar had become an
enemy to my eyes
They said, We saw thee to be one of the upright , what, then, hath seduced thee ?
I answered, Seek the cause from his glance
Verily I excuse him for the shedding of my blood, admitting that I urged him
to the deed by vexation
He cast his sun-like image upon the mirror of my mind, and its reflection
kindled a flame in my vitals³¹

When the portress³⁵ had heard this song, she exclaimed, Allah approve thee !—and she rent her clothes, and fell upon the floor in a swoon ; and when her bosom was thus uncovered, the Khaleefeh saw upon her the marks of beating, as if from mikhra'ahs³⁶ and whips ; at

which he was greatly surprised. The cateress³⁷ immediately arose, sprinkled water upon her face, and brought her another dress, which she put on. The Khalcefeh then said to Jaafar, Seest thou not this woman, and the marks of beating upon her? I cannot keep silence respecting this affair, nor be at rest, until I know the truth of the history of this damsel, and that of these two bitches. But Jaafar replied, O our lord, they have made a covenant with us that we shall not speak excepting of that which concerneth us, lest we hear that which will not please us.—The cateress then took the lute again, and, placing it against her bosom, touched the chords with the ends of her fingers, and thus sang to it —



If of love we complain, what shall we say? Or consuming through desire, how can we escape?

Or if we send a messenger to interpret for us, he cannot convey the lover's complaint

Or if we would be patient, short were our existence after the loss of those we love
Nought remaineth to us but grief and mourning, and tears streaming down our cheeks

O you who are absent from my sight, but constantly dwelling within my heart!
Have you kept your faith to an impassioned lover, who, while time endureth, will never change?

Or, in absence, have you forgotten that lover who, on your account, is wasting away?

When the day of judgment shall bring us together, I will beg of our Lord a protractive trial⁴⁸

On hearing these verses of the catress, the portress again rent her clothes, and cried out, and fell upon the floor in a swoon; and the catress, as before, put on her another dress, after she had sprinkled some water upon her face.⁴⁹

The mendicants, when they witnessed this scene, said, Would that we had never entered this house, but rather had passed the night upon the mounds;⁴⁰ for our night hath been rendered foul by an event that breaketh the back! The Khaleefeh, looking towards them, then said, Wherefore is it so with you? They answered, Our hearts are troubled by this occurrence.—Are ye not, he asked, of this house?—No, they answered; nor did we imagine that this house belonged to any but the man who is sitting with you:—upon which the porter said, Verily, I have never seen this place before this night, and I would that I had passed the night upon the mounds rather than here. They then observed, one to another, We are seven men, and they are but three women; we will, therefore, ask them of their history; and if they answer us not willingly they shall do it in spite of themselves:—and they all agreed to this, excepting Jaafar, who said, This is not a right determination; leave them to themselves, for we are their guests, and they made a covenant with us which we should fulfil: there remaineth but little of the night, and each of us shall soon go his way. Then, winking to the Khaleefeh, he said, There remaineth but an hour; and to-morrow we will bring them before thee, and thou shalt ask them their story. But the Khaleefeh refused to do so, and said, I have not patience to wait so long for their history.—Words followed words, and at last they said, Who shall put the question to them?—and one answered, The porter.

The ladies then said to them, O people, of what are ye talking?—whereupon the porter approached the mistress of the house, and said

to her, O my mistress, I ask thee, and conjure thee by Allah, to tell us the story of the two bitches, and for what reason thou didst beat them, and then didst weep, and kiss them, and that thou acquaint us with the cause of thy sister's having been beaten with *mikra'ahs* : that is our question, and peace be on you.—Is this true that he saith of you ? inquired the lady, of the other men ; and they all answered, Yes,—excepting Jaafar, who was silent. When the lady heard their answer, she said, Verily, O our guests, ye have wronged us excessively ; for we made a covenant with you beforehand, that he who should speak of that which concerned him not should hear that which would not please him. Is it not enough that we have admitted you into our house, and fed you with our provisions ? But it is not so much your fault as the fault of her who introduced you to us.—She then tucked up her sleeve above her wrist, and struck the floor three times, saying, Come ye quickly !—and immediately the door of a closet opened, and there came forth from it seven black slaves, each having in his hand a drawn sword. The lady said to them, Tie behind them the hands of these men of many words, and bind each of them to another —and they did so, and said, O virtuous lady, dost thou permit us to strike off



their heads? She answered, Give them a short respite, until I shall have inquired of them their histories, before ye behead them.—By Allah, O my mistress, exclaimed the porter, kill me not for the offence of others: for they have all transgressed and committed an offence, excepting me. Verily our night had been pleasant if we had been preserved from these mendicants, whose presence is enough to convert a well-peopled city into a heap of ruins!—He then repeated this couplet:—

How good is it to pardon one able to resist ' and how much more so, one who
is helpless '

For the sake of the friendship that subsisted between us, destroy not one for
the crime of another '

On hearing these words of the porter, the lady laughed after her anger. Then approaching the men, she said, Acquaint me with your histories, for there remaineth of your lives no more than an hour. Were ye not persons of honourable and high condition, or governors,⁴¹ I would hasten your recompense.—The Khaleefeh said to Jaafar, Wo to thee, O Jaafar! make known to her who we are; otherwise she will kill us.—It were what we deserve, replied he.—Jesting, said the Khaleefeh, is not befitting in a time for seriousness each has its proper occasion.—The lady then approached the mendicants, and said to them, Are ye brothers? They answered, No, indeed; we are only poor foreigners.⁴² She said then to one of them, Wast thou born blind of one eye?—No, verily, he answered; but a wonderful event happened to me when my eye was destroyed, and the story of it, if engrained on the understanding, would serve as a lesson to him who would be admonished. She asked the second and the third also; and they answered her as the first, adding, Each of us is from a different country, and our history is wonderful and extraordinary. The lady then looked towards them and said, Each of you shall relate his story, and the cause of his coming to our abode, and then stroke his head,⁴³ and go his way.

The first who advanced was the porter, who said, O my mistress, I am a porter; and this cateress loaded me, and brought me hither, and what hath happened to me here in your company ye know. This is my story; and peace be on you.—Stroke thy head, then, said she, and go:—but he replied, By Allah, I will not go until I shall have heard the story of my companions.—The first mendicant then advanced, and related as follows:—

THE STORY OF THE FIRST ROYAL MENDICANT.

KNOW, O my mistress, that the cause of my having shaved my beard, and of the loss of my eye was this :—My father was a King, and he had a brother who was also a King, and who resided in another capital. It happened that my mother gave birth to me on the same day on which the son of my uncle was born ; and years and days passed away until we attained to manhood. Now, it was my custom, some years, to visit my uncle, and to remain with him several months ; and on one of these occasions my cousin paid me great honour ; he slaughtered sheep for me, and strained the wine for me, and we sat down to drink ; and when the wine had affected us, he said to me, O son of my uncle, I have need of thine assistance in an affair of interest to me, and I beg that thou wilt not oppose me in that which I desire to do. I replied, I am altogether at thy service :—and he made me swear to him by great oaths, and, rising immediately, absented himself for a little while, and then returned, followed by a woman decked with ornaments, and perfumed, and wearing a dress of extraordinary value. He looked towards me, while the woman stood behind him, and said, Take this woman, and go before me to the burial-ground which is in such a place —and he described it to me, and I knew it. He then added, Enter the burial-ground, and there wait for me.

I could not oppose him, nor refuse to comply with his request, on account of the oaths which I had sworn to him ; so I took the woman, and went with her to the burial-ground ; and when we had sat there a short time, my cousin came, bearing a basin of water, and a bag containing some plaster, and a small adze. Going to a tomb in the midst of the burial-ground, he took the adze, and disunited the stones, which he placed on one side ; he then dug up the earth with the adze, and uncovered a flat stone, of the size of a small door, under which there appeared a vaulted staircase. Having done this he made a sign to the woman, and said to her, Do according to thy choice :—whereupon she descended the stairs. He then looked towards me, and said, O son of my uncle, complete thy kindness when I have descended into this place, by replacing the trap-door and the earth above it as they were before : then, this plaster which is in the bag, and this water which is in the basin, do thou knead together, and plaster the stones of the tomb as they were, so that no man may know it, and say, This hath been lately opened, but its interior is old :—for,



during the space of a whole year I have been preparing this, and no one knew it but God this is what I would have thee do He then said to me, May God never deprive thy friends of thy presence, O son of my uncle!—and, having uttered these words, he descended the stairs.

When he had disappeared from before my eyes, I replaced the trap-door, and busied myself with doing as he had ordered me, until the tomb was restored to the state in which it was at first ; after which I returned to the palace of my uncle, who was then absent on a hunting excursion. I slept that night, and when the morning came, I reflected upon what had occurred between me and my cousin, and repented of what I had done for him, when repentance was of no avail. I then went out to the burial-ground, and searched for the tomb ; but could not discover it. I ceased not in my search until the approach of night ; and, not finding the way to it, returned again to the palace ; and I neither ate nor drank : my heart was troubled respecting my cousin, since I knew not what had become of him ; and I fell into

excessive grief. I passed the night sorrowful until the morning, and went again to the burial-ground, reflecting upon the action of my cousin, and repenting of my compliance with his request; and I searched among all the tombs; but discovered not that for which I looked. Thus I persevered in my search seven days without success.⁴⁴

My trouble continued and increased until I was almost mad; and I found no relief but in departing, and returning to my father; but on my arrival at his capital, a party at the city-gate sprang upon me and bound me. I was struck with the utmost astonishment, considering that I was the son of the Sultán of the city, and that these were the servants of my father and of myself excessive fear of them overcame me, and I said within myself, What hath happened to my father? I asked, of those who had bound me, the cause of this conduct; but they returned me no answer, till after a while, when one of them, who had been my servant, said to me, Fortune hath betrayed thy father, the troops have been false to him, and the Wezeer hath killed him; and we were lying in wait to take thee.—They took me, and I was as one dead, by reason of this news which I had heard respecting my father, and I stood before the Wezeer who had killed my father.

Now, there was an old enmity subsisting between me and him; and the cause of it was this.—I was fond of shooting with the cross-bow; and it happened, one day, that as I was standing on the roof of my palace, a bird alighted on the roof of the palace of the Wezeer, who was standing there at the time, and I aimed at the bird; but the bullet missed it, and struck the eye of the Wezeer, and knocked it out, in accordance with the appointment of fate and destiny, as the poet hath said:—

We trod the steps appointed for us and the man whose steps are appointed
must tread them

He whose death is decreed to take place in one land will not die in any land
but that

When I had thus put out the eye of the Wezeer, he could say nothing, because my father was King of the city. This was the cause of the enmity between him and me: and when I stood before him, with my hands bound behind me, he gave the order to strike off my head. I said to him, Wouldst thou kill me for no offence?—What offence, he exclaimed, could be greater than this?—and he pointed to the place of the eye which was put out. I did that, said I, unintentionally.

He replied, If thou didst it unintentionally, I will do the same to thee purposely:—and immediately he said, Bring him forward to me:—and, when they had done so, he thrust his finger into my left eye, and pulled it out. Thus I became deprived of one eye, as ye see me. He then bound me firmly, and placed me in a chest, and said to the executioner, Take this fellow, and draw thy sword, and convey him without the city; then put him to death, and let the wild beasts devour him.

Accordingly, he went forth with me from the city, and, having taken me out from the chest, bound hand and foot, was about to bandage my eye, and kill me; whereupon I wept, and exclaimed,—

How many brothers have I taken as armour' and such they were, but to guard my enemies

I thought they would be as piercing arrows and such they were, but to enter my heart'

The executioner, who had served my father in the same capacity, and to whom I had shewn kindnesses, said, on hearing these verses, O my master, what can I do, being a slave under command?—but presently he added, Depart with thy life, and return not to this country, lest thou perish, and cause me to perish with thee. The poet saith,—

Flee with thy life if thou fearest oppression, and leave the house to tell its builder's fate

Thou wilt find, for the land that thou quittest, another but no soul wilt thou find to replace thine own

As soon as he had thus said, I kissed his hands, and believed not in my safety until I had fled from his presence. The loss of my eye appeared light to me when I considered my escape from death; and I journeyed to my uncle's capital, and, presenting myself before him, informed him of what had befallen my father, and of the manner in which I had lost my eye: upon which he wept bitterly, and said, Thou hast added to my trouble and my grief; for thy cousin hath been lost for some days, and I know not what hath happened to him, nor can any one give me information respecting him. Then he wept again, until he became insensible; and when he recovered, he said, O my son, the loss of thine eye is better than the loss of thy life.

Upon this I could no longer keep silence respecting his son, my cousin; so I informed him of all that happened to him; and on hearing this news he rejoiced exceedingly, and said, Shew me the tomb.—By Allah, O my uncle, I replied, I know not where it is; for

I went afterwards several times to search for it, and could not recognise its place. We, however, went together to the burial-ground, and, looking to the right and left, I discovered it; and both I and my uncle rejoiced. I then entered the tomb with him, and when we had removed the earth, and lifted up the trap-door, we descended fifty steps, and, arriving at the bottom of the stairs, there issued forth upon us a smoke which blinded our eyes; whereupon my uncle pronounced those words which relieve from fear him who uttereth them,—There is no strength nor power but in God, the High, the Great!—After this, we proceeded, and found ourselves in a saloon, filled with flour and grain, and various eatables; and we saw there a curtain suspended over a couch, upon which my uncle looked, and found there his son and the woman who had descended with him, lying side by side, and converted into black charcoal, as if they had been thrown into a pit of fire. And when he beheld this spectacle, he spat in his son's face, and exclaimed, This is what thou deservest, O thou wretch! This is the punishment of the present world, and there remaineth the punishment of the other world, which will be more severe and lasting!—and he struck him with his shoes. Astonished at this action, and grieved for my cousin, seeing him and the damsel thus converted into charcoal, I said, By Allah, O my uncle, moderate the trouble of thy heart, for my mind is perplexed by that which hath happened to thy son, and by thinking how it hath come to pass that he and the damsel are converted into black charcoal. Dost thou not deem it enough for him to be in this state, that thou beatest him with thy shoes?

O son of my brother, he replied, this my son was, from his early years, inflamed with love for his foster-sister,⁴⁵ and I used to forbid him from entertaining this passion for her, and to say within myself, They are now children, but when they grow older a base act will be committed by them:—and, indeed, I heard that such had been the case, but I believed it not. I, however, reprimanded him severely, and said to him, Beware of so foul an action, which none before thee hath committed, nor will any commit after thee: otherwise we shall suffer disgrace and disparagement among the Kings until we die, and our history will spread abroad with the caravans: have a care for thyself that such an action proceed not from thee; for I should be incensed against thee, and kill thee. I then separated him from her, and her from him: but the vile woman loved him excessively; the Devil got possession of them both; and when my son saw that I had separated him, he secretly made this place beneath the earth, and, having con-

vayed hither the provisions which thou seest, took advantage of my inadvertence when I had gone out to hunt, and came hither: but the Truth ⁴⁶ (whose perfection be extolled, and whose name be exalted!) was jealously vigilant over them, and consumed them by fire, and the punishment of the world to come will be more severe and lasting.—He then wept, and I wept with him; and he said to me, Thou art my son in his stead.—I remained a while reflecting upon the world and its vicissitudes, upon the murder of my father by the Wezeer, and his usurping his throne, and the loss of my eye, and the strange events which had happened to my cousin, and I wept again.

We then ascended, and, having replaced the trap-door and the earth above it, and restored the tomb to its former state, returned to our abode; but scarcely had we seated ourselves when we heard the sounds of drums and trumpets, warriors galloped about, and the air was filled with dust raised by the horses' hoofs. Our minds were perplexed, not knowing what had happened, and the King, asking the news, was answered, The Wezeer of thy brother hath slain him and his soldiers and guards, and come with his army to assault the city unawares; and the inhabitants, being unable to withstand, have submitted to him.—whereupon I said within myself, If I fall into his hand, he will slay me.—Griefs overwhelmed me, and I thought of the calamities which had befallen my father and my mother, and knew not what to do; for if I appeared, the people of the city would know me, and the troops of my father would hasten to kill and destroy me. I knew no way of escape but to shave off my beard: ⁴⁷ so I shaved it, and, having changed my clothes, departed from the city, and came hither, to this abode of peace, in the hope that some person would introduce me to the Prince of the Faithful, the Khaleefeh of the Lord of all creatures, that I might relate to him my story, and all that had befallen me. I arrived in this city this night; and as I stood perplexed, not knowing whither to direct my steps, I saw this mendicant, and saluted him, and said, I am a stranger. He replied, And I, too, am a stranger:—and while we were thus addressing each other, our companion, this third person, came up to us, and saluting us, said, I am a stranger. We replied, And we, also, are strangers. So we walked on together, and darkness overtook us, and destiny directed us unto your abode.—This was the cause of the shaving of my beard, and of the loss of my eye.

The lady then said to him, Stroke my head, and depart:—but he replied, I will not depart until I have heard the stories of the others.

And they wondered at his tale ; and the Khaleefeh said to Jaafar, Verily I have never known the like of that which hath happened to this mendicant.

The second mendicant then advanced, and, having kissed the ground, said,—

THE STORY OF THE SECOND ROYAL MENDICANT.

O MY mistress, I was not born with only one eye ; but my story is wonderful, and, if written, would serve as a lesson to him who would be admonished. I am a King, and son of a King : I read the *Qurân* according to the seven readings,⁴⁸ and perused various works under the tuition of different learned professors of their subjects : I studied the science of the stars,⁴⁹ and the writings of the poets, and made myself a proficient in all the sciences ; so that I surpassed the people of my age. My hand-writing⁵⁰ was extolled among all the scribes, my fame spread among all countries, and my history among all Kings ; and the King of India, hearing of me, requested my father to allow me to visit him, sending him various gifts and curious presents, such as were suitable to Kings. My father, therefore, prepared for me six ships, and we proceeded by sea for the space of a whole month, after which we came to land ; and, having disembarked some horses which we had with us in the ship, we loaded ten camels with presents, and commenced our journey ; but soon there appeared a cloud of dust, which rose and spread until it filled the air before us, and, after a while, cleared a little, and discovered to us, in the midst of it, sixty



horseman like fierce lions whom we perceived to be Arab highwaymen ; and when they saw us, that we were a small company with ten loads of presents for the King of India, they galloped towards us, pointing their spears at us. We made signs to them with our fingers, and said, We are ambassadors to the honoured King of India ; therefore do us no injury :—but they replied, We are not in his territories, nor under his government. They slew certain of the young men, and the rest fled. I also fled, after I had received a severe wound ; the Arabs being employed, without further regard to us, in taking possession of the treasure and presents which we had with us.

I proceeded without knowing whither to direct my course, reduced from a mighty to an abject state, and journeyed till I arrived at the summit of a mountain, where I took shelter in a cavern until the next morning. I then resumed my journey, and arrived at a flourishing city the winter, with its cold, had passed away, and the spring had come, with its flowers ; and I rejoiced at my arrival there, being wearied with my journey, anxious and pallid. My condition being thus changed, I knew not whither to bend my steps ; and, turning to a tailor sitting in his shop, I saluted him, and he returned my salutation, and welcomed me, and wished me joy, asking me the reason of my having come thither. I acquainted him, therefore, with what had befallen me from first to last, and he was grieved for me, and said, O young man, reveal not thy case, for I fear what the King of this city might do to thee, since he is the greatest of thy father's enemies, and hath a debt of blood against him. He then placed some food and drink before me, and we ate together, and I conversed with him till night, when he lodged me in a place by his shop, and brought me a bed and coverlet ; and, after I had remained with him three days, he said to me, Dost thou not know any trade by which to make gain ?⁶¹ I answered, I am acquainted with the law, a student of sciences, a writer, and an arithmetician.—Thy occupation, he said, is profitless in our country : there is no one in our city acquainted with science or writing, but only with getting money. Verily, I replied, I know nothing but what I have told thee.—Gird thyself, then, said he, and take an axe and a rope, and cut firewood in the desert, and so obtain thy subsistence until God dispel thy affliction ; but acquaint no one with thy history, else they will kill thee. He then bought for me an axe and a rope, and sent me with a party of wood-cutters, giving them a charge respecting me. Accordingly, I went forth with them, and, cut some wood, and brought back a load upon my head, and sold it



for half a piece of gold, part of which I expended in food, laying by the remainder.

Thus I continued for the space of a year, after which I went one day into the desert, according to my custom, to cut firewood ; and, finding there a tract with abundance of wood, I entered it, and came to a tree, around which I dug ; and as I was removing the earth from its roots, the axe struck against a ring of brass ; and I cleared away the earth from it, and found that it was affixed to a trap-door of wood, which I immediately removed. Beneath it appeared a staircase, which I descended ; and at the bottom of this I entered a door, and beheld a palace, strongly constructed, where I found a lady, like a pearl of high price, whose aspect banished from the heart all anxiety and grief and affliction. At the sight of her I prostrated myself in adoration of

her Creator for the fairness and beauty which He had displayed in her person ; and she, looking towards me, said, Art thou a man or a Jinnee ? I answered her, I am a man.—And who, she asked, hath brought thee to this place, in which I have lived five and twenty years without ever seeing a human being ?—Her words sounded sweetly to me, and I answered her, O my mistress, God hath brought me to thy abode, and I hope will put an end to my anxiety and grief :—and I related to her my story from beginning to end. She was grieved at my case, and wept, and said, I also will acquaint thee with my story. Know that I am the daughter of the King of the further parts of India, the lord of the Ebony Island. My father had married me to the son of my uncle ; but on the night of my bridal festivities, an 'Efreet namad Jarjarecs, the son of Rejmoos, the son of Iblees, carried me off, and, soaring with me through the air, alighted in this place, to which he conveyed all things necessary for me, such as ornaments, and garments, and linen, and furniture, and food, and drink ; and once in every ten days he cometh to me, and spendeth a night here ;⁵² and he hath appointed with me, that, in case of my wanting any thing by



night or day, I should touch with my hand these two lines which are inscribed upon the *kubbeh*,⁵³ and as soon as I remove my hand I see him before me. Four days have now passed since he was last with me, and there remain, therefore, six days before he will come again; wilt thou then remain with me five days, and depart one day before his visit?—I answered, Yes; rejoicing at the proposal; and she arose, and taking me by the hand, conducted me through an arched door to a small and elegant bath, where I took off my clothes, while she seated herself upon a mattress. After this, she seated me by her side, and brought me some sherbet of sugar infused with musk,⁵⁴ and handed it to me to drink: she then placed some food before me, and after we had eaten and conversed together, she said to me, Sleep, and rest thyself; for thou art fatigued.

I slept, O my mistress, and forgot all that had befallen me; and when I awoke, I found her rubbing my feet;⁵⁵ upon which I called to her, and we sat down again and conversed a while; and she said to me, By Allah, I was straitened in my heart, living here alone, without any person to talk with me, five and twenty years. Praise be to God who hath sent thee to me.—I thanked her for her kind expressions; and love of her took possession of my heart, and my anxiety and grief fled away. We then sat down to drink together, and I remained by her side all the night, delighted with her company, for I had never seen her like in my whole life; and in the morning, when we were both full of joy, I said to her, Shall I take thee up from this subterranean place, and release thee from the *Jinne*? But she laughed, and replied, Be content, and hold thy peace; for, of every ten days, one day shall be for the '*Efreet*, and nine for thee. I persisted, however, being overcome with passion: and said, I will this instant demolish this *kubbeh* upon which the inscription is engraved, and let the '*Efreet* come, that I may slay him: for I am predestined to kill '*Efreets*. She entreated me to refrain; but, paying no attention to her words, I kicked the *kubbeh* with violence; upon which she exclaimed, The '*Efreet* hath arrived! Did I not caution thee against this? Verily thou hast brought a calamity upon me; but save thyself, and ascend by the way that thou camest.

In the excess of my fear I forgot my sandals and my axe, and when I had ascended two steps, turning round to look for them, I saw that the ground had opened, and there rose from it an '*Efreet* of hideous aspect, who said, Wherefore is this disturbance with which thou hast alarmed me, and what misfortune hath befallen thee? She



answered, No misfortune hath happened to me, excepting that my heart was contracted, and I desired to drink some wine to dilate it, and, rising to perform my purpose, I fell against the kubbeh —Thou liest, vile woman, he exclaimed ;—and, looking about the palace to the right and left, he saw the sandals and axe , and said to her, These are the property of none but a man Who hath visited thee ?—I have not seen them, she answered, until this instant : probably they caught to thee.—This language, said he, is absurd, and will have no effect upon me, thou shameless woman !—and, so saying, he stripped her of her clothing, and tied her down, with her arms and legs extended, to four stakes, and began to beat her, urging her to confess what had happened.

For myself, being unable to endure her cries, I ascended the stairs, overpowered by fear, and, arriving at the top, replaced the trap-door as it was at first, and covered it over with earth. I repented bitterly of what I had done, and reflecting upon the lady and her beauty, and how this wretch was torturing her after she had lived with him five and twenty years, and that he tortured her only on my account, and reflecting also upon my father and his kingdom, and how I had been reduced to the condition of a wood-cutter, I repeated this verse :—

When fortune bringeth thee affliction, console thyself by remembering that one day thou must see prosperity, and another day, difficulty.

Returning to my companion, the tailor, I found him awaiting my return as if he were placed in a pan upon burning coals. I past last

night, said he, with anxious heart on thy account, fearing for thee from some wild beast or other calamity. Praise be to God for thy safe return.—I thanked him for his tender concern for me, and entered my apartment; and as I sat meditating upon that which had befallen me, and blaming myself for having kicked the kubbeh, my friend the tailor came in to me, and said, In the shop is a foreigner, who asks for thee, and he has thy axe and sandals; he came with them to the wood-cutters,⁵⁶ and said to them, I went out at the time of the call of the Muëddin to morning-prayer, and stumbled upon these, and know not to whom they belong: can ye guide me to their owner?—The wood-cutters, therefore, directed him to thee: he is sitting in my shop; so go out to him and thank him, and take thy axe and thy sandals.—On hearing these words, my countenance turned pale, and my whole state became changed; and while I was in this condition, the floor of my chamber clove asunder, and there rose from it the stranger, and lo, he was the 'Efreet; he had tortured the lady with



the utmost cruelty; but she would confess nothing: so he took the axe and the sandals, and said to her, If I am Jarjarees, of the descendants of Iblees, I will bring the owner of this axe and these sandals. Accordingly, he came, with the pretence before mentioned, to the wood-cutters, and, having entered my chamber, without granting me any delay, seized me, and soared with me through the air: he then descended, and dived into the earth, and brought me up into the palace where I was before.

Here I beheld the lady stripped of her clothing, and with blood flowing from her sides; and tears trickled from my eyes. The 'Efreet then took hold of her, and said, Vile woman, this is thy lover:—whereupon she looked at me, and replied, I know him not, nor have I ever seen him until this instant. The 'Efreet said to her, With all this torture wilt thou not confess? She answered, Never in my life have I seen him before, and it is not lawful in the sight of God that I should speak falsely against him.⁵⁷—Then, said he, if thou know him not, take this sword and strike off his head. She took the sword, and came to me, and stood over my head but I made a sign to her with my eyebrow, while tears ran down my cheeks. She replied in a similar manner, Thou art he who hath done all this to me:—I made a sign to her, however, that this was a time for pardon, conveying my meaning in the manner thus described by the poet —⁵⁸

Our signal in love is the glance of our eyes, and every intelligent person understandeth the sign.

Our eyebrows carry on an intercourse between us we are silent, but love speaketh

And when she understood me, she threw the sword from her hand, O my mistress, and the 'Efreet handed it to me, saying, Strike off her head, and I will liberate thee, and do thee no harm. I replied, Good:—and, quickly approaching her, raised my hand; but she made a sign as though she would say, I did no injury to thee—whereupon my eyes poured with tears, and, throwing down the sword, I said, O mighty 'Efreet, and valiant hero, if a woman, deficient in sense and religion,⁵⁹ seeth it not lawful to strike off my head, how is it lawful for me to do so to her, and especially when I have never seen her before in my life? I will never do it, though I should drink the cup of death and destruction.—There is affection between you, said the 'Efreet, and, taking the sword, he struck off one of the hands of the lady; then, the other; after this, her right foot; and then, her left foot: thus with four blows he cut off her four extremities, while I



looked on, expecting my own death. She then made a sign to me with her eye, and the 'Efreet, observing her, exclaimed, Now thou hast been guilty of incontinence with thine eye!—and, with a blow of his sword, struck off her head; after which, he turned towards me, and said, O man, it is allowed us by our law, if a wife be guilty of incontinence, to put her to death. This woman I carried off on her wedding-night, when she was twelve years of age, and she was acquainted with no man but me; and I used to pass one night with her in the course of every ten days in the garb of a foreigner; and when I discovered of a certainty that she had been unfaithful to me, I killed her: but as for thee, I am not convinced that thou hast wronged me with respect to her, yet I must not leave thee unpunished: choose, therefore, what injury I shall do to thee

Upon this, O my mistress, I rejoiced exceedingly, and, eager to obtain his pardon, I said to him, What shall I choose from thy hands?—Choose, he answered, into what form I shall change thee; either the form of a dog, or that of an ass, or that of an ape. I replied, in my desire of forgiveness, Verily, if thou wilt pardon me, God will pardon thee in recompense for thy shewing mercy to a Muslim who hath done thee no injury:—and I humbled myself in the most abject manner, and said to him, Pardon me as the envied man did the envier.—And how was that? said he. I answered as follows:—⁶⁰

THE STORY OF THE ENVIER AND THE ENVIED

KNOW, O my master, that there was a certain man who had a neighbour that envied him ; and the more this person envied him, so much the more did God increase the prosperity of the former. Thus it continued a long time ; but when the envied man found that his neighbour persisted in troubling him, he removed to a place where there was a deserted well ; and there he built for himself an oratory, and occupied himself in the worship of God. Numerous Fakeers⁶¹ assembled around him, and he acquired great esteem, people repairing to him from every quarter, placing firm reliance upon his sanctity ; and his fame reached the ears of his envious neighbour, who mounted his horse, and went to visit him ; and when the envied man saw him, he saluted him, and payed him the utmost civility. The envier then said to him, I have come hither to inform thee of a matter in which thou wilt find advantage, and for which I shall obtain a recompense in heaven. The envied man replied, May God requite thee for me with every blessing. Then, said the envier, order the Fakeers to retire to their cells, for the information that I am about to give thee I would have no one overhear. So he ordered them to enter their cells, and the envier said to him, Arise, and let us walk together, and converse, and they walked on until they came to the deserted well before mentioned, when the envier pushed the envied man into this well, without the knowledge of any one, and went his way, imagining that he had killed him.

But this well was inhabited by Jimn, who received him unhurt, and seated him upon a large stone ; and when they had done this, one of them said to the others, Do ye know this man ? They answered, We know him not.—Thus, said he, is the envied man who fled from him who envied him, and took up his abode in this quarter, in the neighbouring oratory, and who entertaineth us by his zikr⁶² and his readings ; and when his envier heard of him, he came hither to him, and, devising a stratagem against him, threw him down here. His fame hath this night reached the Sultán of this city, who hath purposed to visit him to-morrow, on account of the affliction which hath befallen his daughter.—And what, said they, hath happened to his daughter ? He answered, Madness ; for Meymoon, the son of Demdem, hath become inflamed with love for her ; and her cure is the easiest of things. They asked him, What is it ?—and he answered,



The black cat that is with him in the oratory hath at the end of her tail a white spot, of the size of a piece of silver, and from this white spot should be taken seven hairs, and with these the damsel should be fumigated, and the Mârid would depart from over her head, and not return to her; so she would be instantly cured. And now it is our duty to take him out.

When the morning came, the Fakeers saw the Sheykh rising out of the well; and he became magnified in their eyes. And when he entered the oratory, he took from the white spot at the end of the cat's tail seven hairs, and placed them in a portfolio by him; and at sunrise the King came to him, and when the Sheykh saw him, he said to him, O King, thou hast come to visit me in order that I may cure thy daughter. The King replied, Yes, O virtuous Sheykh.—Then, said the Sheykh, send some person to bring her hither; and I trust in God, whose name be exalted, that she may be instantly cured. And when the King had brought his daughter, the Sheykh beheld her bound, and, seating her, suspended a curtain over her, and took out the hairs, and fumigated her with them; whereupon the Mârid cried

out from over her head, and left her; and the damsel immediately recovered her reason, and, veiling her face, said to her father, What is this, and wherefore didst thou bring me to this place? He answered her, Thou hast nothing to fear,—and rejoiced greatly. He kissed the hand of the envied Sheykh, and said to the great men of his court who were with him, What shall be the recompense of this Sheykh for that which he hath done? They answered, His recompense should be that thou marry him to her.—Ye have spoken truly, said the King:—and he gave her in marriage to him, and thus the Sheykh became a connection of the King; and after some days the King died, and he was made King in his place.

And it happened one day that this envied King was riding with his troops, and he saw his envier approaching; and when this man came before him he seated him upon a horse with high distinction and honour, and, taking him to his palace, gave him a thousand pieces of gold, and a costly dress; after which he sent him back from the city, with attendants to escort him to his house, and reproached him for nothing—Consider, then, O 'Efrct, the pardon of the envied to the envier, and his kindness to him, notwithstanding the injuries he had done him.⁶¹

CONTINUATION OF THE STORY OF THE SECOND ROYAL MENDICANT

The 'Efrct, when he had heard this story, replied, Lengthen not thy words to me—as to my killing thee, fear it not; and as to my pardoning thee, covet it not; but as to my enchanting thee, there is no escape from it;—and, so saying, he clove the earth asunder, and soared with me through the sky to such a height that I beheld the world beneath me as though it were a bowl of water: then, alighting upon a mountain, he took up a little dust, and, having muttered and pronounced certain words over it, sprinkled me with it, saying, Quit this form, and take the form of an ape!—whereupon I became like an ape of a hundred years of age.

When I saw myself changed into this ugly form, I wept for myself, but determined to be patient under the tyranny of fortune, knowing it to be constant to no one. I descended from the summit of the mountain, and, after having journeyed for the space of a month, arrived at the sea-shore; and, when I had stood there a short time, I saw a vessel in the midst of the sea, with a favourable wind approaching



the land ; I therefore hid myself behind a rock on the beach, and when the ship came close up, I sprang into the midst of it. But as soon as the persons on board saw me, one of them cried, 'Turn out this unlucky brute from the ship :—another said, Let us kill him :—and a third exclaimed, I will kill him with this sword. I, however, caught hold of the end of the sword, and tears flowed from my eyes ; at the sight of which the captain took compassion on me, and said to the passengers, O merchants, this ape hath sought my aid, and I give it him ; he is under my protection ; let no one, therefore, oppose or trouble him. He then treated me with kindness, and whatever he said to me I understood, and all that he required to be done I performed as his servant.

We continued our voyage for fifty days with a fair wind, and cast anchor under a large city containing a population which no one but God, whose name be exalted, could reckon ; and when we had moored our vessel, there came to us some memlooks from the King of the city, who came on board the ship, and complimented the merchants on their safe arrival, saying, Our King greeteth you, rejoicing in your safety, and hath sent to you this roll of paper, desiring that each of you shall write a line upon it ; for the King had a Wezeer who was an eminent caligraphist, and he is dead, and the King hath sworn that he will not appoint any person to his office who cannot write equally well." Though in the form of an ape, I arose and snatched the paper from their hands, upon which, fearing that I would tear it and throw it into the sea, they cried out against me, and would have killed me, but I made signs to them that I would write, and the captain said to them, Suffer him to write, and if he scribble we will turn him away ; but if he write well I will adopt him as my son, for I have never seen a more intelligent ape. So I took the pen, and demanded the ink, and wrote in an epistolary hand this couplet :—

Fame hath recorded the virtues of the noble, but no one hath been able to reckon
thine

May God not deprive mankind of such a father, for thou art the parent of every
excellence

Then, in a more formal, large hand, I wrote the following verses —

There is no writer that shall not perish, but what his hand hath written endureth
ever

Write, therefore, nothing but what will please thee when thou shalt see it on the
day of resurrection

Two other specimens I wrote, in two different and smaller hands, and returned the paper to the memlooks, who took it back to the King ; and when he saw what was written upon it, the hand of no one pleased him excepting mine, and he said to his attendants, Go to the author of this hand-writing, put upon him this dress, and mount him upon a mule, and conduct him, with the band of music before him, to my presence. On hearing this order, they smiled ; and the King was angry with them, and said, How is it that I give you an order, and ye laugh at me ? They answered, O King, we laugh not at thy words, but because he who wrote this is an ape, and not a son of Adam : he is with the captain of the ship newly arrived.

The King was astonished at their words ; he shook with delight, and said, I would purchase this ape. He then sent some messengers

to the ship, with the mule and the dress of honour, saying to them, Ye must clothe him with this dress, and mount him upon the mule, and bring him hither. So they came to the ship, and, taking me from the captain, clad me with the dress; and the people were astonished, and flocked to amuse themselves with the sight of me. And when they brought me to the King, and I beheld him, I kissed the ground before him three times, and he ordered me to sit down: so I sat down upon my knees;⁶⁵ and the persons present were surprised at my polite manners, and especially the King, who presently ordered his people to retire. They, therefore, did so; none remaining but the King, and a eunuch, and a young memlook, and myself. The King then commanded that a repast should be brought; and they placed before him a service of viands, such as gratified the appetite and delighted the eye; and the King made a sign to me that I should eat; whereupon I arose, and, having kissed the ground before him seven times, sat down to eat with him; and when the table was removed, I washed my hands, and, taking the ink-case, and pen and paper, I wrote these two verses:—

Great is my appetite for thee, O Kunáteh⁶⁶ I cannot be happy nor endure without thee

Be thou every day and night my food, and may drops of honey not be wanting to moisten thee

Having done this, I arose, and seated myself at a distance; and the King, looking at what I had written, read it with astonishment, and exclaimed, Can an ape possess such fluency and such skill in caligraphy? This is, indeed, a wonder of wonders!—Afterwards, a chess-table was brought to the King, and he said to me, Wilt thou play? By a motion of my head I answered, Yes:—and I advanced, and arranged the pieces.⁶⁷ I played with him twice, and beat him; and the King was perplexed, and said, Were this a man, he would surpass all the people of his age.

He then said to his eunuch, Go to thy mistress, and say to her, Answer the summons of the King.—that she may come and gratify her curiosity by the sight of this wonderful ape. The eunuch, therefore, went, and returned with his mistress, the King's daughter, who, as soon as she saw me, veiled her face, and said, O my father, how is it that thou art pleased to send for me, and suffer strange men to see me?—O my daughter, answered the King, there is no one here but the young memlook, and the eunuch who brought thee up, and this ape, with myself, thy father: from whom, then, dost thou veil thy



face?—This ape, said she, is the son of a King, and the name of his father is Eymár ⁶⁴ he is enchanted, and it was the 'Efreet Jarjarees, a descendant of Iblees, who transformed him, after having slain his own wife, the daughter of King Aknúnoos. This, whom thou supposedst to be an ape, is a learned and wise man.—The King was amazed at his daughter's words, and, looking towards me, said, Is it true that she saith of thee? I answered, by a motion of my head, Yes :—and wept. The King then said to his daughter, By what means didst thou discover that he was enchanted?—O my father, she answered, I had with me, in my younger years, an old woman who was a cunning enchantress, and she taught me the art of enchantment : I have committed its rules to memory, and know it thoroughly, being acquainted with a hundred and seventy modes of performing it, by the least of which I could transport the stones of thy city beyond Mount Káf, and make its site to be an abyss of the sea, and convert its inhabitants into fish in the midst of it.—I conjure thee, then, by the name of Allah, said her father, to restore this young man, that I may make him my Wezeer. Is it possible that thou possessedst this excellence, and I knew it not? Restore him, that I may make him my Wezeer, for he is a polite and intelligent youth.

She replied, With pleasure :—and, taking a knife upon which were engraved some Hebrew names, marked with it a circle in the midst of the palace. Within this she wrote certain names and talismans, and then she pronounced invocations, and uttered unintelligible words ; and soon the palace around us became immersed in gloom to



such a degree, that we thought the whole world was overspread; and lo, the 'Efreet appeared before us in a most hideous shape, with hands like winnowing-forks, and legs like masts, and eyes like burning torches; so that we were terrified at him. The King's daughter exclaimed, No welcome to thee!—to which the 'Efreet, assuming the form of a lion, replied, Thou traitress, how is it that thou hast broken thine oath? Did we not swear that we would not oppose one another?—Thou wretch, said she, when didst thou receive

an oath?—The 'Efreet, still in the form of a lion, then exclaimed, Take what awaiteth thee!—and, opening his mouth, rushed upon the lady. but she instantly plucked a hair from her head and muttered with her lips, whereupon the hair became converted into a piercing sword, with which she struck the lion, and he was cleft in twain by the blow; but his head became changed into a scorpion. The lady immediately transformed herself into an enormous serpent, and crept after the execrable wretch in the shape of a scorpion, and a sharp contest ensued between them; after which, the scorpion became an eagle, and the serpent, changing to a vulture, pursued the eagle for a length of time. The latter then transformed himself into a black cat, and the King's daughter became a wolf, and they fought together long and fiercely, till the cat, seeing himself overcome, changed him-

self into a large red pomegranate, which fell into a pool; but, the wolf pursuing it, it ascended into the air, and then fell upon the pavement of the palace, and broke in pieces, its grains becoming scattered, each apart from the others, and all spread about the whole space of ground enclosed by the palace. The wolf, upon this, transformed itself into a cock, in order to pick up the grains, and not leave one of them; but, according to the decree of fate, one grain remained hidden by the side of the pool of the fountain. The cock began to cry, and flapped its wings, and made a sign to us with its beak, but we understood not what it would say. It then uttered at us such a cry, that we thought the palace had fallen down upon us; and it ran about the whole of the ground, until it saw the grain that had lain hid by the side of the pool, when it pounced upon it, to pick it up, but it fell into the midst of the water, and became transformed into a fish, and sank into the water; upon which the cock became a fish of a larger size, and plunged in after the other. For a while it was absent from our sight; but, at length, we heard a loud cry, and trembled at the sound; after which, the 'Efreet rose as a flame of fire, casting fire from his mouth, and fire and smoke from his eyes and nostrils: the King's daughter also became as a vast body of fire; and we would have plunged into the water from fear of our being burnt and destroyed; but suddenly the 'Efreet cried out from within the fire, and came towards us upon the leewán," blowing fire at our faces. The lady, however, overtook him, and blew fire in like manner in his face; and some sparks struck us both from her and from him: her sparks did us no harm; but one from him struck me in my eye, and destroyed it, I being still in the



form of an ape ; and a spark from him reached the face of the King, and burned the lower half, with his beard and mouth, and struck out his lower teeth : another spark also fell upon the breast of the eunuch , who was burnt, and died immediately. We expected destruction, and gave up all hope of preserving our lives ; but while we were in this state, a voice exclaimed, God is most great ! God is most great ! He hath conquered and aided, and abandoned the denier of the faith of Moḥammad, the chief of mankind !⁷⁰—The person from whom this voice proceeded was the King's daughter : she had burnt the 'Efreet ; and when we looked towards him, we perceived that he had become a heap of ashes.

The lady then came to us, and said, Bring me a cup of water :—and when it was brought to her, she pronounced over it some words which we understood not, and, sprinkling me with it, said, Be restored,



by virtue of the name of the Truth, and by virtue of the most great name of God, to thy original form!—whercupon I became a man as I was at first, excepting that my eye was destroyed. After this, she cried out, The fire! the fire! O my father, I shall no longer live, for I am predestined to be killed. Had he been a human being, I had killed him at the first of the encounter. I experienced no difficulty till the scattering of the grains of the pomegranate, when I picked them up excepting the one in which was the life of the Jinnee: had I picked up that, he had instantly died; but I saw it not, as fate and destiny had appointed; and suddenly he came upon me, and a fierce contest ensued between us under the earth, and in the air, and in the water; and every time that he tried against me a new mode, I employed against him one more potent, until he tried against me the mode of fire; and rarely does one escape against whom the mode of fire is employed. Destiny, however, aided me, so that I burned him first; but I exhorted him previously to embrace the faith of El-Islâm. Now I die; and may God supply my place to you.—Having thus said, she ceased not to pray for relief from the fire; and lo, a spark ascended to her breast, and thence to her face; and when it reached her face, she wept, and exclaimed, I testify that there is no deity but God, and I testify that Mohâmmad is God's Apostle!—We then looked towards her, and saw that she had become a heap of ashes by the side of the ashes of the 'Efreet.

We were plunged into grief on her account, and I wished that I had been in her place rather than have seen that sweet-faced creature who had done me this kindness reduced to a heap of ashes: but the decree of God cannot be averted. The King, on beholding his daughter in this state, plucked out what remained of his beard, and slapped his face, and rent his clothes; and I also did the same, while we both wept for her. Then came the chamberlains and other great officers of the court, who, finding the King in a state of insensibility, with two heaps of ashes before him, were astonished, and remained encompassing him until he recovered from his fit, when he informed them of what had befallen his daughter with the 'Efreet; and great was their affliction. The women shrieked, with the female slaves, and continued their mourning seven days. After this, the King gave orders to build, over the ashes of his daughter, a great tomb with a dome, and illuminated it with candles and lamps: but the ashes of the 'Efreet they scattered in the wind, exposing them to the curse of God. The King then fell sick, and was near unto death: his illness lasted a month;

but after this he recovered his health, and, summoning me to his presence, said to me, O young man, we passed our days in the enjoyment of the utmost happiness, secure from the vicissitudes of fortune, until thou camest to us, when troubles overcame us. Would that we had never seen thee, nor thy ugly form, on account of which we have been reduced to this state of privation : for, in the first place, I have lost my daughter, who was worth a hundred men ; and, secondly, I have suffered this burning, and lost my teeth : my eunuch also is dead . but it was not in thy power to prevent these afflictions : the decree of God hath been fulfilled on us and on thee ; and praise be to God that my daughter restored thee, though she destroyed herself. Now, however, depart, O my son, from my city. It is enough that hath happened on thy account , but as it was decreed against us and thee, depart in peace.

So I departed, O my mistress, from his presence ; but before I quitted the city, I entered a public bath, and shaved my beard. I traversed various regions, and passed through great cities, and bent my course to the Abode of Peace,⁷¹ Baghdád, in the hope of obtaining an interview with the Prince of the Faithful, that I might relate to him all that had befallen me.

The third mendicant then advanced, and thus related his story —

THE STORY OF THE THIRD ROYAL MENDICANT

O ILLUSTRIOUS lady, my story is not like those of my two companions, but more wonderful — the course of fate and destiny brought upon them events against which they could not guard , but as to myself, the shaving of my beard and the loss of my eye were occasioned by my provoking fate and misfortune ; and the cause was this —

I was a King, and the son of a King ; and when my father died, I succeeded to his throne, and governed my subjects with justice and beneficence. I took pleasure in sea-voyages ; and my capital was on the shore of an extensive sea, interspersed with fortified and garrisoned islands, which I desired, for my amusement, to visit ; I therefore embarked with a fleet of ten ships, and took with me provisions sufficient for a whole month. I proceeded twenty days, after which there arose against us a contrary wind ; but at daybreak it ceased, and the sea became calm, and we arrived at an island, where we landed, and cooked some provisions and ate ; after which we remained there

two days. We then continued our voyage ; and when twenty days more had passed, we found ourselves in strange waters, unknown to the captain, and desired the watch to look out from the mast-head : so he went aloft, and when he had come down he said to the captain, I saw, on my right hand, fish floating upon the surface of the water ; and looking towards the midst of the sea, I perceived something looming in the distance, sometimes black, and sometimes white.

When the captain heard this report of the watch, he threw his turban on the deck, and plucked his beard, and said to those who were with him, Receive warning of our destruction, which will befall all of us . not one will escape ! So saying, he began to weep ; and all of us in like manner bewailed our lot. I desired him to inform us of that which the watch had seen. O my lord, he replied, know that we have wandered from our course since the commencement of the contrary wind that was followed in the morning by a calm, in consequence of which we remained stationary two days from that period we have deviated from our course for twenty-one days, and we have no wind to carry us back from the fate which awaits us after this day . to-morrow we shall arrive at a mountain of black stone, called loadstone the current is now bearing us violently towards it, and the ships will fall in pieces, and every nail in them will fly to the mountain, and adhere to it ; for God hath given to the loadstone a secret property by virtue of which everything of iron is attracted towards it. On that mountain is such a quantity of iron as no one knoweth but God, whose name be exalted ; for from times of old great numbers of ships have been destroyed by the influence of that mountain.⁷² There is, upon the summit of the mountain, a cupola of brass supported by ten columns, and upon the top of this cupola is a horseman upon a horse of brass, having in his hand a brazen spear, and upon his breast suspended a tablet of lead, upon which are engraved mysterious names and talismans : and as long, O King, as this horseman remains upon the horse, so long will every ship that approaches be destroyed, with every person on board, and all the iron contained in it will cleave to the mountain : no one will be safe until the horseman shall have fallen from the horse.—The captain then wept bitterly ; and we felt assured that our destruction was inevitable, and every one of us bade adieu to his friend.

On the following morning we drew near to the mountain ; the current carried us towards it with violence, and when the ships were almost close to it, they fell asunder, and all the nails, and every thing

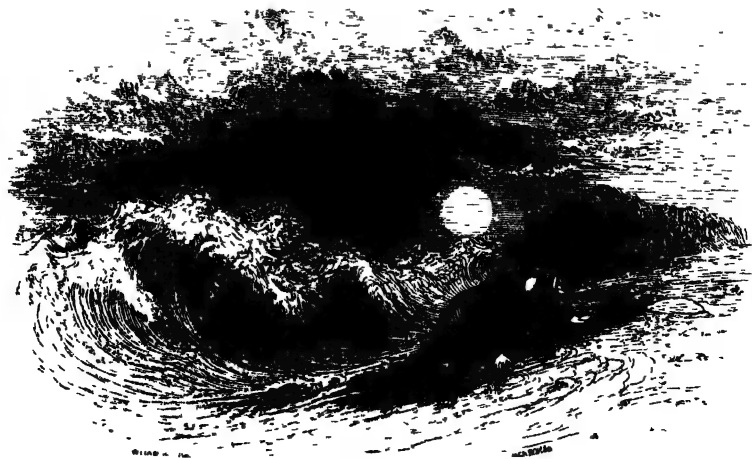


else that was of iron, flew from them towards the loadstone. It was near the close of day when the ships fell in pieces. Some of us were drowned, and some escaped; but the greater number were drowned, and of those who saved their lives none knew what became of the others, so stupefied were they by the waves and the boisterous wind. As for myself, O my mistress, God, whose name be exalted, spared me on account of the trouble and torment and affliction that He had predestined to befall me. I placed myself upon a plank, and the wind and waves cast it upon the mountain; and when I had landed, I found a practicable way to the summit, resembling steps cut in the rock: so I exclaimed, In the name of God!—and offered up a prayer, and attempted the ascent, holding fast by the notches; and presently God stilled the wind and assisted me in my endeavours, so that I arrived in safety at the summit. Rejoicing greatly in my escape, I immediately entered the cupola, and performed the prayers of two rek'ahs⁷³ in gratitude to God for my preservation; after which I slept beneath the cupola, and heard a voice saying to me, O son of Khaṣeeb,⁷⁴ when thou awakest from thy sleep, dig beneath thy feet, and thou wilt find a bow of brass, and three arrows of lead, whereon are engraved talismans: then take the bow and arrows and shoot at the horseman that is upon the top of the cupola, and relieve mankind from this great affliction; for when thou hast shot at the horseman he will fall into the sea; the bow will also fall, and do thou bury it in its place; and as soon as thou hast done this, the sea will swell and rise until it

attains the summit of the mountain ; and there will appear upon it a boat bearing a man, different from him whom thou shalt have cast down, and he will come to thee, having an oar in his hand : then do thou embark with him ; but utter not the name of God ; and he will convey thee in ten days to a safe sea, where, on thy arrival, thou wilt find one who will take thee to thy city. All this shall be done if thou utter not the name of God.

Awaking from my sleep, I sprang up, and did as the voice had directed. I shot at the horseman, and he fell into the sea ; and the bow having fallen from my hand, I buried it : the sea then became troubled, and rose to the summit of the mountain, and when I had stood waiting there a little while, I beheld a boat in the midst of the sea, approaching me. I praised God, whose name he exalted, and when the boat came to me, I found in it a man of brass, with a tablet of lead upon his breast, engraven with names and talismans. Without uttering a word, I embarked in the boat, and the man rowed me ten successive days, after which I beheld the islands of security, whereupon, in the excess of my joy, I exclaimed, In the name of God ! There is no deity but God ! God is most great !—and as soon as I had done this, he cast me out of the boat, and sank in the sea.

Being able to swim, I swam until night, when my arms and shoulders were tired, and, in this perilous situation, I repeated the



profession of the faith, and gave myself up as lost ; but the sea rose with the violence of the wind, and a wave like a vast castle threw me upon the land, in order to the accomplishment of the purpose of God. I ascended the shore, and after I had wrung out my clothes, and spread them upon the ground to dry, I slept ; and in the morning I put on my clothes again, and, looking about to see which way I should go, I found a tract covered with trees, to which I advanced ; and when I had walked round it, I found that I was upon a small island in the midst of the sea ; upon which I said within myself, Every time that I escape from one calamity I fall into another that is worse.—but while I was reflecting upon my unfortunate case, and wishing for death, I beheld a vessel bearing a number of men. I arose immediately, and climbed into a tree ; and lo, the vessel came to the shore, and there landed from it ten black slaves bearing axes. They proceeded to the middle of the island, and, digging up the earth, uncovered and lifted up a trap-door, after which they returned to the vessel, and brought from it bread and flour and clarified butter and honey and sheep and everything that the wants of an inhabitant would require, continuing to pass backwards and forwards between the vessel and the trap-door, bringing loads from the former, and entering the latter, until they had removed all the stores from the ship. They then came out of the vessel with various clothes of the most beautiful description, and in the midst of them was an old sheykh, enfeebled and wasted by extreme age, leading by the hand a young man cast in the mould of graceful symmetry, and invested with such perfect beauty as deserved to be a subject for proverbs. He was like a fresh and slender twig, enchanting and captivating every heart by his elegant form. The party proceeded to the trap-door, and, entering it, became concealed from my eyes.⁷⁵

They remained beneath about two hours, or more ; after which, the sheykh and the slaves came out ; but the youth came not with them ; and they replaced the earth, and embarked and set sail. Soon after, I descended from the tree, and went to the excavation. I removed the earth, and, entering the aperture, saw a flight of wooden steps, which I descended ; and, at the bottom, I beheld a handsome dwelling-place, furnished with a variety of silken carpets ; and there was the youth, sitting upon a high mattress, with sweet-smelling flowers and fruits placed before him. On seeing me, his countenance became pale ; but I saluted him, and said, Let thy mind be composed, O my master : thou hast nothing to fear, O delight of my eye ; for I am a man, and the son of a King, like thyself : fate hath impelled me to

thee, that I may cheer thee in thy solitude. The youth, when he heard me thus address him, and was convinced that I was one of his own species, rejoiced exceedingly at my arrival, his colour returned, and, desiring me to approach him, he said, O my brother, my story is wonderful: my father is a jeweller: he had slaves who made voyages by his orders, for the purposes of commerce, and he had dealings with Kings; but he had never been blest with a son; and he dreamt that he was soon to have a son, but one whose life would be short; and he awoke sorrowful.⁷⁶ Shortly after, in accordance with the decrees of God, my mother conceived me, and when her time was complete, she gave birth to me; and my father was greatly rejoiced: the astrologers, however, came to him, and said, Thy son will live fifteen years: his fate is intimated by the fact that there is, in the sea, a mountain called the Mountain of Loadstone, whereon is a horseman on a horse of brass, on the former of which is a tablet of lead suspended to his neck; and when the horseman shall be thrown down from his horse, thy son will be slain: the person who is to slay him is he who will throw down the horseman, and his name is King 'Ajeeb,⁷⁷ the son of King Khaseeb. My father was greatly afflicted at this announcement; and when he had reared me until I had nearly attained the age of fifteen years, the astrologers came again, and informed him that the horseman had fallen into the sea, and that it had been thrown down by King 'Ajeeb, the son of King Khaseeb; on hearing which, he prepared for me this dwelling, and here left me to remain until the completion of the term, of which there now remain ten days. All this he did from fear lest King 'Ajeeb should kill me.

When I heard this, I was filled with wonder, and said within myself, I am King 'Ajeeb, the son of King Khaseeb, and it was I who threw down the horseman; but, by Allah, I will neither kill him nor do him any injury. Then said I to the youth, Far from thee be both destruction and harm, if it be the will of God, whose name be exalted: thou hast nothing to fear: I will remain with thee to serve thee, and will go forth with thee to thy father, and beg of him to send me back to my country, for the which he will obtain a reward. The youth rejoiced at my words, and I sat and conversed with him until night, when I spread his bed for him, and covered him, and slept near to his side. And in the morning I brought him water, and he washed his face, and said to me, May God requite thee for me with every blessing. If I escape from King 'Ajeeb, I will make my father reward thee with abundant favours.—Never, I replied, may the day arrive that would

bring thee misfortune. I then placed before him some refreshments, and after we had eaten together, we passed the day conversing with the utmost cheerfulness.

I continued to serve him for nine days ; and on the tenth day the youth rejoiced at finding himself in safety, and said to me, O my brother, I wish that thou wouldst in thy kindness warm for me some water, that I may wash myself and change my clothes ; for I have smelt the odour of escape from death, in consequence of thy assistance —With pleasure, I replied ;—and I arose, and warmed the water ; after which, he entered a place concealed from my view, and, having washed himself and changed his clothes, laid himself upon the mattress to rest after his bath. He then said to me, Cut up for me, O my brother, a water-melon, and mix its juice with some sugar—so I arose, and, taking a melon, brought it upon a plate, and said to him, Knowest thou, O my master, where is the knife ?—See, here it is, he answered, upon the shelf over my head. I sprang up hastily, and



took it from its sheath, and as I was drawing back, my foot slipped, as God had decreed, and I fell upon the youth, grasping in my hand the knife, which entered his body, and he died instantly. When I perceived that he was dead, and that I had killed him, I uttered a loud shriek, and beat my face, and rent my clothes, saying, This is, indeed, a calamity! O what a calamity! O my Lord, I implore thy pardon, and declare to Thee my innocence of his death! Would that I had died before him! How long shall I devour trouble after trouble!

With these reflections I ascended the steps, and, having replaced the trap-door, returned to my first station, and looked over the sea, where I saw the vessel that had come before, approaching, and cleaving the waves in its rapid course. Upon this I said within myself, Now will the men come forth from the vessel, and find the youth slain, and they will slay me also.—so I climbed into a tree, and concealed myself among its leaves, and sat there till the vessel arrived and cast anchor, when the slaves landed with the old sheykh, the father of the youth, and went to the place, and removed the earth. They were surprised at finding it moist, and, when they had descended the steps, they discovered the youth lying on his back, exhibiting a face beaming with beauty, though dead, and clad in white and clean clothing, with the knife remaining in his body. They all wept at the sight, and the father fell down in a swoon, which lasted so long that the slaves thought he was dead. At length, however, he recovered, and came out with the slaves, who had wrapped the body of the youth in his clothes. They then took back all that was in the subterranean dwelling to the vessel, and departed.

I remained, O my mistress, by day hiding myself in a tree, and at night walking about the open part of the island. Thus I continued for the space of two months; and I perceived that, on the western side of the island, the water of the sea every day retired, until, after three months, the land that had been beneath it became dry. Rejoicing at this, and feeling confident now in my escape, I traversed this dry tract, and arrived at an expanse of sand; whereupon I emboldened myself, and crossed it. I then saw in the distance an appearance of fire, and, advancing towards it, found it to be a palace, overlaid with plates of copper, which, reflecting the rays of the sun, seemed from a distance to be fire: and when I drew near to it, reflecting upon this sight, there approached me an old sheykh, accompanied by ten young men who were all blind of one eye, at which I

was extremely surprised. As soon as they saw me, they saluted me, and asked me my story, which I related to them from first to last ; and they were filled with wonder. They then conducted me into the palace, where I saw ten benches, upon each of which was a mattress covered with a blue stuff;⁷⁸ and each of the young men seated himself upon one of these benches, while the sheykh took his place upon a smaller one ; after which they said to me, Sit down, O young man, and ask no question respecting our condition, nor respecting our being blind of one eye. Then the sheykh arose, and brought to each of them some food, and the same to me also ; and next he brought to each of us some wine : and after we had eaten, we sat drinking together until the time for sleep, when the young men said to the sheykh, Bring to us our accustomed supply.—upon which the sheykh arose, and entered a closet, from which he brought, upon his head, ten covered trays. Placing these upon the floor, he lighted ten candles, and stuck one of them upon each tray ; and, having done this, he removed the covers, and there appeared beneath them ashes mixed with pounded charcoal. The young men then tucked up their sleeves above the elbow, and blackened their faces, and slapped their cheeks,⁷⁹ exclaiming, We were reposing at our ease, and our impertinent curiosity suffered us not to remain so ! Thus they did until the morning, when the sheykh brought them some hot water, and they washed their faces, and put on other clothes.

On witnessing this conduct, my reason was confounded, my heart was so troubled that I forgot my own misfortunes, and I asked them the cause of their strange behaviour ; upon which they looked towards me, and said, O young man, ask not respecting that which doth not concern thee ; but be silent ; for in silence is security from error.—I remained with them a whole month, during which, every night they did the same ; and at length I said to them, I conjure you by Allah to remove this disquiet from my mind, and to inform me of the cause of your acting in this manner, and of your exclaiming, We were reposing at our ease, and our impertinent curiosity suffered us not to remain so !—if ye inform me not, I will leave you, and go my way ; for the proverb saith, When the eye seeth not, the heart doth not grieve.—On hearing these words, they replied, We have not concealed this affair from thee but in our concern for thy welfare, lest thou shouldst become like us, and the same affliction that hath befallen us happen also to thee. I said, however, Ye must positively inform me of this matter.—We give thee good advice, said they, and do thou

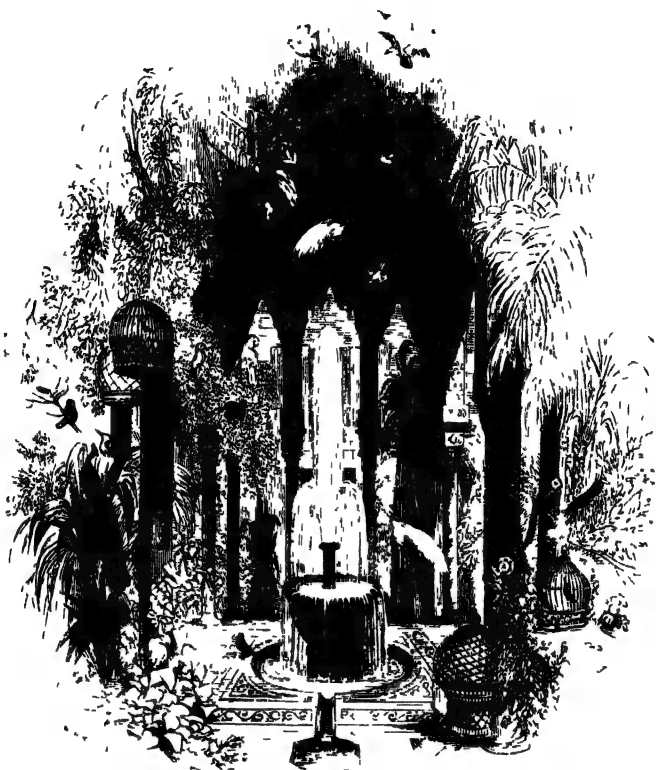
receive it, and ask us not respecting our case, otherwise thou wilt become blind of one eye, like us :—but I still persisted in my request ; whereupon they said, O young man, if this befall thee, know that thou wilt be banished from our company. They then all arose, and, taking a ram, slaughtered and skinned it, and said to me, Take this knife with thee, and introduce thyself into the skin of the ram, and we will sew thee up in it, and go away ; whereupon a bird called the rukh^{no} will come to thee, and, taking thee up by its talons, will fly away with thee, and set thee down upon a mountain : then cut open the skin with this knife, and get out, and the bird will fly away. Thou must arise, as soon as it hath gone, and journey for half a day, and thou wilt see before thee a lofty palace, encased with red gold, set with various precious stones, such as emeralds and rubies, &c ; and if thou enter it thy case will be as ours ; for our entrance into that palace was the cause of our being blind of one eye ; and if one of us would relate to thee all that hath befallen him, his story would be too long for thee to hear.

They then sewed me up in the skin, and entered their palace ; and soon after, there came an enormous white bird, which seized me, and flew away with me, and set me down upon the mountain ; whereupon I cut open the skin, and got out ; and the bird, as soon as it saw me, flew away. I rose up quickly, and proceeded towards the palace, which I found to be as they had described it to me ; and when I had entered it, I beheld, at the upper end of a saloon, forty young damsels, beautiful as so many moons, and magnificently attired, who, as soon as they saw me, exclaimed, Welcome ! Welcome ! O our master and our lord ! We have been for a month expecting thee. Praise be to God who hath blessed us with one who is worthy of us, and one of whom we are worthy !—After having thus greeted me, they seated me upon a mattress, and said, Thou art from this day our master and prince, and we are thy handmaids, and entirely under thy authority. They then brought to me some refreshments, and, when I had eaten and drunk, they sat and conversed with me, full of joy and happiness. So lovely were these ladies, that even a devotee, if he saw them, would gladly consent to be their servant, and to comply with all that they would desire. At the approach of night they all assembled around me, and placed before me a table of fresh and dried fruits, with other delicacies that the tongue cannot describe, and wine ; and one began to sing, while another played upon the lute. The wine-cups circulated among us, and joy overcame me to such a degree as to obliterate from

my mind every earthly care, and make me exclaim, This is indeed a delightful life ! I passed a night of such enjoyment as I had never before experienced ; and on the morrow I entered the bath ; and, after I had washed myself, they brought me a suit of the richest clothing, and we again sat down to a repast.

In this manner I lived with them a whole year, but on the first day of the new year, they seated themselves around me, and began to weep, and bade me farewell, clinging to my skirts.—What calamity hath befallen you ? said I. Ye have broken my heart.—They answered, Would that we had never known thee ; for we have associated with many men, but have seen none like thee. May God, therefore, not deprive us of thy company.—And they wept afresh. I said to them, I wish that you would acquaint me with the cause of this weeping.—Thou, they replied, art the cause ; yet now, if thou wilt attend to what we tell thee, we shall never be parted ; but if thou act contrary to it, we are separated from this time ; and our hearts whisper to us that thou wilt not regard our warning.—Inform me, said I, and I will attend to your directions : —and they replied, If then thou wouldst inquire respecting our history, know that we are the daughters of Kings : for many years it hath been our custom to assemble here, and every year we absent ourselves during a period of forty days ; then returning, we indulge ourselves for a year in feasting and drinking. This is our usual practice ; and now we fear that thou wilt disregard our directions when we are absent from thee. We deliver to thee the keys of the palace, which are a hundred in number, belonging to a hundred closets. Open each of these, and amuse thyself, and eat and drink, and refresh thyself, excepting the closet that hath a door of red gold ; for if thou open this, the consequence will be a separation between us and thee. We conjure thee, therefore, to observe our direction, and to be patient during this period.—Upon hearing this, I swore to them that I would never open the closet to which they alluded ; and they departed, urging me to be faithful to my promise.

I remained alone in the palace, and at the approach of evening I opened the first closet, and, entering it, found a mansion like paradise, with a garden containing green trees loaded with ripe fruits, abounding with singing birds, and watered by copious streams. My heart was soothed by the sight, and I wandered among the trees, scenting the fragrance of the flowers, and listening to the warbling of the birds as they sang the praises of the One, the Almighty.⁸¹ After admiring the mingled colours of the apple resembling the hue upon the cheek of a



beloved mistress and the sallow countenance of the perplexed and timid lover, the sweet-smelling quince diffusing an odour like musk and ambergris, and the plum shining as the ruby, I retired from this place, and, having locked the door, opened that of the next closet, within which I beheld a spacious tract planted with numerous palm-trees, and watered by a river flowing among rose-trees, and jasmine, and marjoram, and eglantine, and narcissus, and gilliflower, the odours of which, diffused in every direction by the wind, inspired me with the utmost delight. I locked again the door of the second closet, and opened that of the third. Within this I found a large saloon, paved with marbles of various colours, and with costly minerals and precious gems, and containing cages constructed of sandal and aloes-wood with singing birds within them, and others upon the branches of trees which were planted there. My heart was charmed, my trouble was dissipated, and I slept there until the morning. I then opened the door of the fourth closet, and within this door I found a great building in which

were forty closets with open doors; and, entering these, I beheld pearls, and rubies, and chrysolites, and emeralds, and other precious jewels such as the tongue cannot describe. I was astonished at the sight, and said, Such things as these, I imagine, are not found in the treasury of any King. I am now the King of my age, and all these treasures, through the goodness of God, are mine, together with forty damsels under my authority who have no man to share them with me.

Thus I continued to amuse myself, passing from one place to another, until thirty-nine days had elapsed, and I had opened the doors of all the closets excepting that which they had forbidden me to open. My heart was then disturbed by curiosity respecting this hundredth closet, and the Devil, in order to plunge me into misery, induced me to open it. I had not patience to abstain, though there remained of the appointed period only one day: so I approached the closet, and opened the door; and when I had entered, I perceived a fragrant odour, such as I had never before smelt, which intoxicated me so that I fell down insensible, and remained some time in this state but at length recovering, I fortified my heart, and proceeded. I found the floor overspread with saffron, and the place illuminated by golden lamps and by candles, which diffused the odours of musk and ambergris; and two large perfuming-vessels filled with aloes-wood and ambergris, and a perfume compounded with honey, spread fragrance through the whole place. I saw also a black horse, of the hue of the darkest night, before which was a manger of white crystal filled with cleansed sesame, and another, similar to it, containing rose-water infused with musk: he was saddled and bridled, and his saddle was of red gold. Wondering at the sight of him, I said within myself, This must be an animal of extraordinary qualities;—and, seduced by the Devil, I led him out, and mounted him; but he moved not from his place: I kicked him with my heel; but still he moved not: so I took a mikra'ah and struck him with it; and as soon as he felt the blow he uttered a sound like thunder, and, expanding a pair of wings, soared with me to an immense height through the air, and then alighted upon the roof of another palace, where he threw me from his back, and, by a violent blow with his tail upon my face, as I sat on the roof, struck out my eye, and left me.⁸²

In this state I descended from the roof, and below I found the one-eyed young men before mentioned, who, as soon as they beheld me, exclaimed, No welcome to thee!—Receive me, said I, into your company:—but they replied, By Allah, thou shalt not remain with

us :—so I departed from them, with mournful heart and weeping eye, and, God having decreed me a safe journey hither, I arrived at Baghdád, after I had shaved my beard, and become a mendicant.⁸³

CONTINUATION OF THE STORY OF THE LADIES OF BAGHDÁD, &c

The mistress of the house then looked towards the Khaleefeh and Jaafar and Mesroor, and said to them, Acquaint me with your histories :—upon which Jaafar advanced towards her, and related to her the same story that he had told to the portress before they entered ; and when she had heard it, she liberated them all. They accordingly departed, and when they had gone out into the street, the Khaleefeh inquired of the mendicants whither they were going. They answered that they knew not whither to go : whereupon he desired them to accompany his party ; and then said to Jaafar, Take them home with thee, and bring them before me to-morrow, and we will see the result. Jaafar, therefore, did as he was commanded, and the Khaleefeh returned to his palace ; but he was unable to sleep during the remainder of the night.

On the following morning he sat upon his throne, and when his courtiers had presented themselves before him, and departed, excepting Jaafar, he said to him, Bring before me the three ladies and the two bitches and the mendicants. So Jaafar arose, and brought them, and, placing the ladies behind the curtains, said to them, We have forgiven you on account of your previous kindness to us, and because ye knew us not ; and now I acquaint you that ye are in the presence of the fifth of the sons of El-'Abbás, Hároon Er-Rasheed ; therefore relate to him nothing but the truth. And when the ladies heard the words which Jaafar addressed to them on the part of the Khaleefeh, the eldest of them advanced, and thus related her story :—

THE STORY OF THE FIRST OF THE THREE LADIES OF BAGHDÁD,

O PRINCE of the Faithful, my story is wonderful ; for these two bitches⁸⁴ are my sisters, born to my father, but of another mother ; and I am the youngest of the three. After the death of our father, who left us five thousand pieces of gold, these my two sisters married, and when they had resided some time with their husbands, each of the



latter prepared a stock of merchandise, and received from his wife a thousand pieces of gold, and they all set forth on a journey together, leaving me here; but after they had been absent four years, my sisters' husbands lost all their property, and abandoned them in a strange land, and they returned to me in the garb of beggars. When I first saw them in this state, I knew them not; and, as soon as I recognised them, I exclaimed, How is it that ye are in this condition?—O our sister, they answered, thy inquiry now is of no use the Pen hath written what God hath decreed.⁴⁵—I sent them, therefore, to the bath, and, having clad them in new apparel, said to them, O my sisters, ye are my elders, and I am young; so ye shall be to me in the places of my father and mother. The inheritance which I shared with you God hath blessed; partake then of its increase, for my affairs are prosperous; and I and ye shall fare alike.—I treated them with the utmost kindness, and during a whole year they remained with me, and enriched themselves by the money that I had given them; but after this period they said to me, It will be more agreeable to us to marry again, for we can no longer abstain from doing so.—O my sisters, I replied, ye have seen no happiness in marriage: a good husband in this age is rarely found, and ye have already had experience of the marriage-state. They, however, heeded not my words; but married against my consent: yet I gave them dowries from my own property, and continued to them my protection. They went to their husbands, and the latter, after they had resided with them a short time, defrauded them of all that they possessed, and, setting

forth on a journey, left them destitute: so again they returned to me, and, in a state of nudity, implored my forgiveness, saying, Be not angry with us; for though thou art younger than we, thou hast more mature sense; and we promise thee that we will never again mention the subject of marriage. I replied, Ye are welcome, O my sisters; for I have no one dearer to me than yourselves:—and I received them, and treated them with every kindness, and we remained happily together for the space of a year.

After this I resolved to fit out a vessel for a mercantile voyage: accordingly, I stocked a large ship with various goods and necessary provisions, and said to my sisters, Will ye rather stay at home during my voyage, or will ye go with me?—to which they answered, We will accompany thee during the voyage, for we cannot endure to be separated from thee. I therefore took them with me, and we set sail; but first I divided my property into two equal portions; one of which I took with me, and the other I concealed, saying within myself, Perhaps some evil accident may happen to the ship, and our lives may be prolonged, in which case, when we return we shall find that which will be of service to us.—We continued our voyage by day and night, till at length the vessel pursued a wrong course, and the captain knew not whither to steer. The ship had entered a different sea from that which we wished to cross, and for some time we knew it not; but for ten days we had a pleasant wind, and after this, a city loomed before us in the distance. We asked the captain what was the name of this city; and he answered, I know it not; I have never seen it till this day, nor have I ever before in the course of my life navigated this sea: but as we have come hither in safety, ye have nothing to do but to enter this city and land your goods, and, if ye find opportunity, sell or exchange there: if not, we will rest there two days, and take in fresh provisions. So we entered the port of the city, and the captain landed, and after a while returned to us, saying, Arise, and go up into the city, and wonder at that which God hath done unto his creatures, and pray to be preserved from his anger. And when we had entered the city, we found all its inhabitants converted into black stones. We were amazed at the sight, and as we walked through the market-streets, finding the merchandise and the gold and silver remaining in their original state, we rejoiced, and said, This must have been occasioned by some wonderful circumstance. We then separated in the streets, each of us attracted from his companions by the wealth and stuffs in the shops.

As for myself, I ascended to the citadel, which I found to be a building of admirable construction ; and, entering the King's palace, I found all the vessels of gold and silver remaining in their places, and the King himself seated in the midst of his Chamberlains and Viceroys and Wezeers, and clad in apparel of astonishing richness. Drawing nearer to him, I perceived that he was sitting upon a throne adorned with pearls and jewels, every one of the pearls shining like a star : his dress was embroidered with gold, and around him stood fifty memlooks, attired in silks of various descriptions, and having in their hands drawn swords. Stupefied at this spectacle, I proceeded, and entered the saloon of the Hareem, upon the walls of which were hung silken curtains ; and here I beheld the Queen, attired in a dress embroidered with fresh pearls, and having upon her head a diadem adorned with various jewels, and necklaces of different kinds on her neck. All her clothing and ornaments remained as they were at first, though she herself was converted into black stone. Here also I found an open door, and, entering it, I saw a flight of seven steps, by which I ascended to an apartment paved with marble, furnished with gold-embroidered carpets, and containing a couch of alabaster, ornamented with pearls and jewels ; but my eyes were first attracted by a gleam of light, and when I approached the spot whence it proceeded, I found a brilliant jewel, of the size of an ostrich's egg, placed upon a small stool, diffusing a light like that of a candle. The coverings of the couch above mentioned were of various kinds of silk, the richness of which would surprise every beholder ; and I looked at them with wonder. In this apartment I likewise observed some lighted candles, and reflected that there must then have been some person there to light them. I passed thence to another part of the palace, and continued to explore the different apartments, forgetting myself in the amazement of my mind at all these strange circumstances, and immersed in thoughts respecting what I beheld, until the commencement of night, when I would have departed ; but could not find the door : so I returned to the place in which were the lighted candles, and there I laid myself upon the couch, and, covering myself with a quilt, repeated some words of the *Kur-án*, and endeavoured to compose myself to sleep ; but I could not. I continued restless : and at midnight I heard a recitation of the *Kur-án*, performed by a melodious and soft voice ; upon which I arose, and, looking about, saw a closet with an open door, and I entered it, and found that it was an oratory : lighted lamps were suspended in it, and upon a prayer-carpet spread on the floor sat a



young man of handsome aspect. Wondering that he had escaped the fate of the other inhabitants of the city, I saluted him ; and he raised his eyes, and returned my salutation . and I then said to him, I conjure thee by the truth of that which thou art reading in the Book of God, that thou answer the question which I am about to ask thee :—whereupon he smiled, and replied, Do thou first acquaint me with the cause of thine entrance into this place, and then I will answer thy question : so I told him my story, and inquired of him the history of this city. Wait a little, said he ;—and he closed the *Kur-án*, and, having put it in a bag of satin, seated me by his side. As I now beheld him, his countenance appeared like the full moon, and his whole person exhibited such perfect elegance and loveliness, that a single glance at him drew from me a thousand sighs, and kindled a fire in my heart. I repeated my request that he would give me an account of the city ; and, replying, I hear and obey, he thus addressed me :—

Know that this city belonged to my father and his family and subjects, and he is the King whom thou hast seen converted into

stone ; and the Queen whom thou hast seen is my mother. They were all Magians, worshipping fire in the place of the Almighty King ;⁸⁷ and they swore by the fire and the light, and the shade and the heat, and the revolving orb. My father had no son, till, in his declining years, he was blest with me, whom he reared until I attained to manhood. But, happily for me, there was, in our family, an old woman, far advanced in age, who was a Muslimeh, believing in God and his Apostle in her heart, though she conformed with my family in outward observances ; and my father confided in her, on account of the faithfulness and modesty that he had observed in her character, and shewed her great favour, firmly believing that she held the same faith as himself ; therefore, when I had passed my infancy, he committed me to her care, saying, Take him, and rear him, and instruct him in the ordinances of our faith, and educate him and serve him in the best manner. The old woman accordingly received me, but took care to instruct me in the faith of El-Islám, teaching me the laws of purification, and the divine ordinances of ablution, together with the forms of prayer ; after which she made me commit to memory the whole of the Kur-án. She then charged me to keep my faith a secret from my father, lest he should kill me ; and I did so ; and a few days after, the old woman died. The inhabitants of the city had now increased in their impiety and arrogance, and in their dereliction of the truth ; and while they were in this state, they heard a crier proclaim with a voice like thunder, so as to be audible to both the near and the distant, O inhabitants of this city, abstain from the worship of fire, and worship the Almighty King !—The people were struck with consternation, and, flocking to my father, the King of the city, said to him, What is this alarming voice which hath astounded us by its terrible sound ?—but he answered them, Let not the voice terrify you, nor let it turn you from your faith :—and their hearts inclined to his words ; so they persevered in the worship of fire, and remained obstinate in their impiety during another year, until the return of the period at which they had heard the voice the first time. It was then heard a second time ; and again, in the next year, they heard it a third time ; but still they persisted in their evil ways, until, drawing down upon themselves the abhorrence and indignation of Heaven, one morning, shortly after daybreak, they were converted into black stones, together with their beasts and all their cattle. Not one of the inhabitants of the city escaped, excepting me ; and from the day on which this catastrophe happened, I have continued occupied as thou seest, in prayer, and

fasting, and reading the Kur-án : but I have become weary of this solitary state, having no one to cheer me with his company.

On hearing these words, I said to him, Wilt thou go with me to the city of Baghdád, and visit its learned men and lawyers, and increase thy knowledge? If so, I will be thy handmaid, though I am the mistress of my family, and have authority over a household of men. I have here a ship laden with merchandise, and destiny hath driven us to this city, in order that we might become acquainted with these events : our meeting was predestined.—In this manner I continued to persuade him until he gave his consent. I slept that night at his feet, unconscious of my state through excessive joy, and in the morning we rose, and, entering the treasures, took away a quantity of the lighter and most valuable of the articles that they contained, and descended from the citadel into the city, where we met the slaves and the captain, who were searching for me. They were rejoiced at seeing me, and, to their questions respecting my absence, I replied by informing them of all that I had seen, and related to them the history of the young man, and the cause of the transmutation of the people of the city, and of all that had befallen them, which filled them with wonder. But when my two sisters saw me with the young man, they envied me on his account, and malevolently plotted against me.

We embarked again, and I experienced the utmost happiness, chiefly owing to the company of the young man ; and after we had waited a while till the wind was favourable, we spread our sails, and departed. My sisters sat with me and the young man ; and, in their conversation with me, said, O our sister, what dost thou purpose to do with this handsome youth ? I answered, I desire to take him as my husband :—and, turning to him, and approaching him, I said, O my master, I wish to make a proposal to thee, and do not thou oppose it. He replied, I hear and obey.—and I then looked towards my sisters, and said to them, This young man is all that I desire, and all the wealth that is here is yours.—Excellent, they replied, is thy determination :—yet still they designed evil against me.—We continued our voyage with a favourable wind, and, quitting the sea of peril, entered the sea of security, across which we proceeded for some days, until we drew near to the city of El-Başrah, the buildings of which loomed before us at the approach of evening ; but as soon as we had fallen asleep, my sisters took us up in our bed, both myself and the young man, and threw us into the sea. The youth, being unable to swim, was drowned : God recorded him among the company of the



martyrs ;⁸⁸ while I was registered among those whose life was yet to be preserved , and, accordingly, as soon as I awoke and found myself in the sea, the providence of God supplied me with a piece of timber, upon which I placed myself, and the waves cast me upon the shore of an island.

During the remainder of the night I walked along this island, and in the morning I saw a neck of land, bearing the marks of a man's feet, and uniting with the main land. The sun having now risen, I dried my clothes in its rays, and proceeded along the path that I had discovered until I drew near to the shore upon which stands the city, when I beheld a snake approaching me, and followed by a serpent which was endeavouring to destroy it . the tongue of the snake was

hanging from its mouth in consequence of excessive fatigue, and it excited my compassion ; so I took up a stone, and threw it at the head of the serpent, which instantly died . the snake then extended a pair of wings, and soared aloft into the sky, leaving me in wonder at the sight. At the time of this occurrence I had become so fatigued, that I now laid myself down and slept ; but I awoke after a little while, and found a damsel seated at my feet, and gently rubbing them with her hands ; upon which I immediately sat up, feeling ashamed that she should perform this service for me, and said to her, Who art thou, and what dost thou want ?—How soon has thou forgotten me ! she exclaimed : I am she to whom thou hast just done a kindness, by killing my enemy . I am the snake whom thou savedst from the serpent ; for I am a Jinneeyeh, and the serpent was a Jinnee at enmity with me ; and none but thou delivered me from him : therefore, as soon as thou didst this, I flew to the ship from which thy sisters cast thee, and transported all that it contained to thy house : I then sunk it ; but as to thy sisters, I transformed them by enchantment into two black bitches ; for I knew all that they had done to thee . the young man, however, is drowned.—Having thus said, she took me up, and placed me with the two black bitches on the roof of my house . and I found all the treasures that the ship had contained collected in the midst of my house : nothing was lost. She then said to me, I swear by that which was engraved upon the seal of Suleymán, that, if thou do not inflict three hundred lashes upon each of these bitches every day, I will come and transform thee in the like manner.—so I replied, I hear and obey :—and have continued ever since to inflict upon them these stripes, though pitying them while I do so.

The Khaleefeh heard this story with astonishment, and then said to the second lady, And what occasioned the stripes of which thou bearest the marks ? She answered as follows .—

THE STORY OF THE SECOND OF THE THREE LADIES OF BAGHDÁD.

O PRINCE of the Faithful, my father, at his death, left considerable property ; and soon after that event I married to one of the wealthiest men of the age, who, when I had lived with him a year, died, and I

inherited from him eighty thousand pieces of gold, the portion that fell to me according to the law ;⁸⁰ with part of which I made for myself ten suits of clothing, each of the value of a thousand pieces of gold. And as I was sitting one day, there entered my apartment an old woman, disgustingly ugly, who saluted me, and said, I have an orphan daughter whose marriage I am to celebrate this night, and I would have thee obtain a reward and recompense in heaven by thy being present at her nuptial festivity ; for she is broken-hearted, having none to befriend her but God, whose name be exalted. She then wept, and kissed my feet ; and, being moved with pity and compassion, I assented, upon which she desired me to prepare myself, telling me that she would come at the hour of nightfall and take me ; and so saying, she kissed my hand, and departed.

I arose immediately, and attired myself, and when I had completed my preparations, the old woman returned, saying, O my mistress, the ladies of the city have arrived, and I have informed them of thy coming, and they are waiting with joy to receive thee :—so I put on my outer garments, and, taking my female slaves with me, proceeded until we arrived at a street in which a soft wind was delightfully playing, where we saw a gateway over-arched with a marble vault, admirably constructed, forming the entrance to a palace which rose from the earth to the clouds.⁸⁰ On our arrival there, the old woman knocked at the door, and, when it was opened, we entered a carpeted passage, illuminated by lamps and candles, and decorated with jewels and precious metals.⁸¹ Through this passage we passed into a saloon of unequalled magnificence, furnished with mattresses covered with silk, lighted by hanging lamps and by candles, and having, at its upper end, a couch of alabaster decorated with pearls and jewels, and canopied by curtains of satin, from which there came forth a lady beautiful as the moon, who exclaimed to me, Most welcome art thou, O my sister : thou delightest me by thy company, and refreshest my heart. She then sat down again, and said to me, O my sister, I have a brother who hath seen thee at a festivity : he is a young man, more handsome than myself, and, his heart being violently inflamed with love of thee, he hath bribed this old woman to go to thee, and to employ this artifice in order to obtain for me an interview with thee. He desireth to marry thee according to the ordinance of God and his Apostle, and in that which is lawful there is no disgrace.—When I heard these words, and saw myself thus confined in the house so that I could not escape, I replied, I hear and obey :—and the lady, re-

joining at my consent, clapped her hands, and opened a door, upon which there came out from it a young man so surpassingly handsome, that my heart immediately inclined to him. No sooner had he sat down than the Kāḍee and four witnesses entered, and saluted us, and proceeded to perform the ceremony of the marriage-contract⁹² between me and the young man; which having done, they departed; and when they had retired, the young man looked towards me, and said, May our night be blessed. He then informed me that he desired to impose a covenant upon me, and, bringing a copy of the Kur-án, said, Swear that thou wilt not indulge a preference, nor at all incline, to any man but me:—and when I had sworn to this effect, he rejoiced exceedingly, and embraced me; and the love of him took entire possession of my heart.

We lived together in the utmost happiness for the space of a month, after which I begged that he would allow me to go to the bázár, in order to purchase some stuffs for dress, and, having obtained his permission, went thither in company with the old woman, and seated myself at the shop of a young merchant with whom she was acquainted, and whose father, as she informed me, had died and left him great wealth. She desired him to shew me his most costly stuffs; and while he was occupied in doing so, she began to utter various flattering expressions in praise of him; but I said to her, We have no concern with the praises that thou bestowest upon him; we desire only to make our purchase, and to return home. Meanwhile he produced to us what we wanted, and we handed him the money: he refused, however, to take it, saying, It is an offering of hospitality to you for your visit this day.—whereupon I said to the old woman, If he will not take the money, return to him his stuff. But he would not receive it again, and exclaimed, By Allah, I will take nothing from you: all this is a present from me for a single kiss, which I shall value more than the entire contents of my shop.—What will a kiss profit thee? asked the old woman. Then, turning to me, she said, O my daughter, thou hast heard what the youth hath said: no harm will befall thee if he give thee a kiss, and thou shalt take what thou wantest.—Dost thou not know, said I, that I have taken an oath? She answered, Let him kiss thee then without thy speaking, and so it will be of no consequence to thee, and thou shalt take back thy money. Thus she continued to palliate the matter until I put my head (as it were) into the bag, and consented: so I covered my eyes, and held the edge of my veil in such a manner as to prevent the pas-



sengers from seeing me, whereupon he put his mouth to my cheek beneath the veil, but instead of merely kissing me, he lacerated my cheek by a violent bite. I fell into a swoon from the pain, and the old woman laid me on her lap till I recovered, when I found the shop closed, and the old woman uttering expressions of grief, and saying, What God hath averted would have been a greater calamity; let us return home, and do thou feign to be ill, and I will come to thee and apply a remedy that shall cure the wound, and thou wilt quickly be restored.

After remaining there some time longer, I rose, and, in a state of great uneasiness and fear, returned to the house, and professed myself ill; upon which my husband came in to me, and said, What hath

befallen thee, O my mistress, during this excursion? I answered, I am not well.—And what is this wound, said he, that is upon thy cheek, and in the soft part? I answered, When I asked thy permission, and went out to-day to purchase some stuff for dress, a camel loaded with firewood drove against me in the crowd, and tore my veil, and wounded my cheek as thou seest, for the streets of this city are narrow.⁹³—To-morrow, then, he exclaimed, I will go to the governor, and make a complaint to him, and he shall hang every seller of firewood in the city.—By Allah, said I, burden not thyself by an injury to any one; for the truth is, that I was riding upon an ass, which took fright with me, and I fell upon the ground, and a stick lacerated my cheek.—If it be so, then, he replied, I will go to-morrow to Jaafar El-Barmekke, and relate the matter to him, and he shall kill every ass-driver in this city—Wilt thou, said I, kill all those men on my account, when this which befell me was decreed by God?—Undoubtedly, he answered; and, so saying, he seized me violently, and then sprang up, and uttered a loud cry, upon which the door opened, and there came forth from it seven black slaves, who dragged me from my bed, and threw me down in the middle of the apartment; whereupon he ordered one of them to hold me by my shoulders and to sit upon my head; and another, to sit upon my knees and to hold my feet. A third then came, with a sword in his hand, and said, O my lord, shall I strike her with the sword, and cleave her in twain, that each of these may take a half and throw it into the Tigris for the fish to devour?⁹⁴ For such is the punishment of her who is unfaithful to her oath and to the laws of love.—My husband answered, Strike her, O Saad ⁹⁵—and the slave, with the drawn sword in his hand, said, Repeat the profession of the faith, and reflect what thou wouldst have to be done, that thou mayest give thy testamentary directions, for this is the end of thy life.—Good slave, I replied, release me for a while that I may do so—and I raised my head, and, weeping as I spoke, addressed my husband with these verses.—

You render me lovelorn, and remain at ease. You make my wounded eyelid to be restless, and you sleep.

Your abode is between my heart and my eyes, and my heart will not relinquish you, nor my tears conceal my passion.

You made a covenant with me that you would remain faithful; but when you had gained possession of my heart you deceived me.

Will you not pity my love for you and my moaning? Have you yourself been secure from misfortunes?

I conjure you, by Allah, if I die, that you write upon my tombstone, This was a slave of love.

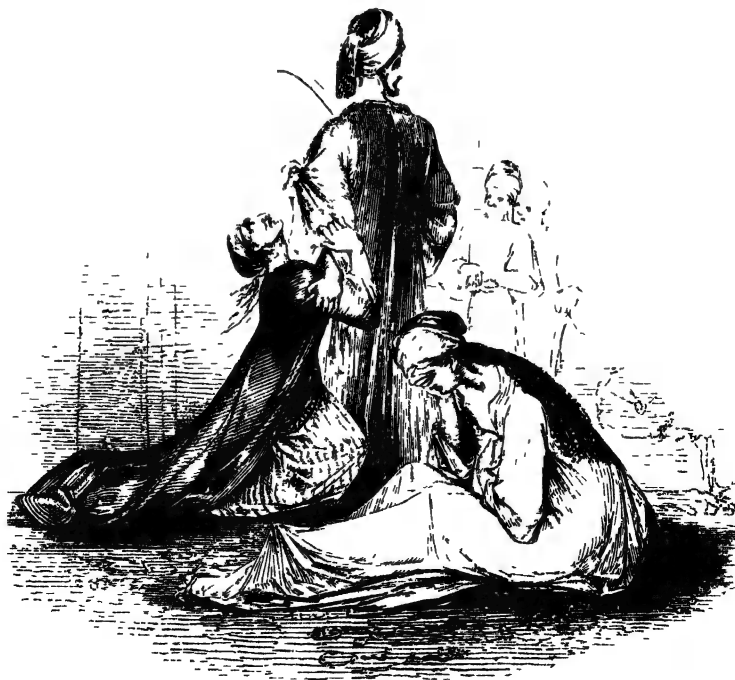
That, perchance, some mourner who hath felt the same flame may pass by the lover's grave, and pity her ⁶⁶

But on hearing these verses, and witnessing my weeping, he became more incensed, and replied in the words of this couplet.—

I reject not the beloved of my heart from weariness her own guilty conduct is the cause of her punishment

She desired that another should share with me her love, but the faith of my heart inclineth not to partnership ⁶⁷

I continued to weep, and to endeavour to excite his compassion, saying within myself, I will humble me before him, and address him with soft words, that he may at least refrain from killing me, though he take all that I possess;—but he cried out to the slave, Cleave her in twain; for she is no longer of any value to us.—So the slave approached me, and I now felt assured of my death, and committed myself to God; but suddenly the old woman came and threw herself at my husband's feet, and, kissing them, exclaimed, O my son, by the



care with which I nursed thee, I conjure thee to pardon this damsel, for she hath committed no offence that deserveth such a punishment : thou art young, and I fear the effect of the imprecations that she may utter against thee :—and after she had thus addressed him, she wept, and continued to importune him, until, at length, he said, I pardon her, but must cause her to bear upon her person such marks of her offence as shall last for the remainder of her life. So saying, he commanded the slaves to strip off my vest, and, taking a stick cut from a quince-tree, he beat me upon my back and my sides until I became insensible from the violence of the blows, and despaired of my life. He then ordered the slaves to take me away as soon as it was night, accompanied by the old woman, and to throw me into my house in which I formerly resided. They accordingly executed their lord's commands, and when they had deposited me in my house, I applied myself to the healing of my wounds ; but, after I had cured myself, my sides still bore the appearance of having been beaten with mikra'ahs. I continued to apply remedies for four months before I was restored, and then repaired to view the house in which this event had happened ; but I found it reduced to ruin, and the whole street pulled down ; the site of the house I found occupied by mounds of rubbish, and I knew not the cause.

Under these circumstances, I went to reside with this my sister, who is of the same father as myself, and I found with her these two bitches. Having saluted her, I informed her of all that had befallen me ; to which she replied, Who is secure from the afflictions of fortune ? Praise be to God who terminated the affair with safety to thy life !—She then related to me her own story, and that of her two sisters, and I remained with her, and neither of us ever mentioned the subject of marriage. Afterwards we were joined by this our other sister, the cateress, who every day goes out to purchase for us whatever we happen to want.

CONCLUSION OF THE STORY OF THE LADIES OF BAGHDÁD, &c

The Kaleefeh was astonished at this story, and ordered it to be recorded in a book, as an authentic history, and deposited the book in his library. And he said to the first lady, Knowest thou where the Jinneeyeh^{ss} who enchanted thy sisters is to be found ? She answered, O Prince of the Faithful, she gave me a lock of her hair, and said, When thou desirest my presence, burn a few of these hairs, and I will

be with thee quickly, though I should be beyond Mount Káf.—Bring then the hair, said the Khaleefeh. The lady, therefore, produced it; and the Khaleefeh, taking it, burned a portion of it, and, when the odour had diffused itself, the palace shook, and they heard a sound of thunder, and lo, the Jinneeyeh appeared before them. She was a Muslimeh, and therefore greeted the Khaleefeh by saying, Peace be on thee, O Khaleefeh of God!—to which he replied, On you be peace, and the mercy of God, and his blessings!⁹⁹—She then said, Know that this lady hath conferred on me a benefit for which I am unable to requite her; for she rescued me from death, by killing my enemy; and I, having seen what her sisters had done to her, determined to take vengeance upon them; therefore I transformed them by enchantment into two bitches, and, indeed, I had wished rather to kill them, fearing lest they should trouble her; but now, if thou desire their restoration, O Prince of the Faithful, I will restore them, as a favour to thee and to her, for I am one of the true believers.—Do so, said the Khaleefeh; and then we will enter upon the consideration of the affair of the lady who hath been beaten, and examine her case, and if her veracity be established, I will take vengeance for her upon him who hath oppressed her. The Jinneeyeh replied, O Prince of the Faithful, I will guide thee to the discovery of him who acted thus to this lady, and oppressed her, and took her property. he is thy nearest relation. She then took a cup of water, and, having pronounced a spell over it, sprinkled the faces of the two bitches, saying, Be restored to your original human forms!—whereupon they became again two young ladies.—Extolled be the perfection of their Creator!¹⁰⁰ Having done this, the Jinneeyeh said, O Prince of the Faithful, he who beat the lady is thy son El-Emeen, who had heard of her beauty and loveliness.—and she proceeded to relate what had happened. The Khaleefeh was astonished, and exclaimed, Praise be to God for the restoration of these two bitches which hath been effected through my means!—and immediately he summoned before him his son El-Emeen, and inquired of him the history of the lady; and he related to him the truth. He then sent for Kádces and witnesses, and the first lady and her two sisters who had been transformed into bitches he married to the three mendicants who had related that they were the sons of Kings; and these he made chamberlains of his court, appointing them all that they required, and allotting them apartments in the palace of Baghdád. The lady who had been beaten he restored to his son El-Emeen, giving her a large property, and ordering that the house should be

rebuilt in a more handsome style. Lastly, the lady-cateress he took as his own wife ; he admitted her at once to his own apartment, and, on the following day, he appointed her a separate lodging for herself, with female slaves to wait upon her : he also allotted to her a regular income ; and afterwards built for her a palace.





NOTES TO CHAPTER THIRD

NOTE 1 — *On the Uses of Palm-sticks in various Manufactures* The kind of crate here mentioned is made of jereeds, or palm-sticks, which (being very soft, and easily cut and punched, in their fresh state, and very tough, difficult to break, and light, when dry.) are used in a great variety of manufactures. In making crates or baskets, and stools, bed-frames, coops, &c., a number of jereeds, being placed an inch or more apart, are fixed by two, three, or more, thicker ones, placed transversely. Round holes are punched in the latter, through which the former are inserted; and the whole becomes light and strong as soon as it is dry. Chests are made with thick jereeds placed close together, and others, pared thin, passing transversely through them.

NOTE 2 — *Description of the Veils of Arab Women.* The modern *izâr* or *cezar* (for the word is written in two different ways), of Arab women, is a piece of drapery commonly worn by them when they appear in public. It is about two yards or more in width (according to the height of the wearer), and three yards in length, one edge of it being drawn from behind, over the upper part of the head and the forehead, and secured by a band sewed inside, the rest hangs down behind and on each side to the ground, or nearly so, and almost entirely envelops the person, the two ends being held so as nearly to meet in front. Thus it conceals every other part of the dress excepting a small portion of a very loose gown (which is another of the articles of walking or riding apparel), and the face-veil. It is now generally made of white calico, but a similar covering of black silk for the married, and of white silk for the unmarried, is now worn by females of the higher and middle classes, and is called a "*habarah*."

It appears that the kind of face-veil mentioned in the same passage (in Arabic, "*kinâa*,") is a piece of muslin, about a yard or more in length, and somewhat less in width, a portion of which is placed over the head, beneath the *izâr*, the rest hanging down in front, to the waist, or thereabout, and entirely concealing the face. I have often seen Arab women, particularly those of the *Wahhâbees*, wearing veils of this kind composed of printed muslin, completely concealing their features, yet of sufficiently loose fabric to admit of their seeing their way. But the more common kind of Arab face-veil is a long strip of white muslin, or of a kind of black crape, covering the whole of the face excepting the eyes, and reaching nearly to the feet. It is suspended at the top by a narrow band, which passes up the forehead, and which is sewed, as are also the two upper corners of the veil, to a band that is tied round the head. This veil is called "*burko*." The black kind is often ornamented with gold coins, false pearls, &c., attached to the upper part. It is not so genteel as the white veil, unless for a lady in mourning.

NOTE 3. "El-Môsil" is the name of the city which Europeans commonly call "Mosul," "Mosoul," &c.; a city long famous for its fine stuffs. Hence our word "muslin," often termed, in Arabic, "Môšilee," signifying, "of the manufacture of El-Môsil"

NOTE 4 The wine is mentioned in the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred nights, but not in the edition of Cairo. The lady went to a Christian to purchase her wine because Muslims are not allowed to sell it.

NOTE 5 The "Othmánée quinces" I suppose to be a kind so called after some person named 'Othmán who introduced it, or was famous for its culture. The term "Sultánée," applied to the citrons afterwards mentioned, signifies "imperial."

NOTE 6 A list of these sweets is given in my original, but I have thought it better to omit the names

NOTE 7 The "willow-flower-water" is prepared from the sweet-scented flowers of the Oriental willow, called "bán" and "khláf" or "khaláf," a twig of which is, among the Arabs, a favourite emblem of a graceful female

NOTE 8.—*On the Vessels used for Sprinkling and Perfuming* The sprinkling-bottle, here called "mirashsh," is more commonly called "kumkum," and has been alluded to in a former note, as having a spherical or wide body, and a long and narrow neck. It is generally about eight inches high, and of plain or gilt silver, or of fine brass, or china, or glass, and has a cover pierced with a small hole. This vessel is used in the houses of the rich to sprinkle a guest or visiter, before he rises to take his leave, with rose-water, after which ceremony, a page or servant presents to him a kind of censer, called "mibkharah," which is generally of one or other of the metals above mentioned, and about the same height as the kumkum, and he wafts the smoke which rises from it towards his face, beard, &c, with the right hand. The body of the mibkharah, the form of which is nearly globular, surmounts a stem rising from the centre of a small circular tray, the upper half is a cover pierced with apertures for the escape of the smoke, and the lower half, in which some burning charcoal is placed, is lined, or half filled, with gypsum-plaster. Aloe-wood, previously moistened, or some other odoriferous substance, is placed upon the burning coals, and sometimes, in the houses of very wealthy persons, ambergris is used

NOTE 9. This description of the outer door of a house in Baghdád is an obvious absurdity, but none of the copies of the original to which I have access authorizes my substituting "gilt" for "plated with gold," all here agreeing in the use of words which have the latter sense

NOTE 10 In their eagerness to obtain the earliest possible sight of the new moon which marks the period of the commencement of the Ramadán, lest they should not begin their fast as soon as the law requires, the Muslims often see the crescent one night earlier in this than in any other month. The comparison of an eyebrow to the new moon of Ramadán expresses, therefore, its extreme thinness, as well as its arched form. To reduce its natural thickness, and to give it this form, scissors are often used.

NOTE 11 "The seal of Suleymán" is a name given by the Arabs to a six-pointed star formed by two equilateral triangles intersecting each other, and to the flower which we, also, call "Solomon's seal." I fear that the reader will not consider the comparison very apposite, unless the allusion be to a beautiful red berry which, I am informed, is borne by the flower here mentioned.

NOTE 12.—*Description of Apartments in Arab Houses* Most of the descriptions of interior domestic architecture which occur in the present work, I may aptly illustrate by availing myself of observations made in Cairo. In the houses of persons of the higher and middle classes in this city, the different apartments generally resemble each other in several respects, and are similarly furnished. The greater portion of the floor

is elevated about half a foot, or somewhat more, above the rest. The higher portion is called "leewán" (a corruption of "el-eewán"), and the lower, "durká'ah," from the Persian "dar-gáh." When there is but one leewán, the durká'ah occupies the lower end, extending from the door to the opposite wall. In a handsome house, it is usually paved with white and black marble, and little pieces of red tile, inlaid in tasteful and complicated patterns, and if the room is on the ground-floor, and sometimes in other cases, it has, in the centre, a fountain which plays into a small, shallow pool, lined with coloured marbles, &c, like the surrounding pavement. The shoes, or slippers, are left upon the durká'ah previously to stepping upon the leewán. The latter is generally paved with common stone, and covered with a mat in summer, and a carpet over this in winter; and a mattress and cushions are placed against each of its three walls, composing what is called a "deewán," or divan. The mattress, which is commonly about three feet wide, and three or four inches thick, is placed either on the floor or on a raised frame or a slightly-elevated pavement, and the cushions, which are usually of a length equal to the width of the mattress, and of a height equal to half that measure, lean against the wall. Both mattresses and cushions are stuffed with cotton, and are covered with printed calico, cloth, or some more expensive stuff. The deewán which extends along the upper end of the leewán is called the "sadr," and is the most honourable, and the chief place on this seat is the corner which is to the right of a person facing this end of the room, the other corner is the next in point of honour, and the intermediate places on the same deewán are more honourable than those on the two side-deewáns. To a superior, and often to an equal, the master or mistress yields the chief place. The corners are often furnished with an additional mattress, of a square form, just large enough for one person, placed upon the other mattress, and with two additional (but smaller) cushions to recline against. The walls are, for the most part, plastered and white-washed, and generally have two or more shallow cupboards, the doors of which, as well as those of the apartments, are fancifully constructed with small panels. The windows, which are chiefly composed of curious wooden lattice-work, serving to screen the inhabitants from the view of persons without, as also to admit both light and air, commonly project outwards, and are furnished with mattresses and cushions. In many houses there are, above these, small windows of coloured glass, representing bunches of flowers, &c. The ceiling is of wood, and certain portions of it, which are carved, or otherwise ornamented by fanciful carpentry, are usually painted with bright colours, such as red, green, and blue, and sometimes varied with gilding, but the greater part of the wood-work is generally left unpainted.

The word in the original text which I translate "saloon," is "ká'ah." This term is applied to a large and lofty apartment, commonly having two leewáns, on opposite sides of the durká'ah. One of these is, in most instances, larger than the other, and is held to be the more honourable part. Some ká'ahs, containing three leewáns, one of these being opposite the entrance, or four leewáns composing the form of a cross with the durká'ah in the centre, communicate with small chambers or closets, or have elevated recesses which are furnished in the same manner as the leewáns. That part of the roof which is over the durká'ah rises above the rest, sometimes to nearly twice the height of the latter, and is generally surmounted by a lantern of wooden lattice-work to admit the air.

NOTE 13 In the Cairo edition, the couch is described as being in the *mißt* of the saloon, but this is inconsistent with what follows.

NOTE 14 — *Of Bábil, and the Angels Hároot and Mároot.* Bábil, or Babel, is regarded by the Muslims as the fountain-head of the science of magic, which was, and, as most think, still is, taught there to mankind by two fallen angels, named Hároot and Mároot,¹ who are there suspended by the feet in a great pit closed by a mass of rock

¹ See Kur-án, ch. 11 v. 96

According to the account of them generally received as correct, these two angels, in consequence of their want of compassion for the frailties of mankind, were rendered, by God, susceptible of human passions, and sent down upon the earth to be tempted: they both sinned, and, being permitted to choose whether they would be punished in this life or in the other, chose the former, but they were sent down not merely to *experience* temptation, being also appointed to tempt others by means of their knowledge of magic, though it appears that they were commanded not to teach this art to any man "until they had said, Verily we are a temptation, therefore, be not an unbeliever" ² —The celebrated traditionist Mujáhid is related to have visited them, under the guidance of a Jew. Having removed the mass of rock from the mouth of the pit, or well, they entered. Mujáhid had been previously charged by the Jew not to mention the name of God in their presence, but when he beheld them, resembling in size two huge mountains, and suspended upside-down, with irons attached to their necks and knees, he could not refrain from uttering the forbidden name, whereupon the two angels became so violently agitated that they almost broke the irons which confined them, and Mujáhid and his guide fled back in consternation ³.

NOTE 15 The meaning conveyed by this comparison is "tall and slender."

NOTE 16 In the MS. from which the old translation was made, it appears that this lady is called Zubeydeh (which was the name of the daughter of Jaafar the son of El-Man-soor, and wife of Er-Rasheed), the portress, Sátych, and the cateress, Ámineh; but no names are given to them in any of the copies of the original to which I have access.

NOTE 17 Literally, "two nusfs" "Nusf," vulgarly pronounced by the Egyptians "nuss," and signifying "half," is the name of a small Egyptian coin made of a mixture of silver and copper, and now equivalent to something less than a quarter of a farthing, but this name was originally given to the half-dirhems which were struck in the reign of the Sultán El-Mu-eyyad, in the early part of the ninth century of the Flight, or of the fifteenth of our era. In the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred nights, and in the edition of Breslau, we read here "two dirhems," instead of "two nusfs." [The coin here mentioned still bears the name "Mu-eyyadee," or, vulgarly, "Meiyadee." In the latest coinage, copper has been substituted for the mixed metal. Ed.]

NOTE 18 The "menáreh" is the tower of a mosque, commonly called by English writers "minaret," which generally rises from a square base.

NOTE 19 It is a common custom in the East to seal the doors of store-houses with a lump of clay, lest the lock should be picked.

NOTE 20 I here deviate a little from the Cairo edition, in which the cateress is described as having drunk three cups of wine successively before she handed any to her sisters. My reason for this will presently be seen.

NOTE 21 Thus in two editions. In the Cairo edition, "tukellimuhu" is put for "telkumulu."

NOTE 22. *On Wine, Fruits, Flowers, and Music, in Illustration of Arab Carousals.* I here pass over an extremely objectionable scene, which, it is to be hoped, would convey a very erroneous idea of the manners of Arab ladies: though I have witnessed, at private festivities in Cairo, abominable scenes, of which ladies, screened behind lattices, were spectators. Can the same be said with respect to the previous carousal? This is a question which cannot be answered in a few words.

The prohibition of wine, or, rather, of fermented and intoxicating liquors, being one

² See Kuran, ch. 11 v. 96.

³ El-Kazweene, account of the well of Lábil, in "'Ajub el-Makhlookat."

of the most remarkable and important points of the Mohammadan religion, it might be imagined that the frequent stories in this work, describing parties of Muslims as habitually indulging in the use of forbidden beverages, are scandalous misrepresentations of Arab manners and customs. There are, however, many similar anecdotes interspersed in the works of Arab historians, which (though many of them are probably untrue in their application to particular individuals) could not have been offered to the public by such writers if they were not of a nature consistent with the customs of a considerable class of the Arab nation.

In investigating this subject, it is necessary, in the first place, to state, that there is a kind of wine which Muslims are permitted to drink. It is properly called "nebeedh" (a name which is *now* given to *prohibited* kinds of wine), and is generally prepared by putting dry grapes, or dry dates, in water, to extract their sweetness, and suffering the liquor to ferment slightly, until it acquires a little sharpness or pungency. The Prophet himself was in the habit of drinking wine of this kind, which was prepared for him in the first part of the night, he drank it on the first and second days following, but if any remained on the morning of the third day, he either gave it to his servants or ordered it to be poured out upon the ground⁴. Such beverages have, therefore, been drunk by the strictest of his followers, and Ibn-Khaldoon strongly argues that nebeedh thus prepared from dates was the kind of wine used by the Khlulfehs Hâroon Er-Rasheed and El-Ma-moon, and several other eminent men, who have been commonly accused of habitually and publicly indulging in debauches of wine properly so called, that is, of inebriating liquors⁵.

Nebeedh, prepared from raisins, is commonly sold in Arab towns, under the name of "zebeeh," which signifies "raisins." This I have often drunk in Cairo, but never could perceive that it was in the slightest degree fermented. Other beverages, to which the name of "nebeedh" has been applied (though, like zebeeh, no longer called by that name), are also sold in Arab towns. The most common of these is an infusion of licorice, and called by the name of the root, "erk-soos." The nebeedh of dates is sold in Cairo with the dates themselves in the liquor, and in like manner is that of figs. Under the same appellation of "nebeedh" have been classed the different kinds of beer now commonly called "boozeh," which have been mentioned in former pages. Opium, hemp, &c., are now more frequently used by the Muslims to induce intoxication or exultation. The young leaves of the hemp are generally used alone, or mixed with tobacco, for smoking, and the capsules, without the seeds, enter into the composition of several intoxicating conserves. Some remarks upon this subject have been inserted in a former note.

By my own experience I am but little qualified to pronounce an opinion respecting the prevalence of drinking wine among the Arabs, for, never drinking it myself, I had little opportunity of observing others do so during my residence among Muslims. I judge, therefore, from the conversations and writings of Arabs, which justify me in asserting that the practice of drinking wine in private, and by select parties, is far from being uncommon among modern Muslims, though certainly more so than it was before the introduction of tobacco into the East, in the beginning of the seventeenth century of our era, for this herb, being in a slight degree exhilarating, and at the same time soothing, and unattended by the injurious effects that result from wine, is a sufficient luxury to many who, without it, would have recourse to intoxicating beverages merely to pass away hours of idleness. The use of coffee, too, which became common in Egypt, Syria, and other countries, besides Arabia, a century earlier than tobacco, doubtless tended to render the habit of drinking wine less general. That it was adopted as a substitute for wine appears even from its name, "kahweh," an old Arabic term for wine, whence the Turkish "kahveh," the Italian "caffè," and our "coffee."

⁴ *Mishkât el Maṣābeeh*, vol. II. p. 339.

⁵ De Sacy's *Chrétomathie Arabe*, vol. I. pp. 125—131, Arabic text, 2nd ed.

There is an Arabic work of some celebrity, and not of small extent, entitled "Halbet el-Kumeyt,"⁶ apparently written shortly before the Arabs were in possession of the first of the above mentioned substitutes for wine, nearly the whole of which consists of anecdotes and verses relating to the pleasures resulting from, or attendant upon, the use of wine; a few pages at the end being devoted to the condemnation of this practice, or, in other words, to prove the worthlessness of all that precedes. Of this work I possess a copy, a quarto volume of 464 pages. I have endeavoured to skim its cream, but found it impossible to do so without collecting, at the same time, a considerable quantity of most filthy scum, for it is characterised by wit and humour plentifully interlarded with the grossest and most revolting obscenity, yet it serves to confirm what has been above asserted. The mere existence of such a work (and it is not the only one of the kind), written by a man of learning, and I believe a Kádee, a judge, or one holding the honourable office of a guardian of religion and morality,⁷—written, too, evidently with pleasure, notwithstanding his assertion to the contrary,—is a strong argument in favour of the prevalence of the practice which it paints in the most fascinating colours, and then condemns. Its author terminates a chapter (the ninth, in which many well-known persons are mentioned as having been addicted to wine, by saying, that the Khaleefehs, Emirs, and Wezeers, so addicted, are too numerous to name in such a work, and by relating a story of a man who placed his own wife in pledge in the hands of a wine-merchant, after having expended in the purchase of the forbidden liquor all the property that he possessed. He excuses himself (in his preface) for writing this book, by saying that he had been ordered to do so by one whom he could not disobey, thus giving us a pretty strong proof that a great man in his time was not ashamed of avowing his fondness for the prohibited enjoyment. If, then, we admit the respectable authority of Ibn-Khaldoun, and acquit of the vice of drunkenness those illustrious individuals whose characters he vindicates, we must still regard most of the anecdotes relating to the carousals of other persons as being not without foundation.

One of my friends, who enjoys a high reputation, ranking among the most distinguished of the 'Ulamá of Cairo, is well known to his intimate acquaintances as frequently indulging in the use of forbidden beverages with a few select associates. I disturbed him and his companions by an evening visit on one of these occasions, and was kept waiting within the street-door while the guests quickly removed everything that would give me any indication of the manner in which they had been employed, for the announcement of my (assumed) name, and their knowledge of my abstemious character, completely disconcerted them. I found them, however, in the best humour. They had contrived, it appeared, to fill with wine a *china* bottle, of the kind used at that season (winter) for water, and when any one of them asked the servant for water, this bottle was brought to him, but when I made the same demand, my host told me that there was a bottle of water on the sill of the window behind that part of the *deewan* upon which I was seated. The evening passed away very pleasantly, and I should not have known how unwelcome was my intrusion had not one of the guests with whom I was intimately acquainted, in walking part of the way home with me, explained to me the whole occurrence. There was with us a third person, who, thinking that my antipathy to wine was feigned, asked me to stop at his house on my way, and take a cup of "white coffee," by which he meant brandy.

Another of my Muslim acquaintances in Cairo I frequently met at the house of a mutual friend, where, though he was in most respects very bigoted, he was in the habit of indulging in wine. For some time he refrained from this gratification when I was

⁶ That is, a race-course for sallies of wit and eloquence on the subject of wine: the word "kumeyt" being used, in preference to more than a hundred others that might have been employed, as signifying "wine," because it bears also the meaning of "a dark bay horse."

⁷ His name is not mentioned in my copy, but D'Herbelot states it to have been Shems-ed-Deen Mohammad Ibn-Bedr-ed-Deen Hasan, el-Kádee, and writes his surname "Naouagi," or "Naouahi."

present; but at length my presence became so irksome to him, that he ventured to enter into an argument with me on the subject of the prohibition. The only answer I could give to his question, "Why is wine forbidden?"—was in the words of the Kur-án, "Because it is the source of more evil than profit."⁸ This suited his purpose, as I intended it should, and he asked, "What evil results from it?" I answered, "Intoxication and quarrels, &c."⁹—"Then," said he, "if a man take not enough to intoxicate him there is no harm,"—and finding that I acquiesced by silence, he added, "I am in the habit of taking a little, but never enough to intoxicate. Boy, bring me a glass!"—He was the only Muslim, however, whom I have heard to argue against the absolute interdiction of intoxicating liquors.

Historics tell us that some of the early followers of the Prophet indulged in wine, holding the text above referred to as indecisive, and that Mohammad was at first doubtful upon this subject appears from another text, in which his followers were told not to come to prayer when they were drunk, until they should know what they would say,⁹ an injunction somewhat similar to one in the Bible¹⁰ but when frequent and severe contentions resulted from their use of wine, the following more decided condemnation of the practice was pronounced—"O ye who have become believers, verily wine and lots and images and divining-arrows are an abomination of the work of the Devil, therefore, avoid them, that ye may prosper!"¹¹ This law is absolute its violation in the smallest degree is criminal. The punishment ordained by the law for drinking (or, according to most doctors, for even tasting) wine or spirits, or inducing intoxication by any other means on ordinary occasions, is the infliction of eighty stripes in the case of a free man and forty in that of a slave but if the crime be openly committed in the course of any day of the month of Ramadán, when others are fasting, the punishment prescribed is death.¹

The prohibition of wine hindered many of the Prophet's contemporaries from embracing his religion. It is said that the famous poet El-Aashá, who was one of them, delayed to join his cause on this account, until death prevented him. A person passing by his tomb (at Menfooháh, in El-Yemámeh), and observing that it was moist, asked the reason, and was answered, that the young men of the place, considering him still as their cup-companion, drank wine over his grave, and poured his cup upon it.¹² Yet many of the most respectable of the pagan Arabs, like certain of the Jews and early Christians, abstained totally from wine, from a feeling of its injurious effects upon morals, and, in their climate, upon health, or, more especially, from the fear of being led by it into the commission of foolish and degrading actions. Thus, Keys the son of 'Ásim, being one night overcome with wine, attempted to grasp the moon, and swore that he would not quit the spot where he stood until he had laid hold of it after leaping several times with the view of doing so, he fell flat upon his face, and when he recovered his senses, and was acquainted with the cause of his face being bruised, he made a solemn vow to abstain from wine ever after.¹³ A similar feeling operated upon many Muslims more than religious principle. The Khaleefeh 'Abd-El-Melik Ibn-Marwán took pleasure in the company of a slave named Naseeb, and one day desired him to drink with him. The slave replied, "O Prince of the Faithful, I am not related to thee, nor have I any authority over thee, and I am of no rank or lineage. I am a black slave, and my wit and politeness have drawn me into thy favour—how then shall I take that which will plunder me of these two qualities, and by what shall I then propitiate thee?" The Khaleefeh admired and excused him.¹⁴

It was the custom of many Muslim princes, as might be inferred from the above anecdote, to admit the meanest of their dependants to participate in their unlawful carousals when they could have no better companions, but poets and musicians were

⁸ Ch. ii v 216

⁹ Ch. iv v 46

¹⁰ Leviticus, ch. x v 9

¹¹ Kur-án, ch. v v 92

¹² Hállet el Kamest, ch. ix

¹³ Idem, khatmich, or conclusion

¹⁴ Ibid

their more common associates on these occasions, and these two classes, and especially the latter, are in the present day the most addicted to intoxicating liquors. Few modern Arab musicians are so well contented with extraordinary payment and mere sweet sherbet as with a moderate fee and plenty of wine and brandy, and many of them deem even wine but a sorry beverage.

It was usual with the host and guests at wine-parties to wear dresses of bright colours, red, yellow, and green,¹⁵ and to perfume their beards and mustaches with civet, or to have rose-water sprinkled upon them, and ambergris or aloes-wood, or some other odoriferous substance, placed upon burning coals in a censer, diffused a delicious fragrance throughout the saloon of the revels.

The wine, it appears, was rather thick, for it was necessary to strain it¹⁶ it was probably sweet, and not strong, for it was drunk in large quantities. Frequently, perhaps, it was nebeedh of dry raisins kept longer than the law allows. It was usually kept in a large earthen vessel, called "denn," high, and small at the bottom, which was partly unbedded in the earth to keep it upright. The name of this vessel is now given to a cask of wood, but the kind above mentioned was of earth, for it was easily broken.—A famous saint, Abu l-Hoseyn En Nooree, seeing a vessel on the Tigris containing thirty dennis belonging to the Khaleefeh El-Moatadid, and being told that they contained wine, took a boat-pole, and broke them all, excepting one. When brought before the Khaleefeh to answer for this action, and asked by him, "Who made thee Mohtesib?"¹⁷ he boldly answered, "He who made thee Khaleefeh!"—and was pardoned¹⁸—Pitch was used by the Arabs, as it was by the Greeks and Romans, for the purpose of curing their wine, the interior of the denn being coated with it. A smaller kind of earthen jar, or amphora¹⁹ and a bottle of leather,²⁰ or of glass,²¹ were also used. The wine was transferred for the table to glass jugs, or long-spouted ewers.²² These and the cups were placed upon a round embroidered cloth spread on the floor, or upon a round tray. The latter now is in general use, and is supported on a low stool, described in a former note, as being used at ordinary meals. The guests sat around, reclining against pillars, or they sat upon the deewan, and a page or slave handed the cup, having on his right arm a richly embroidered napkin—the person after drinking took the end of this to wipe his lips. The cups are often described as holding a fluid pound, or little less than an English pint, and this is to be understood literally, or nearly so; they were commonly of cut glass, but some were of crystal, or silver, or gold.²³ With these and the ewers or jugs were placed several saucers, or small dishes,²⁴ of fresh and dried fruits,²⁵ and fans and fly-whisks, of the kinds described on a former occasion, were used by the guests.

The most common and esteemed fruits in the countries inhabited by the Arabs may here be mentioned.

The date²⁶ deserves the first place. The Prophet's favourite fruits were fresh dates²⁷ and water-melons, and he ate them both together.²⁸ "Honour," said he, "your paternal aunt, the date-palm, for she was created of the earth of which Adam was formed."²⁹ It is said that God hath given this tree as a peculiar favour to the

¹⁵ Fakhr-ed-Deen, in De Sacy's *Chrestomathie Arabe*, vol. 1 p. 24, Arabic text, 2nd ed.

¹⁶ "While tears of blood trickle from the strainer, the ewer beneath it giggles." (Is-Sadr Ibn El-Wekeel quoted in the *Halbat el-Kumeyt*, ch. xii.)—The strainer is called "ráwook."

¹⁷ The Mohtesib is inspector of the markets, the weights and measures, and provisions, &c.

¹⁸ Mir át er-Zemán, events of the year 295.

¹⁹ In Arabic, "báfiyeh."

²⁰ "Baffah."

²¹ "Kinneneeh."

²² "Ibrecks."

²³ The cup, when full, was generally called

"kás" when empty, "kadah" or "jám." The name of "kás" is now given to a small glass used for brandy and liqueurs, and similar to our liqueur glass; the glass or cup used for wine is called, when so used, "koobeh"; it is the same as that used for sherbet, but in the latter case it is called "kulleh."

²⁴ "Nukuldána."

²⁵ "Nukl."

²⁶ "Belah."

²⁷ "Ruḥah."

²⁸ Es-Suyootee, account of the fruits of Egypt, in his history of that country (MS. in my possession).
²⁹ Ibid.

Muslims, that he hath decreed all the date-palms in the world to them, and they have accordingly conquered every country in which these trees are found; and all are said to have derived their origin from the Hejáz.³⁰ The palm-tree has several well-known properties that render it an emblem of a human being, among which are these, that if the head be cut off, the tree dies, and if a branch be cut off, another does not grow in its place.³¹ Dates are preserved in a moist state by being merely pressed together in a basket or skin, and thus prepared are called "ajweh." There are many varieties of this fruit. The pith or heart of the palm³² is esteemed for its delicate flavour.

The water-melon,³³ from what has been said of it above, ought to be ranked next, and it really merits this distinction. "Whoso eateth," said the Prophet, "a mouthful of water-melon, God writeth for him a thousand good works, and cancelleth a thousand evil works, and raiseth him a thousand degrees, for it came from Paradise,"—and again, "The water-melon is food and drink, acid and alkali, and a support of life," &c.³⁴ The varieties of this fruit are very numerous.

The banana³⁵ is a delicious fruit. The Prophet pronounced the banana-tree to be the only thing on earth that resembles a thing in Paradise, because it bears fruit both in winter and summer.³⁶

The pomegranate³⁷ is another celebrated fruit. Every pomegranate, according to the Prophet, contains a fecundating seed from Paradise.³⁸

The other most common and esteemed fruits are the following—the apple, pear, quince, apricot, peach, fig, sycamore-fig, grape, lote, jujube, plum, walnut, almond, hazel nut, pistachio-nut, orange, Seville-orange, lime and lemon, citron, mulberry, olive, and sugar-cane.³⁹

Of a selection of these fruits consists the dessert which accompanies the wine, but the table is not complete without a bunch or two of flowers placed in the midst.

Though the Arabs are far from being remarkable for exhibiting taste in the planning of their gardens, they are passionately fond of flowers, and especially of the rose.⁴⁰—The Khaleefeh El Mutawekkil monopolized roses for his own enjoyment, saying, "I am the King of Sultáns, and the rose is the king of sweet-scented flowers, therefore each of us is most worthy of the other for a companion." The rose, in his time, was seen nowhere but in his palace. During the season of this flower he wore rose-coloured clothes, and his carpets, &c., were sprinkled with rose-water.⁴¹ A similar passion for the rose is said to have distinguished a weaver, in the reign of El-Ma-inoon. He was constantly employed at his loom every day of the year, even during the congregational prayers of Friday, excepting in the rose-season, when he abandoned his work, and gave himself up to the enjoyment of wine, early in the morning and late in the evening, loudly proclaiming his revels by singing,—

"The season has become pleasant! The time of the rose has come! Take your morning potations, as long as the rose has blossoms and flowers!"

When he resumed his work, he made it known by singing aloud,—

"If my Lord prolong my life until the rose-season, I will take again my morning potations but if I die before it, alas! for the loss of the rose and wine!"

"I implore the God of the supreme throne, whose glory be extolled, that my heart may continually enjoy the evening potations to the day of resurrection."

³⁰ Es-Suyootee, account of the fruits of Egypt, in his history of that country (MS. in my possession)

⁴¹ El-Kazweenee (MS. in my possession)

³² "Jummár."

³³ "Bittéekh," vulg., "batteekh."

³⁴ El-Kazweenee

³⁵ "Móz."

³⁶ Es-Suyootee, *ubi supra*

³⁷ "Rummán."

³⁸ Es-Suyootee, *ubi supra*

³⁹ The Arabic names of these fruits are, tuffáh (vulg., tuffáh), kummetre, safarjal, mishmish, khókh, teen, jummeyz (vulg., jemmeyz), 'eneb, nabk or sidr, 'onnáb (vulg., 'annáb), wás or barkook, józ, lóz, bunduk, fustuk, burtukán, nárin, leymoon, utruj or turunj and kebbád, toot, reytoon, and kasab es-sikkar

⁴⁰ "Ward."

⁴¹ Halbet el-kumeyt, ch. xvii., and Es-Suyootee, account of the flowers of Egypt, in his history of that country

—The Khaleefeh was so amused with the humour of this man, that he granted him an annual pension of ten thousand dirhems to enable him to enjoy himself amply on these occasions ⁴²—Another anecdote may be added to shew the estimation of the rose in the mind of an Arab. It is said that Rowh Ibn-Hâtim, the governor of the province of Northern Africa, was sitting one day, with a female slave, in an apartment of his palace, when a eunuch brought him a jar full of red and white roses, which a man had offered as a present. He ordered the eunuch to fill the jar with silver in return, but his concubine said, "O my lord, thou hast not acted equitably towards the man, for his present to thee is of two colours, red and white." The Emeer replied, "Thou hast said truly," and gave orders to fill the jar for him with silver and gold (dirhems and deenârs) intermixed ⁴³—Some persons preserve roses during the whole of the year, in the following manner. They take a number of rose-buds, and fill with them a new earthen jar, and, after closing its mouth with mud, so as to render it impervious to the air, bury it in the earth. Whenever they want a few roses, they take out some of these buds, which they find unaltered, sprinkle a little water upon them, and leave them for a short time in the air, when they open, and appear as if just gathered ⁴⁴—The rose is even a subject of miracles. It is related by Ibn-Kuteibeh, that there grows in India a kind of rose upon the leaves of which is inscribed, "There is no deity but God" ⁴⁵. But I find a more particular account of this miraculous rose. A person, who professed to have seen it, said, "I went into India, and I saw, at one of its towns, a large rose, sweet-scented, upon which was inscribed, in white characters, 'There is no deity but God, Mohammad is God's apostle. Aboo-Bekr is the very veracious. Omar is the dis-criminator,' and I doubted of this, whether it had been done by art, so I took one of the blossoms not yet opened, and in it was the same inscription, and there were many of the same kind there. The people of that place worshipped stones, and knew not God, to whom he ascribed might and glory" ⁴⁶—Roses are announced for sale in the streets of Cairo by the cry of "The rose was a thorn from the sweat of the Prophet it blossomed!" in allusion to a miracle recorded of Mohammad. "When I was taken up into heaven," said the Prophet, "some of my sweat fell upon the earth, and from it sprang the rose, and whoever would smell my scent, let him smell the rose." In another tradition it is said, "The white rose was created from my sweat on the night of the Mearâj," ⁴⁷ and the red rose, from the sweat of Jehraeel, ⁴⁸ and the yellow rose, from the sweat of El-Burâk" ⁴⁹—The Persians take especial delight in roses, sometimes spreading them as carpets or beds on which to sit or recline in their revellings.

But there is a flower pronounced more excellent than the rose, that of the Egyptian privet, or *Lawsonea mercuris* ⁵⁰. Mohammad said, "The chief of the sweet-scented flowers of this world and of the next is the faghieh," and this was his favourite flower ⁵¹. I approve of his taste, for this flower, which grows in clusters somewhat like those of the lilac, has a most delicious fragrance. But, on account of discrepancies in different traditions, a Muslim may, with a clear conscience, prefer either of the two flowers next mentioned.

The Prophet said of the violet, ⁵² "The excellence of the extract of violets, above all other extracts, is as the excellence of me above all the rest of the creation: it is cold in summer and hot in winter" and, in another tradition, "The excellence of the violet is as the excellence of El-Islâm above all other religions." ⁵³ A delicious sherbet is made of a conserve of sugar and violet-flowers.

⁴² Halbet el-Kumeyt, ch. xvii

⁴³ Ibid.

⁴⁴ Ibid.

⁴⁵ Ibid.

⁴⁶ Es-Suyootee, *ubi supra*

⁴⁷ The night of the Ascension

⁴⁸ Gabriel, who accompanied the Prophet

⁴⁹ The beast on which he rode from Mekkeh to Jerusalem previously to his ascension. These traditions are from Es-Suyootee, *ubi supra*

⁵⁰ This flower is called "faghieh," and, more commonly, "temer el-henné," or, according to some, the faghieh is the flower produced by a ship of temer el-henné planted upside down, and superior to the flower of the latter planted in the natural way.

⁵¹ Es-Suyootee, *ubi supra*.

⁵² "Beneficent."

⁵³ Es-Suyootee.

The myrtle⁵⁴ is the rival of the violet "Adam," said the Prophet, "fell down from Paradise with three things, the myrtle, which is the chief of sweet-scented flowers in this world, an ear of wheat, which is the chief of all kinds of food in this world, and pressed dates, which are the chief of the fruits of this world"⁵⁵

The anemone⁵⁶ was monopolized for his own enjoyment by Noamán Ibn-El-Mundhir (King of El-Heereh, and contemporary of Mohammad), as the rose was afterwards by El-Mutawekkil⁵⁷

Another flower much admired and celebrated in the East is the gilliflower⁵⁸ There are three principal kinds, the most esteemed is the yellow, or golden-coloured, which has a delicious scent both by night and day, the next, the purple, and other dark kinds, which have a scent only in the night, the least esteemed, the white, which has no scent The yellow gilliflower is an emblem of a neglected lover⁵⁹

The narcissus⁶⁰ is very highly esteemed Galen says, "He who has two cakes of bread, let him dispose of one of them for some flowers of the narcissus, for bread is the food of the body, and the narcissus is the food of the soul" Hippocrates, too, gave a similar opinion⁶¹

The following flowers complete the list of those celebrated as most appropriate to add to the delights of wine—the jasmine, eglantine Seville-orange-flower, hly, sweet-basil, wild thyme, bupthalmum, chamomile nenuphar, lotus, pomegranate-flower, poppy, ketmia, crocus or saffron, safflower, flax, the blossoms of different kinds of bean, and those of the almond⁶²

A sprig of Oriental willow⁶³ adds much to the charms of a bunch of flowers, being the favourite symbol of a graceful female

But I have not yet mentioned all that contributes to the pleasures of an Eastern carousal For the juice of the grape is not fully relished without melodious sounds "Wine is as the body, music as the soul, and joy is their offspring"⁶⁴ All the five senses should be gratified For this reason, an Arab toper, who had nothing, it appears, but wine to enjoy, exclaimed,—

"Ho' give me wine to drink, and tell me, 'This is wine'"

For on drinking, his sight and smell and taste and touch would all be affected, but it was desirable that his hearing should also be pleased⁶⁵

Music was condemned by the Prophet almost as severely as wine "Singing and hearing songs," said he, "cause hypocrisy to grow in the heart, like as water promoteth the growth of corn"⁶⁶—and musical instruments he declared to be among the most powerful means by which the Devil seduces man An instrument of music is the Devil's mueddin, serving to call men to his worship, as stated in a former note Of the hypocrisies of those attached to music, the following anecdote presents an instance—A drunken young man with a lute in his hand was brought one night before the Khaleefeh 'Abd-El-Melik the son of Marwán, who, pointing to the instrument, asked what it was, and what was its use The youth made no answer, so he asked those around him, but they also remained silent, till one, more bold than the rest, said, "O Prince of the

⁵⁴ "Ás," or "narseen."

⁵⁵ Es-buyootee

⁵⁶ "Shakaik" The "adhriyoon," or "ádhariyoon," is said to be a variety of the anemone

⁵⁷ From the former, or from "noaman" as signifying "blood," the anemone was named "shakaik en-noamán"

⁵⁸ "Menthoor," or "kheetee"

⁵⁹ Halbet el-Kumeyt, ch xvii

⁶⁰ "Narjis"

⁶¹ Halbet el-Kumeyt, ubi supra, Es-buyootee, ubi supra, and El-Kazweenee

⁶² The Arabic names of these flowers are,

jasmeen, misreen, zahr (or zahr nárij), soosan, rechá (or habák), nemam, bahár, uk-howan, melolair, beshneen, jullanar or julanar, khashkhash, khitme, zaafaran, 'osfur, kettan, bakilla and leblab, and loz

⁶³ "Bin, and "khalif" or "khalaf" Both these names are applied to the same tree (which, according to Forskal, differs slightly from the salix Ægyptiaca of Linnaeus) by the author of the Halbet el-Kumeyt, and by the modern Egyptians

⁶⁴ Halbet el-Kumeyt, ch xiv

⁶⁵ Idem, ch xi

⁶⁶ Mishkat el-Musabeeh, vol ii p 123.

Faithful, this is a lute it is made by taking some wood of the pistachio-tree, and cutting it into thin pieces, and glueing these together, and then attaching over them these chords, which, when a beautiful girl touches them, send forth sounds more pleasant than those of rain falling upon a desert land, and my wife is separated from me by a triple divorce if every one in this council is not acquainted with it, and doth not know it as well as I do, and thou the first of them, O Prince of the Faithful" The Khaleefeh laughed, and ordered that the young man should be discharged ⁶⁷

The latter saying of the Prophet, respecting the Devil, suggests to me the insertion of another anecdote, related of himself by Ibrâheem El-Môgîlee, the father of Is-hâk, both of whom were very celebrated musicians I give a translation of it somewhat abridged—"I asked Er-Rasheed," says Ibrâheem, "to grant me permission to spend a day at home with my female slaves and brothers, and he gave me two thousand deenârs, and appointed the next Saturday for this purpose I caused the meats and wine and other necessaries to be prepared, and ordered the chamberlain to close the door, and admit no one but while I was sitting, with my attendants standing in the form of a curved line before me, there entered, and approached me, a sheykh, reverend and dignified and comely in appearance, wearing short khuffs,⁶⁸ and two soft gowns, with a kalensuwch⁶⁹ upon his head, and in his hand a silver-headed staff, and sweet odours were diffused from his clothes I was enraged with the chamberlain for admitting him, but on his saluting me in a very courteous manner, I returned his salutation, and desired him to sit down He then began to repeat to me stories, tales of war, and poetry, so that my anger was appeased, and it appeared to me that my servants had not presumed to admit him until acquainted with his politeness and courteousness, I therefore said to him, 'Hast thou any inclination for meat?' He answered, 'I have no want of it'—'And the wine?' said I He replied, 'Yes' So I drank a large cupful, and he did the same, and then said to me, 'O Ibrâheem, wilt thou let us hear some specimen of thy art in which thou hast excelled the people of thy profession?' I was angry at his words, but I made light of the matter, and, having taken the lute and tuned it, I played and sang, whereupon he said, 'Thou hast performed well, O Ibrâheem' I became more enraged, and said within myself, 'He is not content with coming hither without permission, and asking me to sing, but he calls me by my name, and proves himself unworthy of my conversation' He then said, 'Wilt thou let us hear more?' If so, we will requite thee' And I took the lute, and sang, using my utmost care, on account of his saying, 'we will requite thee' He was moved with delight, and said, 'Thou hast performed well, O my master Ibrâheem' adding, 'Wilt thou permit thy slave to sing?' I answered, 'As thou pleasest'—but thinking lightly of his sense to sing after me He took the lute, and tuned it, and, by Allah' I imagined that the lute spoke in his hands with an eloquent Arab tongue He proceeded to sing some verses commencing,—

'My heart is wounded! Who will give me, for it, a heart without a wound?' "

The narrator continues by saying, that he was struck dumb and motionless with ecstasy, and that the strange sheykh, after having played and sung again, and taught him an enchanting air (with which he afterwards enraptured his patron, the Khaleefeh), vanished Ibrâheem, in alarm, seized his sword; and was the more amazed when he found that the porter had not seen the stranger enter or leave the house, but he heard his voice again, outside, telling him that he was Aboo-Murrah (the Devil)⁷⁰—Two other anecdotes of a similar kind are related in the work from which the above is taken.

Ibrâheem El-Môgîlee, his son Is-hâk, and Mukhârik (a pupil of the former), were

⁶⁷ Halbet el-Kumeyt, ch. xiv

⁶⁸ Soft boots, worn inside the slippers or shoes

⁶⁹ This is so vaguely described by the Arab

lexicographers that I cannot obtain a definite notion of its form

⁷⁰ Halbet el-Kumeyt, *loc. laudato*

especially celebrated among the Arab musicians, and among the distinguished men of the reign of Hárroon Er-Rasheed. Is-hák El-Mósilee relates, of his father Ibráheem, that when Er-Rasheed took him into his service, he gave him a hundred and fifty thousand dirhems, and allotted him a monthly pension of ten thousand dirhems, besides occasional presents [one of which is mentioned as amounting to a hundred thousand dirhems for a single song], and the produce of his (Ibráheem's) farms. He had food constantly prepared for him, three sheep every day for his kitchen, besides birds, three thousand dirhems were allowed him for fruits, perfumes, &c, every month, and a thousand dirhems for his clothing, "and with all this," says his son, "he died without leaving more than three thousand deenás, a sum not equal to his debts, which I paid after his death"⁷¹—Ibráheem was of Persian origin, and of a high family. He was commonly called the Nedeem (or cup-companion), being El-Rasheed's favourite companion at the wine-table, and his son, who enjoyed the like distinction with El-Ma-moon, received the same appellation, as well as that of "Son of the Nedeem." Ibráheem was the most famous musician of his time, at least till his son attained celebrity.⁷²

Is-hák El-Mósilee was especially famous as a musician, but he was also a good poet, accomplished in general literature, and endowed with great wit. He was honoured above all other persons in the pay of El-Ma-moon, and enjoyed a long life, but for many years before his death he was blind.⁷³

Mukhárik appears to have rivalled his master Ibráheem. The latter, he relates, took him to perform before Er-Rasheed, who used to have a curtain suspended between him and the musicians. "Others," he says, "sang, and he was unmoved, but when I sang, he came forth from behind the curtain, and exclaimed, 'Young man, lither!' and he seated me upon the sereer [a kind of couch], and gave me thirty thousand dirhems"⁷⁴. The following anecdote (which I abridge a little in translation) shews his excellence in the art which he professed, and the effect of melody on an Arab.—"After drinking with the Khaleefeh⁷⁵ a whole night, I asked his permission," says he, "to take the air in the Rusáfah,⁷⁶ which he granted, and while I was walking there, I saw a damsel who appeared as if the rising sun beamed from her face. She had a basket, and I followed her. She stopped at a fruiterer's, and bought some fruit, and observing that I was following her, she looked back and abused me several times; but still I followed her until she arrived at a great door, after having filled her basket with fruits and flowers and similar things. When she had entered, and the door was closed behind her, I sat down opposite to it, deprived of my reason by her beauty, and knew that there must be in the house a wine-party. The sun went down upon me while I sat there, and at length there came two handsome young men on asses, and they knocked at the door, and when they were admitted I entered with them, the master of the house thinking that I was their companion, and they imagining that I was one of his friends. A repast was brought, and we ate, and washed our hands, and were perfumed. The master of the house then said to the two young men, 'Have ye any desire that I should call such a one?' (mentioning a female name). They answered, 'If thou wilt grant us the favour, well'—so he called for her, and she came, and lo, she was the maiden whom I had seen before, and who had abused me. A servant-maid preceded her, bearing her lute, which she placed in her lap. Wine was then brought, and she sang while we drank, and shook with delight. 'Whose air is that?' they asked. She answered, 'Seedee'⁷⁷ Mukhárik's.' She then sang another air, which, also,

⁷¹ Halbet el-Kumeyt, ch. xiv.

⁷² He was born in the year of the Flight 125, and died in 213, or, according to some, 184—*Abulfedæ Annales*, vol. ii pp. 160 and 675.

⁷³ He was born in the year of the Flight 150, and died in 215—*Idem*, *adnot.*, pp. 691 et

seq., and *Mir-ut ez-Zemán*, events of the year 235.

⁷⁴ *Mir-ut ez-Zemán*, events of the year 231. He died in this year.

⁷⁵ I believe this Khaleefeh was El-Ma-moon.

⁷⁶ A quarter in Baghdád.

⁷⁷ That is, "My master"—*Idem*.

she said was mine, while they drank by pints, she looking aside and doubtfully at me until I lost my patience, and called out to her to do her best—but in attempting to do so, singing a third air, she overstrained her voice, and I said, 'Thou hast made a mistake'—upon which she threw the lute from her lap, in anger, so that she nearly broke it, saying, 'Take it thyself, and let us hear thee' I answered, 'Well,' and having taken it and tuned it perfectly, sang the first of the airs which she had sung before me, whereupon all of them sprang upon their feet, and kissed my head I then sang the second air, and the third, and their reason almost fled, from ecstasy The master of the house, after asking his guests, and being told by them that they knew me not, came to me, and, kissing my hand, said, 'By Allah, my master, who art thou?' I answered, 'By Allah, I am the singer Mukhárík'—'And for what purpose,' said he, kissing both my hands, 'camest thou hither?' I replied, 'As a spunger,'—and related what had happened with respect to the maiden whereupon he looked towards his two companions, and said to them, 'Tell me, by Allah, do ye not know that I gave for that girl thirty thousand dirhems, and have refused to sell her?' They answered, 'It is so.' Then said he, 'I take you as witnesses that I have given her to him'—'And we,' said the two friends, 'will pay thee two-thirds of her price.' So he put me in possession of the girl, and in the evening, when I departed, he presented me also with rich dresses and other gifts, with all of which I went away, and as I passed the places where the maiden had abused me, I said to her, 'Repeat thy words to me,' but she could not, for shame Holding the girl's hand, I went with her immediately to the Khaleefeh, whom I found in anger at my long absence, but when I related my story to him he was surprised, and laughed, and ordered that the master of the house and his two friends should be brought before him, that he might requite them to the former he gave forty thousand dirhems, to each of his two friends, thirty thousand, and to me, a hundred thousand, and I kissed his feet, and departed⁷⁸

It is particularly necessary for the Arab musician, that he have a retentive memory, well stocked with choice pieces of poetry, and with facetious or pleasant anecdotes, inter-spersed with songs, and that he have a ready wit, aided by dramatic talent, to employ these materials with good effect If, to such qualifications, he adds fair attainments in the difficult rules of grammar, a degree of eloquence comic humour, and good temper, and is not surpassed by many in his art, he is sure to be a general favourite Very few Muslims of the higher classes have condescended to study music, because they would have been despised by their inferiors for doing so, or because they themselves have despised or condemned the art Ibrâheem, the son of the Khaleefeh El-Mahdee, and competitor of El-Ma-moon, was a remarkable exception he is said to have been an excellent musician, and a good singer

In the houses of the wealthy, the vocal and instrumental performers were usually (as is the case in many houses in the present age) domestic female slaves, well instructed in their art by hired male or female professors In the work before us, these slaves are commonly described as standing or sitting unveiled in the presence of male guests, but, from several descriptions of musical entertainments that I have met with in Arabic works, it appears that, according to the more approved custom in respectable society, they were concealed on such occasions behind a curtain, which generally closed the front of an elevated recess. In all the houses of wealthy Arabs that I have entered, one or each of the larger saloons has an elevated closet, the front of which is closed by a screen of wooden lattice-work, to serve as an orchestra for the domestic or hired female singers and instrumental performers Of the hired performers, any further mention is not here required, but of the slaves and free ladies who supplied their place, a few words must be added, as very necessary to illustrate the preceding and many other tales in this work

To a person acquainted with modern Arabian manners, it must appear inconsistent

with truth to describe such females as exposing their faces before strange men, unless he can discover in sober histories some evidence of their having been less strict in this respect than the generality of Arab females at the present period. I find, however, a remarkable proof that such was the case in the latter part of the ninth century of the Flight, and the beginning of the tenth—that is, about the end of the fifteenth century of our era. The famous historian Es-Suyootee, who flourished at this period, in his preface to a curious work on wedlock, written to correct the corrupt manners of his age, says,—“Seeing that the women of this time deck themselves with the attire of prostitutes and walk in the sooks (or market-streets), like female warriors against the religion, and uncover their faces and hands before men, to incline [men’s] hearts to them by evil suggestions, and play at feasts with young men, thereby meriting the anger of the Compassionate [i.e. God], and go forth to the public baths and assemblies, with various kinds of ornaments and perfumes, and with conceited gait, for the which they shall be congregated in Hell-fire, for opposing the good, and on account of this their affected gait, while to their husbands they are disobedient, behaving to them in the reverse manner, excepting when they fear to abridge their liberty of going abroad by such conduct, for they are like swine and apes in their interior nature, though like daughters of Adam in their exterior appearance, especially the women of this age; not advising their husbands in matters of religion, but the latter erring in permitting them to go out to every assembly, sisters of devils and demons, &c. &c. I have undertaken the composition of this volume.”⁷⁹ A more convincing testimony than this, I think, cannot be required.

The lute (el-’ood) is the only instrument that is generally described as used at the entertainments which we have been considering. Engravings of this and other musical instruments are given in my work on the Modern Egyptians. The Arab *viol* (called *rabāb*) was commonly used by inferior performers. (See also Note 26 below.)

The Arab music is generally of a soft and plaintive character, and particularly that of the most refined description, which is distinguished by a remarkable peculiarity, the division of tones into thirds. The singer aims at distinct enunciation of the words, for this is justly admired, and delights in a trilling style. The airs of songs are commonly very short and simple, adapted to a single verse, or even to a single hemistich, but in the instrumental music there is more variety.

NOTE 23. This is often said to a person whose presence is disagreeable to his companions.

NOTE 24.—*On the Kalenderees.* In the old translation, these three strangers are called “Calenders,” that is, “Kalenderees,” but in the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred nights, and the edition of Breslau, they are designated as “Karendeleeas,” “miserable or ridiculous beggars,” and in that of Cairo, the term applied to them is “sa’aleek,” or, simply, “paupers,” or “mendicants.” Some may suppose the right reading to be “Kalenderees,” for it was a custom of this order of *Durweeshes* to shave their beards: they were forbidden to do so in the year of the Flight 761,⁸⁰ by the Sultān of Egypt (El-Melik en-Nāsir El Hasan), but whether they afterwards reverted to this habit, I do not know. The order of the Kalenderees, however, was not founded until about the commencement of the fifth century of the Flight,⁸¹ a period long posterior to that to which the tale relates.

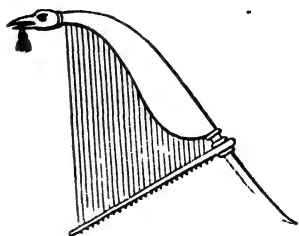
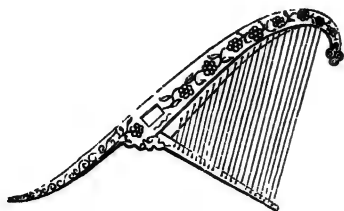
NOTE 25. In the edition of Cairo, they are said to have arrived from Greece.

NOTE 26.—*On the Persian Hap.* This instrument is called in Arabic “junk,” from the Persian “chang.” It has almost fallen into disuse, and I have never seen it. I am enabled, however, to give two sketches of its form through the kindness of the [late] Right Honourable Sir Gore Ouseley, who has favoured me with drawings made from

⁷⁹ *Nuzhet el-Mutaammil wa-Murshid el-Muttaahhil*

⁸⁰ El-Makreezee, in Dr. Sacy’s *Chrestomathie Arabe*, vol. i. p. 265, 2nd ed.

⁸¹ *Ibid.*



two of the most satisfactory representations of it in his rich collection of Oriental MSS., the first, about 350 years old, the second, 410. The number of strings, he informs me, vary from 20 to 27.

NOTE 27—*On the Title and Office of Khaleefeh.* As most of our best authors on Oriental subjects have for some years past deviated from our old general mode of writing this title, substituting (for “Caliph”) “Khalif,” “Khalifah,” &c, I have taken the same liberty. It cannot be correctly written, at the same time congenially with our language and with its orthography in Arabic characters, otherwise than “Khaleefeh” or “Khaleefah,” and of these two modes I adopt the one which agrees with the manner in which the title is most generally pronounced by the Arabs. The meaning of this title is “Successor,” or “Vicar,” and it was originally given to the universal sovereigns of the Muslim Arabs, as signifying “Successor of the Prophet,” but afterwards, in a more exalted sense, as “Vicar of God” the Khaleefeh being the head of the religion as well as the supreme political governor, or at least arrogating to himself the right to possess such supremacy, throughout the whole Muslim world. [The last of the Khaleefehs died in Egypt shortly after the Turkish conquest of that country, or in the year of the Flight, 950. After the overthrow of the house of El-’Abbās by Hulāgū, certain of its members obtained an asylum at the court of the Memlook Sultāns, and continued the line of the Khaleefehs, with spiritual, but no temporal, authority until it ceased in the person of El-Mutawekkīl, who delegated his office to the Sultān Selcūm I., it is consequently held by the Sultān of Turkey. The Emperors of Morocco, being descendants of the Prophet, also claim and receive from their subjects the title of Khaleefeh.²²—ED.]

NOTE 28 The stories in which this justly-celebrated man is mentioned will, I think, be more agreeable to those readers who are unacquainted with his history, of which, therefore, I shall say nothing.

NOTE 29 Mesroor was a black eunuch, and a favourite servant of Er-Rasheed. The name signifies “happy.”

NOTE 30 “Tabareeyeh” is the modern name for Tiberias.

NOTE 31—*Description of Khāns, or Wekālehs.* A Khān is a building chiefly designed for the accommodation of merchants, and for the reception of their goods. In Egypt, a building of this kind is generally called a Wekāleh. I have described it, in a former work, as surrounding a square or oblong court, and having, on the ground-floor, vaulted magazines for merchandise, which face the court, and are sometimes used as shops. Above these are generally lodgings, which are entered from a gallery extending along each of the four sides of the court, or, in the place of these lodgings, there are other magazines and in many khāns or wekālehs which have apartments designed as lodgings, these apartments are used as magazines. In general, the building has only one common entrance, the door of which is closed at night, and kept by a porter.

²² El-Makreezee, in his “Khatā’,” and his history of the Memlook Sultāns, translated by Quatremere,

El-Is-hākee, and D’Osson, *Tableau Général de l’Empire Ottoman*

NOTE 32. It is customary for a guest or visitor to ask permission of the host, or master of the house, before taking his departure. A common form of speech used on this occasion is, "With your permission, I rise"

NOTE 33 Many Muslims perform the pilgrimage with the view of expiating their offences, and, at the Kaabeh, or at the tomb of the Prophet, make a vow to abstain from any glaring infringement of the law of which they may before have been guilty

NOTE 34 I learn, from a marginal note in my copy of the original, by the sheykh Mohammad Et-Tantáwee, that these verses are the composition of Ibn-Sahl El-Ishbeelee Three concluding verses of the same ode, and a second poetical quotation immediately following, I have passed over.

NOTE 35 In the original there are some errors in this part of the story, which the sequel requires me to correct The cateress is described as having sung three successive songs, accompanying them with her lute After the first song, the mistress of the house is said to have been affected in the manner described in the translation, and to have exposed to view the marks of beating The second lady (namely, the portress) is represented as similarly excited by the second song, and the third lady (the cateress herself), by the third song The last also is said to have exhibited upon her person those marks which, as the sequel shews, were borne by the second

NOTE 36 The "mukra'ah," vulgarly called "makra'ah," is a portion of the thicker end of a palm-branch stripped of the leaves It is often used to beat a person in sport, but in this case, two or three splits are usually made in the thicker part of it, to increase the sound of the blows

NOTE 37 In the original, "the portress" See Note 35, above

NOTE 38 Perhaps it is needless to explain that the wish here expressed, for a protractive trial on the day of judgment, is occasioned by the longing for reunion, and the fear of separation after that day The Muslims usually pray for an easy (and, consequently, a short) reckoning

NOTE 39 I have omitted the third song of the cateress, and the description of its effects, mentioned in Note 35

NOTE 40 See Note 47 to Chapter II

NOTE 41. It seems to be implied that the lady discovered her guests, notwithstanding their disguise, to be persons of rank

NOTE 42. I read "fukaráu aajám" for "fukaráu-l-hojám" the former, carelessly written (in Arabic characters), might easily be mistaken for the latter

NOTE 43. This phrase is used to signify "Recover thy senses," alluding to a person's drawing his hand over his head or face after a sleep or fit.

NOTE 44 The burial-grounds of Eastern cities are generally so extensive, that, with the varied structures which they contain, they may aptly be called "Cities of the Dead" It was with difficulty that I recognised the tomb of the lamented Burckhardt, in the great cemetery on the north of Cairo, even after I had carefully noticed its place on a former visit

NOTE 45. I have ventured to make a slight alteration here, but it is one which does not in the least affect the consistency of the tale Marriage with a foster-sister is as expressly forbidden by the Mohammedan law as that with a natural sister

NOTE 46 "The Truth" is one of the ninety-nine names or epithets of God.

NOTE 47. Many an Arab would rather risk the loss of his head than part with his beard; for the latter is regarded by almost all Muslims with a superstitious respect, and to shave it off, at least after it has been suffered to grow for many days, they consider as sinful this, however, is sometimes done by religious mendicants, as it is also by some of those persons who seek, or enjoy, the reputation of sanctity, and who are, or pretend to be, insane.

NOTE 48. By "the seven readings," we are to understand seven slightly different modes of reading the Kur-án, seldom differing essentially as to the sense

NOTE 49. Astrology (not astronomy) is here meant. Though a forbidden science, it is studied by many Muslims.

NOTE 50 A misplaced diacritical point occasions a wrong reading here, in the original, which I have corrected

NOTE 51 The Mohammadan law requires that every man be acquainted with some art or occupation by which he may, in case of necessity, at least be able to obtain the means of supporting himself and such of his family as are dependant upon him, and of fulfilling all his religious as well as moral duties Hence it has been a common custom of Muslim princes, in every age, to learn some useful art, and many of them have distinguished themselves by displaying exquisite skill in the work of their hands, and especially in caligraphy, of which the Orientals in general are great admirers

NOTE 52 The 'Efreet (as we are told in some editions of the original) had taken this lady against the consent of his family, and therefore could not more frequently visit her

NOTE 53 The term "kubbeh" is often applied to a closet or small chamber adjoining a saloon, and in this sense it appears to be here used

NOTE 54 — *On Sherbets* The Arabs have various kinds of sherbets, or sweet drinks; the most common of which is merely sugar and water, made very sweet The most esteemed kind is prepared from a hard conserve of violets, made by pounding violet-flowers, and then boiling them with sugar Other kinds are prepared from conserves of fruits, &c The sherbet is served in covered glass cups, containing from two-thirds to three-quarters of an English pint, the same which I have described in a former note as used for wine These are placed on a round tray, and covered with a round piece of embroidered silk, or cloth of gold, and on the right arm of the person who presents the sherbet, is hung a long napkin with a deep embroidered border of gold and coloured silks at each end, which is ostensibly offered for the purpose of wiping the lips after drinking, though the lips are scarcely touched with it

NOTE 55 The Arabs are very fond of having their feet, and especially the soles, slowly rubbed with the hand, and this operation, which is one of the services commonly required of a wife or female slave, is a usual mode of waking a person

NOTE 56 Here, and again in the same and a subsequent sentence, for "kheiyáteen," I read "hattábeen" In the Breslau edition, "khattábeen" is put for the latter The right reading is obvious

NOTE 57 Falsehood was commended by the Prophet when it tended to reconcile persons at enmity with each other, and when practised in order to please one's wife, or to obtain any advantage in a war with infidels, though strongly reprobated in other cases

NOTE 58 Four verses here inserted in the original appear to me to be a corruption of a couplet which better expresses the same meaning, and which I have therefore translated in the place of the former. As the lines to which I allude are particularly pleasing, I may perhaps be excused if I here introduce the original words, which are as follow —

"Isháratuná fi-l-hobbi remzu 'oyoonina wa-kullu lebeebin bi-l-isháratí yefhamu.
Hawájibuná tekdi-l-hawája beynená fi-nahnú sukootin wa-l-hawá yetekellemu"

NOTE 59. This is not meant to disparage the individual lady here mentioned, but is a saying of the Prophet applied to the sex in general

NOTE 60 In the edition of Cairo, this story is omitted. I translate it from the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred nights.

NOTE 61. "Fakcer" (which signifies "poor," and is particularly used in the sense of "poor in the sight of God," or rather, "in need of the mercy of God") is an appella-

tion commonly given to poor persons who especially occupy themselves in religious exercises.

NOTE 62. The performances called "zikra" will be briefly described towards the close of the next note.

NOTE 63.—*On Muslim Saints, or Devoters.* The tale of the Envid Sheykh, and several other stories in this work, require that the reader should be acquainted with the remarkable opinions which the Arabs entertain with respect to the offices and supernatural powers of their saints. Such matters form an important part of the mysteries of the Darweeshes, and are but imperfectly known to the generality of Muslims.

The distinguished individuals above mentioned are known by the common appellation of "Welees," or particular favourites of God. The more eminent among them compose a mysterious hierarchical body whose government respects the whole human race, infidels as well as believers, but whose power is often exercised in such a manner that the subjects influenced by it know not from what person or persons its effects proceed. The general governor or coryphaeus of these holy beings is commonly called the "Kutb," which literally signifies a "pole," or an "axis," and is metaphorically used to signify a "chief," either in a civil or political, or in a spiritual sense. The Kutb of the saints is distinguished by other appellations: he is called "Kutb el-Ghós," or "— el-Ghóth" ("the Kutb of Invocation for Help"), &c., and simply "El-Ghós."⁸³ The orders under the rule of this chief are called "Omud (or Owáid), Akhyár, Abdál, Nujabá, and Nukabá. I name them according to their precedence.⁸⁴ Perhaps to these should be added an inferior order called "As-háb ed-Darak," which is said to mean "Watchmen," or "Overseers." The members are not known as such to their inferior, unenlightened fellow-creatures, and are often invisible to them. This is more frequently the case with the Kutb, who, though generally stationed at Mekkeh on the roof of the Kaabah, is never visible there, nor at any of his other favourite stations or places of resort, yet his voice is often heard at these places. Whenever he and the saints under his authority mingle among ordinary men, they are not distinguished by a dignified appearance, but are always humbly clad. These, and even inferior saints, are said to perform astonishing miracles, such as flying in the air, passing unhurt through fire, swallowing fire, glass, &c., walking upon water, transporting themselves in a moment of time to immense distances, and supplying themselves and others with food in desert places. Their supernatural power they are supposed to obtain by a life of the most exalted piety, and especially by constant self-denial, accompanied with the most implicit reliance upon God, by the services of good genius, and, as many believe, by the knowledge and utterance of "the most great name" of God. A miracle performed by a saint is distinguished by the term "karámich" from one performed by a prophet, which is called "moajizeh."

El-Khidr and Ilyás (or Elias), of whom I have before had occasion to speak, are both believed to have been Kutbs, and the latter is called in the Kur-án an apostle, but it is disputed whether the former was a prophet or merely a welec. Both are said to have drunk of the Fountain of Life, and to be in consequence still living, and Ilyás is

⁸³ D Ohsson (vol. 1 pp. 315 and 316) asserts the Kutb to be the chief minister of the Ghós, and gives an account somewhat different from that which I offer of the orders under his authority but perhaps the Turkish Darweeshes differ from the Arab in their tenets on this subject.

⁸⁴ It is said that "the Nukabá are three hundred, the Nujabá, seventy, the Abdal, forty, the Akhyár, seven, the 'Omud, four, the Ghos [as before mentioned] is one. The Nukabá reside in El-Gharb [Northern Africa to the west of Egypt], the Nujabá, in Egypt, the Abdal, in Syria, the

Akhyar travel about the earth, the 'Omud, in the corners of the earth, the abode of the Ghós is at Mekkeh. In an affair of need, the Nukabá implore relief for the people, then, the Nujabá, then, the Abdal, then, the Akhyár, then, the 'Omud, and if their prayer be not answered, the Ghos implores, and his prayer is answered" (El-Is-hákees' History, preface).—This statement, I find, rests on the authority of a famous saint of Baghdad, Abou-Bekr El-Ketánee, who died at Mekkeh, in the year of the Flight 322. (Mirát el-Zennán, events of the year above mentioned.)

commonly believed to invest the successive Kutbs. The similarity of the miracles ascribed to the Kutbs and those performed by Elias or Elijah I have remarked in a former work. Another miracle, reminding us of the mantle of Elijah in the hands of his successor, may here be mentioned—A saint who was the Kutb of his time, dying at Toonis (or Tunis), left his clothes in trust to his attendant, Mohammad El-Ashwam, a native of the neighbouring regency of Tripoli (now called Tarábulus), who desired to sell these relics, but was counselled to retain them, and accordingly, though high prices were bidden for them, made them his own by purchase. As soon as they became his property, he was affected, we are told, with a divine ecstasy, and endowed with miraculous powers.⁸⁵

Innumerable miracles are related to have been performed by Muslim saints, and large volumes are filled with the histories of their wonderful lives. The author of the work from which the above story is taken, mentions, as a fact to be relied on, in an account of one of his ancestors, that, his lamp happening to go out one night while he was reading alone in the riwak of the Jabart (of which he was the sheikh), in the great mosque El-Azhar, the forefinger of his right hand emitted a light which enabled him to continue his reading until his nakieb had trimmed and lighted another lamp.⁸⁶

From many stories of a similar kind that I have read, I select the following as a fair specimen—it is related by a very celebrated saint, Ibráheem El-Khowwás—"I entered the desert [on pilgrimage to Mekkeh from El-Erák], and there joined me a man having a belt round his waist, and I said, 'Who art thou?'—He answered, 'A Christian, and I desire thy company.' We walked together for seven days, eating nothing, after which he said to me 'O monk of the Muslims, produce what thou hast in the way of refreshment, for we are hungry.' so I said, 'O my God, disgrace me not before this infidel' and lo a tray, upon which were bread and broiled meat and fresh dates and a mug of water. We ate, and continued our journey seven days more, and I then said to him, 'O monk of the Christians, produce what thou hast in the way of refreshment, for the turn is come to thee' whereupon he leaned upon his staff, and prayed, and lo, two trays, containing double that which was on my tray. I was confounded, and refused to eat. He urged me, saying 'Eat,' but I did it not. Then said he, 'Be glad, for I give thee two pieces of good news: one of them is, that I testify that there is no deity but God, and that Mohammad is God's Apostle: the other, that I said, O God, if there be worth in this servant, supply me with two trays—so this is through thy blessing.' We ate, and the man put on the dress of pilgrimage, and so entered Mekkeh, where he remained with me a year as a student, after which he died, and I buried him in [the cemetery] El-Maálâ." "And God," says the author from whom I take this story, 'is all-knowing.' He alone knoweth whether it be strictly true—but this is often added to the narration of traditions resting upon high authority.⁸⁷—The saint above mentioned was called "El-Khowwás" or the maker of palm-leaf baskets, &c.) from the following circumstance, related by himself—"I used," said he, "to go out of the town [El-Rai] and sit by a river on the banks of which was abundance of palm-leaves, and it occurred to my mind to make every day five baskets [kuffehs], and to throw them into the river, for my amusement, as if I were obliged to do so. My time was so passed for many days—at length, one day, I thought I would walk after the baskets, and see whither they had gone—so I proceeded a while along the bank of the river, and found an old woman sitting sorrowful. On that day I had made nothing. I said to her, 'Wherefore do I see thee sorrowful?' She answered, 'I am a

⁸⁵ El-Jahartee's History of Modern Egypt, vol. ii, obituary of the year 1201 (MS. in my possession).—The appellation of "the four Kutbs" is given in Egypt to the seyfid Ahmad Rifá ah, the seyfid 'Abd-El Kádir El-Gedlánee, the seyfid Ahmad El Bedawee, and the seyfid Ibráheem Ed-Dasookée, the founders of the four orders of

darweeshes most celebrated among the Arabs, called Rifá'eeh, Kádiréeyeh, Ahmedéeyeh, and Baráhimch.

⁸⁶ El-Jahartee's History, vol. i, obituary of the year 1184.

⁸⁷ Mir-át ez-Zemán, events of the year 291.

widow my husband died leaving five daughters, and nothing to maintain them; and it is my custom to repair every day to this river, and there come to me, upon the surface of the water, five baskets, which I sell, and by means of them I procure food, but to-day they have not come, and I know not what to do' Upon hearing this, I raised my head towards heaven, and said, 'O my God, had I known that I had more than five children to maintain, I had laboured more diligently' " He then took the old woman to his house, and gave her money and flour, and said to her, "Whenever thou wantest anything, come hither and take what may suffice you"⁸⁸

An irresistible influence has often been exercised over the minds of princes and other great men by reputed saints Many a Muslim Monarch has thus been incited (as the Kings of Christendom were by Peter the Hermit) to undertake religious wars, or urged to acts of piety and charity, or restrained from tyranny by threats of Divine vengeance to be called down upon his head by the imprecations of a welee 'Alee, the favourite son of the Khaleefeh El-Ma-moon, was induced, for the sake of religion, to flee from the splendour and luxuries of his father's court, and, after the example of a self-denying devotee, to follow the occupation of a porter, in a state of the most abject poverty, at El-Ba-rah, fasting all the day, remaining without sleep at night in a mosque, and walking barefooted, until, under an accumulation of severe sufferings, he prematurely ended his days, dying on a mat The honours which he refused to receive in life were paid to him after his death his rank being discovered by a ring and paper which he left, his corpse was anointed with camphor and musk and aloes, wrapped in fine linen of Egypt, and so conveyed to his distressed father at Baghdád"⁸⁹

Self-denial I have before mentioned as one of the most important means by which to attain the dignity of a welee A very famous saint, Esh-Shiblee, is said to have received from his father an inheritance of sixty millions of deenârs (a sum incredible, and probably a mistake for sixty thousand, or for sixty million dirhems), besides landed property, and to have expended it all in charity also, to have thrown into the Tigris seventy hundred-weight of books, written by his own hand during a period of twenty years"⁹⁰

Sháh El-Karmánee, another celebrated saint, had a beautiful daughter, whom the Sultán of his country sought in marriage The holy man required three days to consider his sovereign's proposal, and in the mean time visited several mosques, in one of which he saw a young man humbly occupied in prayer Having waited till he had finished, he accosted him, saying, "My son, hast thou a wife?" Being answered, "No," he said, "I have a maiden, a virtuous devotee, who hath learned the whole of the Kur-án, and is amply endowed with beauty Dost thou desire her?"—"Who," said the young man, "will marry me to such a one as thou hast described when I possess no more than three dirhems?"—"I will marry thee to her," answered the saint "She is my daughter, and I am Sháh the son of Shujáa El Karmánee give me the dirhems that thou hast, that I may buy a dirhem's worth of bread, and a dirhem's worth of something savoury, and a dirhem's worth of perfume" The marriage-contract was performed, but when the bride came to the young man, she saw a stale cake of bread placed upon the top of his mug, upon which she put on her izár, and went out. Her husband said, "Now I perceive that the daughter of Sháh El-Karmánee is displeased with my poverty" She answered, "I did not withdraw from fear of poverty, but on account of the weakness of thy faith, seeing how thou layest by a cake of bread for the morrow"⁹¹

One of my friends in Cairo, Abu-l Kásim of Geelán, mentioned in a former note, entertained me with a long relation of the mortifications and other means which he employed to attain the rank of a welee These were chiefly self-denial and a perfect reliance upon Providence. He left his home in a state of voluntary destitution and

⁸⁸ Mir-át ez-Zemán, events of the year 291.

⁸⁹ Idem, events of the year 219

⁹⁰ Idem, events of the year 334.

⁹¹ Nuzhet el-Mutsamml, &c., sect. 4

complete nudity, to travel through Persia and the surrounding countries, and yet more distant regions if necessary, in search of a spiritual guide. For many days he avoided the habitations of men, fasting from daybreak till sunset, and then eating nothing but a little grass or a few leaves or wild fruits, till by degrees he habituated himself to almost total abstinence from every kind of nourishment. His feet, at first blistered, and cut by sharp stones, soon became callous, and in proportion to his reduction of food, his frame, contrary to the common course of nature, became (according to his own account) more stout and lusty. Bronzed by the sun, and with his black hair hanging over his shoulders (for he had abjured the use of the razor), he presented, in his nudity, a wild and frightful appearance, and on his first approaching a town, was surrounded and pelted by a crowd of boys, he therefore retreated, and, after the example of our first parents, made himself a partial covering of leaves, and thus he always after did on similar occasions, never remaining long enough in a town for his leafy apron to wither. The abodes of mankind he always passed at a distance, excepting when several days' fast, while traversing an arid desert, compelled him to obtain a morsel of bread or a cup of water from the hand of some charitable fellow-creature. One thing that he particularly dreaded was, to receive relief from a sinful man, or from a demon in the human form. In passing over a parched and desolate tract, where for three days he had found nothing to eat, not even a blade of grass, nor a spring from which to refresh his tongue, he became overpowered with thirst, and prayed that God would send him a messenger with a pitcher of water. "But," said he, "let the water^a be in a green Baghdáhee pitcher, that I may know it be from Thee, and not from the Devil, and when I ask the bearer to give me to drink, let him pour it over my head, that I may not too much gratify my carnal desire."—"I looked behind me," he continued, "and saw a man bearing a green Baghdáhee pitcher of water, and said to him, 'Give me to drink,' and he came up to me, and poured the contents over my head, and departed." By Allah it was so!"—Rejoicing in this miracle, as a proof of his having attained to a degree of wiláveh (or saintship), and refreshed by the water, he continued his way over the desert, more firm than ever in his course of self-denial, which, though imperfectly followed, had been the means of his being thus distinguished. But the burning thirst returned shortly after, and he felt himself at the point of sinking under it, when he beheld before him a high hill, with a rivulet running by its base. To the summit of this hill he determined to ascend, by way of mortification, before he would taste the water, and this point, with much difficulty, he reached at the close of the day. Here standing, he saw approaching, below, a troop of horsemen, who paused at the foot of the hill, when their chief, who was foremost, called out to him by name, "O Abu-l-Kásim! O Geelánee! Come down and drink!"—but, persuaded by this that he was Ibrees with a troop of his sons, the evil Genni, he withstood the temptation, and remained stationary until the deceiver with his attendants had passed on, and were out of sight. The sun had then set, his thirst had somewhat abated, and he only drank a few drops. Continuing his wanderings in the desert, he found, upon a pebbly plain, an old man with a long white beard, who accosted him, asking of what he was in search. "I am seeking," he answered, "a spiritual guide; and my heart tells me that thou art the guide I seek." "My son," said the old man, "thou seest yonder a saint's tomb: it is a place where prayer is answered: go thither, enter it, and seat thyself: neither eat nor drink nor sleep, but occupy thyself solely, day and night, in repeating silently, 'Lá iláha illalláh' (There is no deity but God), and let not any living creature see thy lips move in doing so, for among the peculiar virtues of these words is this, that they may be uttered without any motion of the lips. Go, and peace be on thee!"—"Accordingly," said my friend, "I went thither. It was a small square building, crowned by a cupola; and the door was open. I entered, and seated myself, facing the niche, and the oblong monument over the grave. It was evening, and I commenced my silent professions of the Unity, as directed by my guide, and at dusk I saw a white figure seated beside me, as if assisting in my devotional task. I stretched forth my hand to touch it, but

found that it was not a material substance, yet there it was. I saw it distinctly. Encouraged by this vision, I continued my task for three nights and days without intermission, neither eating nor drinking, yet increasing in strength both of body and of spirit, and on the third day, I saw written upon the whitewashed walls of the tomb, and on the ground, and in the air, wherever I turned my eyes, 'Lá iláha illa-lláh,' and whenever a fly entered the tomb, it formed these words in its flight. By Allah it was so! My object was now fully attained. I felt myself endowed with supernatural knowledge. thoughts of my friends and acquaintances troubled me not, but I knew where each of them was, in Persia, India, Arabia and Turkey, and what each was doing. I experienced an indescribable happiness. This state lasted several years, but at length I was insensibly enticed back to worldly objects. I came to this country, my fame as a calligraphist drew me into the service of the government, and now see what I am, decked with pelisses and shawls, and with this thing [a diamond order] on my breast, too old, I fear, to undergo again the self-denial necessary to restore me to true happiness though I have almost resolved to make the attempt."—Soon after this conversation, he was deprived of his office, and died of the plague. He was well known to have passed several years as a wandering devotee, and his sufferings, combined with enthusiasm, perhaps disordered his imagination, and made him believe that he really saw the strange sights which he described to me, for there was an appearance of earnestness and sincerity in his manner such as I thought could hardly be assumed by a conscious impostor.

Insanity, however if not of a very violent and dangerous nature, is commonly regarded by Muslims as a quality that entitles the subject of it to be esteemed as a saint being supposed to be the abstraction of the mind from worldly affairs, and its total devotion to God. This popular superstition is a fertile source of imposture, for, a reputation for sanctity being so easily obtained and supported there are numbers of persons who lay claim to it from motives of indolence and licentiousness, eager to receive alms merely for performing the tricks of madmen, and greedy of indulging in pleasures forbidden by the law, such indulgences not being considered in their case as transgressions by the common people, but rather as indications of holy frenzy. From my own observation I should say that lunatics or idiots or impostors, constitute the majority of the persons reputed to be saints among the Muslims of the present day, and most of those who are not more than slightly tinged with insanity are dervishes.

A reputed saint of this description, in Cairo in whom persons of some education put great faith, affected to have a particular regard for me. He several times accosted me in an abrupt manner, acquainted me with the state of my family in England, and uttered incoherent predictions respecting me, all of which communications, excepting one which he qualified with an "in sháa lláh" (or 'it be the will of God'), I must confess, proved to be true, but I must also state that he was acquainted with two of my friends who might have materially assisted him to frame these predictions, though they protested to me that they had not done so. The following extract from a journal which I kept in Cairo during my second visit to Egypt, will convey some idea of this person, who will serve as a picture of many of his fraternity.—To-day (Nov 6th, 1834), as I was sitting in the shop of the Basha's booksellers, a reputed saint, whom I have often seen here, came and seated himself by me, and began, in a series of abrupt sentences, to relate to me various matters respecting me, past, present, and to come. He is called the sheykh 'Alee El-Leysee. He is a poor man, supported by alms, tall and thin and very dark, about thirty years of age, and wears nothing at present but a blue shirt and a girdle, and a padded red cap. "O Efendee," he said, "thou hast been very anxious for some days. There is a grain of anxiety remaining in thee yet. Do not fear. There is a letter coming to thee by sea, that will bring thee good news." He then proceeded to tell me of the state of my family, and that all were well excepting one, whom he particularized by description, and who he stated to be then suffering from an intermittent fever. [This proved to be exactly true.] "This affliction," he continued, "may be

removed by prayer, and the excellences of the next night, the night of [*i.e.* preceding] the first Friday of the month of Regeb, of Regeb, the holy Regeb, are very great. I wanted to ask thee for something to-day; but I feared. I feared greatly. Thou must be invested with the wilāyeh [*i.e.* be made a welee] the welees love thee, and the Prophet loves thee. Thou must go to the sheykh Mustafa El-Munādee, and the sheykh El-Bahāee.⁹² Thou must be a welee." He then took my right hand, in the manner commonly practised in the ceremony which admits a person a darweesh, and repeated the Fātehalā (commonly pronounced Fāt'hālā),⁹³ after which he added, 'I have admitted thee my darweesh.' Having next told me of several circumstances relating to my family—matters of an unusual nature—with singular minuteness and truth, he added, "To-night, if it be the will of God, thou shalt see the Prophet in thy sleep, and El-Khndr and the sayyid El-Bedawee. This is Regeb, and I wanted to ask of thee—but I feared—I wanted to ask of thee four piastres, to buy meat and bread and oil and radishes. Regeb! Regeb! I have great offices to do in thee to-night."—Less than a shilling for all he promised was little enough. I gave it him for the trouble he had taken, and he uttered many abrupt prayers for me.—In the following night, however, I saw in my sleep neither Mohammad nor El-Khndr nor the sayyid El-Bedawee, unless, like Nebuchadnezzar, I was unable, on awaking, to remember my dreams.

Some reputed saints of the more respectable class, to avoid public notice, wear the general dress and manners of their fellow-countrymen, and betray no love of ostentation in their acts of piety and self-denial, or live as hermits in desert places, depending solely upon Providence for their support, and are objects of pious and charitable visits from the inhabitants of near and distant places, and from casual travellers. Others distinguish themselves by the habit of a darweesh, or by other peculiarities, such as a long and loose coat (called dikh) composed of patches of cloth of various colours, long strings of beads hung upon the neck, a ragged turban, and a staff with shreds of cloth of different colours attached to the top, or obtain a reputation for miraculous powers by eating glass, fire, serpents, &c. Some of those who are insane, and of those who feign to be so, go about, even in crowded cities in a state of perfect nudity, and are allowed to commit, with impunity, acts of brutal sensuality which the law, when appealed to, should punish with death. Such practices are forbidden by the religion and law even in the cases of saints—but common and deeply-rooted superstition prevents their punishment. During the occupation of Egypt by the French the Commander-in-chief, Menou, applied to the Sheykh (or Ulamā) of the city for their opinion respecting those persons who were accustomed to go about in the streets in a state of nudity, crying out and screaming, and arrogating to themselves the dignity of wilāyeh, relied upon as saints by the generality of the people, neither performing the prayers of the Muslims nor fasting. asking whether such conduct was permitted by the religion, or contrary to the law. He was answered, "Conduct of this description is forbidden, and repugnant to our religion and law and to our traditions." The French General thanked them for this answer, and gave orders to prevent such practices in future, and to seize every one seen thus offending. if insane, to confine him in the Māristan (or hospital and lunatic asylum), and if not insane, to compel him either to relinquish his disgusting habits, or to leave the city.⁹⁴—Of reputed saints of this kind, thus writes an enlightened poet, El-Bedree El-Hegazeer—

"Would that I had not lived to see every fool esteemed among men as a Kuṭb!"

Their learned men take him as a patron, nay, even as Lord, in place of the Possessor of Heaven's throne.

Forgetting God, they say, 'Such a one from all mankind can remove affliction.'

When he dies, they make for him a place of visitation, and strangers and Arabs hurry thither in crowds.

Some of them kiss his tomb, and some kiss the threshold of the door, and the very dust

Thus do the idolaters act towards their images, hoping so to obtain their favour.

⁹² These are two very celebrated welees.

⁹³ The opening chapter of the Kur-an.

⁹⁴ El-Jahartee's History, vol. iii, events of the month of Shaabān, 1215 (A.D. 1800—1801).

These lines are quoted by El-Jabartee, in his account of a very celebrated modern saint, the seyyid 'Alee El-Bekree (events of Rabea eth-Thánee, 1214). A brief history of this person will not be here misplaced, as it will present a good illustration of the general character and actions of those insane individuals who are commonly regarded as saints.

The seyyid 'Alee El-Bekree was a meτζoob (or insane person) who was considered an eminent welee, and much trusted in : for several years he used to walk naked about the streets of Cairo, with a shaven face, bearing a long nebboot (or staff), and uttering confused language, which the people attentively listened to, and interpreted according to their desires and the exigencies of their states. He was a tall, spare man, and sometimes wore a shirt and a cotton skull-cap, but he was generally barefooted and naked. The respect with which he was treated induced a woman, who was called the sheykhah Ammooneh, to imitate his example further than decency allowed : she followed him whithersoever he went, covered at first with her izar (or large cotton veil thrown over the head and body), and muttering, like him, confused language. Entering private houses with him, she used to ascend to the hareems, and gained the faith of the women, who presented her with money and clothes, and spread abroad that the sheykh ('Alee) had looked upon her, and affected her with religious frenzy, so that she had become a weleyeh, or female saint. Afterwards, becoming more insane and intoxicated, she uncovered her face, and put on the clothing of a man, and thus attired she still accompanied the sheykh, and the two wandered about, followed by numbers of children and common vagabonds, some of whom also stripped off their clothes in imitation of the sheykh, and followed, dancing; their mad actions being attributed (like those of the woman) to religious frenzy, induced by his look or touch, which converted them into saints. The vulgar and young, who daily followed them, consequently increased in numbers; and some of them, in passing through the market-streets, snatched away goods from the shops, thus exciting great commotion wherever they went. When the sheykh sat down in any place, the crowd stopped, and the people pressed to see him and his mad companions. On these occasions the woman used to mount upon the mastabah of a shop, or ascend a hillock, and utter disgusting language, sometimes in Arabic, and sometimes in Turkish, while many persons among her audience would kiss her hands to derive a blessing. After having persevered for some time in this course, none preventing them, the party entered one day the lane leading from the principal street of the city to the house of the Kádee, and were seized by a Turkish officer there residing, named Jaafar Káshif, who, having brought them into his house, gave the sheykh some food, and drove out the spectators, retaining the woman and the meτζoobs, whom he placed in confinement. He then liberated the sheykh 'Alee, brought out the woman and the meτζoobs and beat them, sent the woman to the Máristán, and there confined her, and set at large the rest, after they had prayed for mercy, and clothed themselves, and recovered from their intoxication. The woman remained a while confined in the Máristán, and, when liberated, lived alone as a sheykhah, believed in by men and women, and honoured as a saint with visits and festivals.

The seyyid 'Alee, after he had thus been deprived of his companions and imitators, was constrained to lead a different kind of life. He had a cunning brother, who, to turn the folly of this saint to a good account, and fill his own purse (seeing how great faith the people placed in him, as the Egyptians are prone to do in such a case), confined him in his house, and clothed him, asserting that he had his permission to do so, and that he had been invested with the dignity of Kuth. Thus he contrived to attract crowds of persons, men and women, to visit him. He forbade him to shave his beard, which consequently grew to its full size; and his body became fat and stout from abundance of food and rest; for, while he went about naked, he was, as before mentioned, of a lean figure. During that period he used generally to pass the night wandering, without food, through the streets, in winter and summer. Having now servants to wait upon him, whether sleeping or waking, he passed his time in id

uttering confused and incoherent words, and sometimes laughing and sometimes scolding, and in the course of his idle loquacity he could not but let fall some words applicable to the affairs of some of his listening visitors, who attributed such expressions to his supernatural knowledge of the thoughts of their hearts, and interpreted them as warnings or prophecies. Men and women, and particularly the wives of the grandees, flocked to him with presents and votive offerings, which enriched the coffers of his brother, and the honours which he received ceased not with his death. His funeral was attended by multitudes from every quarter. His brother buried him in the mosque of Esh-Sharâibeg, in the quarter of the Ezbekeÿeh, made for him a maksoorah (or railed enclosure) and an oblong monument over the grave, and frequently repaired thither with readers of the Kur-ân, munshids⁵⁵ to sing odes in his honour, flag-bearers, and other persons, who wailed and screamed, rubbed their faces against the bars of the window before his grave, and caught the air of the place in their hands to thrust it into their bosoms and pockets. Men and women came crowding together to visit his tomb, bringing votive offerings and wax candles, and eatables of various kinds to distribute for his sake to the poor.⁵⁶—The oblong monument over his grave, resembling a large chest, was covered, when I was in Cairo, with a black stuff ornamented by a line of words from the Kur-ân, in white characters, surrounding it. A servant who accompanied me during my rides and walks used often to stop as we passed this tomb, and touch the wooden bars of the window above mentioned with his right hand, which he then kissed to obtain a blessing.

In most cases greater honour is paid to a reputed saint after his death than he receives in his life. A small, square, whitewashed building, crowned with a dome, is generally erected as his tomb, surrounding an oblong monument of stone, brick, or wood, which is immediately over the sepulchral vault. At least one such building forms a conspicuous object close by, or within, almost every Arab village, for the different villages, and different quarters of every town and city, have their respective patron saints, whose tombs are frequently visited, and are the scenes of periodical festivals, generally celebrated once in every year. The tombs of many very eminent saints are mosques, and some of these are large and handsome edifices, the monument being under a large and lofty dome, and surrounded by an enclosure of wooden railings, or of elegantly-worked bronze. In these buildings also, and in some others, the monument is covered with silk or cotton stuff ornamented with words from the Kur-ân, which form a band around it. Many buildings of the more simple kind erected in honour of saints, and some of the larger description, are mere cenotaphs, or cover only some relic of the person to whom they are dedicated. The tombs and cenotaphs or shrines of saints are visited by numerous persons, and on frequent occasions; most commonly on a particular day of the week. The object of the visitor, in general, is to perform some meritorious act, such as taking bread, or other food, or money, for the poor, or distributing water to the thirsty, on account of the saint, to increase his rewards in heaven, and at the same time to draw down a blessing on himself, or to perform a sacrifice of a sheep, goat, calf, or other animal, which he has vowed to offer, if blessed with some specific object of desire, or to obtain general blessings, or to implore the saint's intercession in some case of need. The flesh of the devoted animal is given to the poor. The visitors also often take with them palm-branches, or sprigs of myrtle, or roses or other flowers, to lay upon the monument, as they do when they visit the tombs of their relations. The visitor walks round the monument, or its enclosure, from left to right, or with his left side towards it (as the pilgrims do round the Kaabeh), sometimes pausing to touch its four angles or corners with his right hand, which he then kisses; and recites the opening chapter of the Kur-ân (the Fât'hah) standing before one or each of its four sides. Some visitors repeat also the chapter of Yâ-Seen (the 36th), or employ a person to recite this, or even the whole of the Kur-ân, for hire.

⁵⁵ Singers of religious odes

⁵⁶ El-Jabartee's History, vol. ii., obituary of the

year 1207, and events of Rejeb, 1200, and vol. iii., events of Rabec eth-Thânee, 1214.

The reciter afterwards declares that he transfers the merit of this work to the soul of the deceased saint. Any private petition the visiter offers up on his own account, imploring a favourable answer for the sake of the saint, or through his intercession, holding his hands before his face like an open book, and then drawing them down his face. Many a visiter, on entering the tomb, kisses the threshold, or touches it with his right hand, which he then kisses, and, on passing by it, persons often touch the window, and kiss the hand thus honoured.

The great periodical or annual festivals are observed with additional ceremonies, and by crowds of visitors. These are called Moolids (more properly Mólids), and are held on the anniversary of the birth of the saint, or in commemoration of that event. Persons are then hired to recite the Kur-án in and near the tomb, during the day, and others, chiefly darweeshes, employ themselves during the night in performing zikrs, which consist in repeating the name of God, or the profession of his unity, &c, in chorus, accompanying the words by certain motions of the head, hands, or whole body; munshids, at intervals, singing religious odes or love songs during these performances, to the accompaniment of a náy, which is a kind of flute, or the arghool, which is a double reed-pipe. These moolids are scenes of rejoicing and of traffic, which men and boys and guls attend, to eat sweatmeats, and drink coffee and sherbets, or to amuse themselves with swinging, or turning on a whirling, or witnessing the feats of conjurers, or the performances of dancers, and to which tradesmen repair to sell or barter their goods. The visitors to the great moolids of the scyid Ahmad El-Bedawee, at Tantà, in the Delta of Egypt, which are great fairs as well as religious festivals, are almost as numerous as the pilgrims at Mekkeh. During a moolid, the inhabitants of the houses in the neighbourhood of the tomb hang lamps before their houses, and spend a great part of the night listening to the story-tellers at the coffee-shops, or attending the zikrs.

These latter performances, though so common among the Arabs, are inconsistent with the spirit of the Mohamadan religion, and especially with respect to music, which was not employed in religious ceremonies until after the second century of the Flight. The Imám Aboo-Bekr Et-Toosee, being asked whether it were lawful or not to be present with people who assembled in a certain place, and read a portion of the Kur-án, and, after a munshid had recited some poetry, would dance, and become excited, and play upon tambourines and pipes,—answered, that such practices were vain, ignorant, and erroneous, not ordained by the Kur-án or the Traditions of the Prophet, but invented by those Israelites who worshipped the Golden Calf, that the Prophet and his companions used to sit so quietly that a bird might alight upon the head of any one of them and not be disturbed, that it was incumbent on the Sultán and his vicegerents to prevent such persons from entering the mosques and other places for these purposes, and that no one who believed in God and the Last Day should be present with them, or assist them in their vain performances: such, he asserted, was the opinion of the Imáms of the Muslims.⁹⁷ Some eminent doctors, however, have contended for the lawfulness of these practices.⁹⁸

Of the various orders of darweeshes, to which so many of the reputed saints belong, it is unnecessary here to say more than that they differ chiefly in unimportant regulations and rites, such as particular forms of prayer, and modes of zikr, that some distinguish themselves by peculiar dresses, and that a few pursue a wandering life, and subsist on alms.

NOTE 64. The reason of this strange proceeding is not stated in the Cairo edition, but it is in the two other editions which I have before me.

NOTE 65. Arab etiquette requires that a person should sit upon his knees and feet in the presence of one of much higher rank, or of one to whom he would pay especial honour. He should also, in these cases, cover his hands with his sleeves,

⁹⁷ El-Is-hákee, reign of El-Mutanekkil.

⁹⁸ De Sacy's *Chrestomathie Arabe*, vol. 1. pp. 122, 123, 2nd. ed.

NOTE 66 *Kunáfah* is a kind of pastry resembling vermicelli, made of wheat-flour. It is moistened with clarified butter—then baked, and sweetened with honey or sugar.

NOTE 67 Chess is played somewhat differently in different parts of the East. The pieces are generally of very simple forms, as the Muslim is forbidden by his religion to make an image of anything that has life.

NOTE 68 In my original, and in the Breslau edition, the ape is said to have been the son of the King of the Ebony Islands, but this is a mistake; for the latter, as before stated, was the father of the lady who was carried off by Jarjarees.

NOTE 69 The term "*leewán*" has been explained in No. 12 of the notes to this chapter.

NOTE 70 This was, and I believe still is, a common battle-cry of the Arabs, and more commonly used on the occasion of a victory.

NOTE 71 "*Dár es-Selán*," "the Abode of Peace," or "of Safety," is a name often given to Baghdád, as it is also to one of the seven stories or stages of Paradise.

NOTE 72 — *The Mountain of Loadstone*. Several Arab writers describe this mountain of loadstone. El Kazweene, in his account of minerals, says that the mine of loadstone is on the shore of the Indian Ocean, and that if the ships which navigate this sea approach the said mine, and contain anything of iron, it flies from them like a bird, and adheres to the mountain, for which reason, it is the general custom to make use of no iron in the construction of the vessels employed in this navigation⁹⁹. I think that I have met with a similar story in some Latin author.

NOTE 73 For an explanation of this term, see what I have said on the subject of prayer in the first of the notes to the Introduction.

NOTE 74. "*Khasceb*" signifies "endowed with plenty."

NOTE 75 The remainder of the story of the Third Royal Mendicant is almost wholly omitted in the Cairo edition. I translate it chiefly from the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred nights.

NOTE 76 — *On Dreams*. That Dreams are regarded by the Muslims as being often true warnings or indications of future events I have mentioned in a former note. This belief, sanctioned by the Prophet, will be well illustrated by the following anecdote, which was related to me in Cairo, shortly after the terrible plague of the year 1835, by the sheikh Mohammad Et-Tantawee, who had taken the trouble of investigating the fact, and had ascertained its truth.

A tradesman, living in the quarter of El-Hanafec, in Cairo, dreamt, during the plague above mentioned, that eleven persons were carried out from his house to be buried, victims of this disease. He awoke in a state of the greatest distress and alarm, reflecting that eleven was the total number of the inhabitants of his house, including himself, and that it would be vain in him to attempt, by adding one or more members to his household, to elude the decree of God, and give himself a chance of escape: so, calling together his neighbours, he informed them of his dream, and was counselled to submit with resignation to a fate so plainly foreshewn, and to be thankful to God for the timely notice with which he had been mercifully favoured. On the following day, one of his children died, a day or two after, a wife, and the pestilence continued its ravages among his family until he remained in his house alone. It was impossible for him now to entertain the slightest doubt of the entire accomplishment of the warning: immediately, therefore, after the last death that had taken place among his household, he repaired to a friend at a neighbouring shop, and, calling to him several other persons from the adjoining and opposite shops, he reminded them of his dream, acquainted them with its almost complete fulfilment, and expressed his conviction that he, the eleventh, should very soon die. "Perhaps," said he, "I shall die this next

⁹⁹ "*Ajáb el-Makhloúqát*."

might I beg of you, therefore, for the sake of God, to come to my house early to-morrow morning, and the next morning and the next if necessary, and to see if I be dead, and, when dead, that I be properly buried, for I have no one with me to wash and shroud me. Fail not to do me this service which will procure you a recompense in heaven. I have bought my grave-linen you will find it in a corner of the room in which I sleep. If you find the door of the house latched, and I do not answer to your knocking, break it open."

Soon after sunset he laid himself in his lonely bed, though without any expectation of closing his eyes in sleep, for his mind was absorbed in reflections upon the awful entry into another world, and a review of his past life. As the shades of night gathered around him he could almost fancy that he beheld, in one faint object or another in his gloomy chamber, the dreadful person of the Angel of Death and at length he actually perceived a figure gliding in at the door, and approaching his bed. Starting up in horror, he exclaimed, "Who art thou?"—and a stern and solemn voice answered, "Be silent! I am 'Azrael, the Angel of Death'"—"Alas!" cried the terrified man; "I testify that there is no deity but God, and I testify that Mohammad is God's Apostle! There is no strength nor power but in God, the High! the Great! To God we belong, and to Him we must return!"—He then covered himself over with his quilt, as if for protection, and lay with throbbing heart, expecting every moment to have his soul torn from him by the inexorable messenger. But moments passed away, and minutes, and hours, yet without his experiencing any hope of escape, for he imagined that the Angel was waiting for him to resign himself, or had left him for a while, and was occupied in receiving first the souls of the many hundred human beings who had attained their predestined term in that same night and in the same city, and the souls of the thousands who were doomed to employ him elsewhere. Daybreak arrived before his sufferings terminated and his neighbours coming according to their promise, entered his chamber, and found him still in bed—but observing that he was covered up, and motionless as a corpse, they doubted whether he were still alive and called to him. He answered with a faint voice, "I am not yet dead, but the Angel of Death came to me in the dusk of the evening, and I expect every moment his return to take my soul, therefore trouble me not, but see me washed and buried!"—"But why," said his friends, "was the street-door left unlatched?"—"I latched it," he answered, "but the Angel of Death may have opened it!"—"And who," they asked, "is the man in the court?"—"He answered, 'I know of no man in the court—perhaps the Angel who is waiting for my soul has made himself visible to you, and been mistaken, in the twilight, for a man'"—"He is a thief," they said "who has gathered together everything in the house that he could carry away, and has been struck by the plague while doing so, and now lies dead in the court, at the foot of the stairs, grasping in his hand a silver candlestick!"—The master of the house after hearing this, paused for a moment, and then, throwing off his quilt, exclaimed, "Praise be to God, the Lord of all creatures! That is the eleventh, and I am safe! No doubt it was that rascal who came to me and said that he was the Angel of Death! Praise be to God! Praise be to God!"

This man survived the plague, and took pleasure in relating the above story. The thief had overheard his conversation with his neighbours, and, coming to his house in the dusk, had put his shoulder to the wooden lock, and so raised the door and displaced the latch within—There is nothing wonderful in the dream, nor in its accomplishment; the plague of 1835 entirely desolated many houses, and was mostly fatal to the young; and all the inhabitants of the house in question were young excepting the master.

NOTE 77. "‘Ajeeb" signifies "a wonder," or "anything strange or admirable."

NOTE 78. Blue is the colour of mourning, as before mentioned, in No 52 of the notes to the second chapter

NOTE 79. Smearing the face and slapping the cheeks are common practices of Arab

women, especially of the lower orders, on following to the grave the corpse of a near relation or a husband

NOTE 80 — *On the Rukh* This fabulous bird is described by many Arab writers, some of whom assert that it can carry a rhinoceros, while others ascribe to it powers still more extraordinary I shall have occasion to speak of it again in my notes to this work

NOTE 81 This is explained by No. 30 of the notes to the Introduction

NOTE 82 I here return to the Cairo edition

NOTE 83 Some of the incidents described in this story, as the shipwrecks caused by the image, and the opening of the forbidden closet, &c., appear to be taken from the romance of Seyf Zu-l-Yezen, of which I possess a copy, purchased during my second visit to Egypt. This romance, which has become extremely scarce, is filled with stories of genii and enchantments of the most extravagant kind. Some of the public story-tellers in Cairo used, a few years since, to amuse their audiences by recitations from it. I was not able to discover the period at which it was composed, but it is said to have been written long before the Tales of a Thousand and One Nights. I saw once a portion of a copy of which it appeared, from the hand-writing and the paper, to be three or four centuries old

NOTE 84 So in the Calcutta edition of the first two hundred nights, and in the edition of Breslau

NOTE 85 Those decrees which are written with "the Pen" on the "Preserved Tablet" are believed to be unchangeable. "The Pen" is also the title of one of the chapters of the Kur'an, the 65th

NOTE 86 In all the copies of the original which I have by me, El Basrah is said to have been the place to which the lady designed to voyage, but this is inconsistent with the sequel of the story

NOTE 87 In the old version two strange errors occur in the passage corresponding with this: two words in the original 'nar' and 'doon,' having been mistaken for a proper name, and the word 'jebbûr' which, applied to God, signifies "almighty," or rather the 'Compeller of his creatures to do whatsoever He willeth,' being taken in the sense of "giant," which it bears in many other cases

NOTE 88 — *On Martyrs* The Mohammadan law distinguishes several different descriptions of martyrs. This honourable title is given to the soldier who dies in fighting for the faith, or on his way to do so, or who dies almost immediately after his having been wounded when so engaged, to a person who innocently meets with his death from the hand of another, to a victim of the plague, who does not flee from the disease, or of dysentery, to a person who is drowned, and to one who is killed by the falling of a wall or any building. It is said that the souls of martyrs, after quitting their bodies, reside, until the day of resurrection, in the crops of green birds, which eat of the fruits, and drink of the waters, of Paradise. Such we are to consider as the first and lowest state of felicity to which the young prince in this tale was introduced as the reward of his virtue.

NOTE 89. The share inherited, according to the law, by the wife, or by the wives conjointly when there are more than one, is one-eighth of what remains of the property of the deceased after the discharge of his debts and legacies, if he have left issue, and one-fourth, if he have left no issue

NOTE 90 The Arabs, fond of hyperbole, often thus describe a lofty building

NOTE 91.—*On the Magnificence of Arab Palaces, &c.* After remarking upon the preceding sentence as presenting an instance of Oriental hyperbole, it may be necessary to inform the reader that he needs not regard this in the same light. The magnificence of the palaces of Baghliâd in the times of the Khaleefehs almost exceeds belief

In the beginning of the year of the Flight 305 (June, A D 917), two ambassadors from the Greek Emperor (Constantine IX, Porphyrogenitus) arrived in Baghdád on a mission to the Khaleefeh El-Muktedn, bringing an abundance of costly presents, and the scenes which they witnessed are thus described, apparently, however, not without some exaggeration. They were first received by the Wezeer, who, at the audience which he granted to them in his garden-palace, displayed on this occasion a degree of magnificence that had never before been manifested by any of his rank, pages, mem-looks, and soldiers, crowded the avenues and courts of his mansion, the apartments of which were hung with tapestry of the value of thirty thousand deenárs, and the Wezeer himself was surrounded by generals and other officers on his right and left and behind his seat, when the two ambassadors approached him, dazzled by the splendour that surrounded them, to beg for an interview with the Khaleefeh El-Muktedhr, having appointed a day on which he would receive them ordered that the courts and passages and avenues of his palace should be filled with armed men and that all the apartments should be furnished with the utmost magnificence. A hundred and sixty thousand armed soldiers were arranged in ranks in the approach to the palace, next to these were the pages of the closets, and chief eunuchs, clad in silk and with belts set with jewels in number seven thousand, four thousand white and three thousand black, there were also seven hundred chamberlains, and beautifully ornamented boats of various kinds were seen floating upon the Tigris hard by. The two ambassadors passed first by the palace of the chief chamberlain and astonished at the splendid ornaments and pages and arms which they there beheld imagined that this was the palace of the Khaleefeh, but what they had seen here was eclipsed by what they beheld in the latter, where they were amazed by the sight of thirty-eight thousand pieces of tapestry of gold-embroidered silk brocade, and twenty two thousand magnificent carpets. Here also were two menageries of beasts by nature wild, but tamed by art, and eating from the hands of men, among them were a hundred lions, each lion with its keeper. They then entered the Palace of the Tree, enclosing a pond from which rose the Tree, this had eighteen branches, with leaves of various colours (being artificial), and with birds of gold and silver (or gilt and silvered) of every variety of kind and size, perched upon its branches, so constructed that each of them sang. Thence they passed into the garden, in which were furniture and utensils not to be enumerated. In the passages leading to it were suspended ten thousand gilt coats of mail. Being at length conducted before El-Muktedhr, they found him seated on a couch of ebony inlaid with gold and silver, to the right of which were hung nine necklaces of jewels, and the like to the left, the jewels of which outshone the light of day. The two ambassadors paused at the distance of about a hundred cubits from the Khaleefeh, with the interpreter. Having left the presence, they were conducted through the palace, and were shewn splendidly-caparisoned elephants, a giraffe, lynxes, and other beasts. They were then clad with robes of honour, and to each of them was brought fifty thousand dirhems, together with dresses and other presents. It is added, that the ambassadors approached the palace through a street called "the Street of the Menárehs, in which were a thousand menárehs, or menarets. It was at the hour of noon, and as they passed, the mueddins from all these menárehs chanted the call to prayer at the same time, so that the earth almost quaked at the sound, and the ambassadors were struck with fear."¹⁰⁰

The Orientals well understand how to give the most striking effect to the jewels which they display on their dress, &c, on occasions of state. Sir John Malcolm, describing his reception by the late King of Persia, says, "His dress baffled all description. The ground of his robes was white, but he was so covered with jewels of an extraordinary size, and their splendour, from his being seated where the rays of the sun played upon them, was so dazzling, that it was impossible to distinguish the minute parts which combined to give such amazing brilliancy to his whole figure."¹⁰¹

¹⁰⁰ Mir-át ez-Zemán, events of the year above mentioned,

¹⁰¹ Sketches of Persia, vol. ii. p. 129

NOTE 92 As this marriage is described as conducted in an irregular manner, I need say nothing at present of the ceremonies usually practised on such an occasion

NOTE 93 Every person who has visited Eastern cities will bear testimony to the plausibility of this excuse I have several times been thrown down by the wide load of a camel in the streets of Cairo, and seen loads of firewood scraping the houses on both sides of a street at the same time.

NOTE 94 Women suspected of infidelity to their husbands have not unfrequently been thus punished in Egypt in modern times, in violation of the law

NOTE 95 "Saad" signifies "happiness," or "prosperity," and also "happy," or "prosperous."

NOTE 96 Pity is of more important service to the Muslim after death than during life, for the prayers which it inspires increase his happiness in futurity, or diminish his misery.

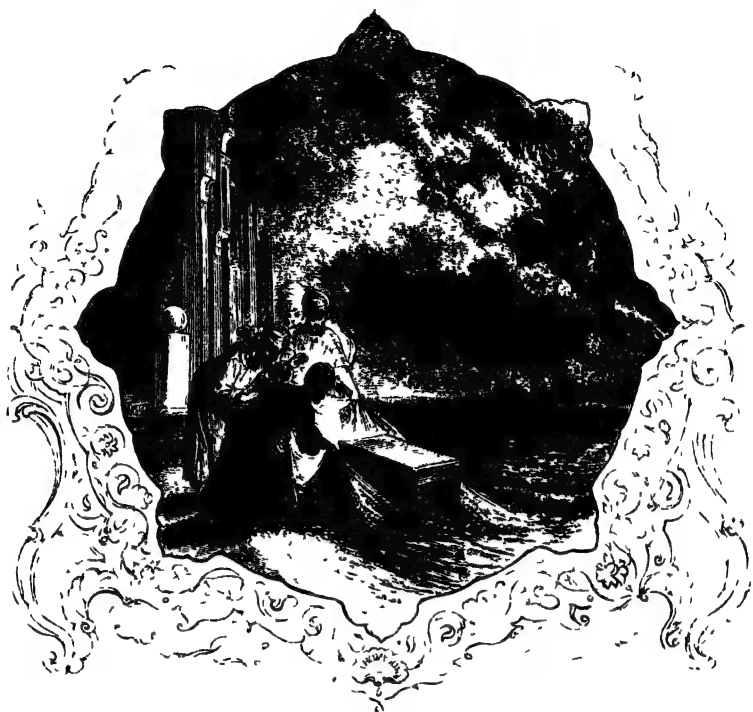
NOTE 97 This allusion to religious faith is peculiarly apt in the mouth of a Muslim, for the chief dogma of his creed is the denial of any partnership in the Divine essence He calls persons of all other religions "mushriks," or those who attribute partners to God

NOTE 98. In the original, she is here called an 'Efreeteh, which is an improper term

NOTE 99 This salutation and its reply are only to be given by and to Muslims

NOTE 100 It is implied by this speculation that the two ladies were admirable beauties, evidences of the perfection of their Creator





CHAPTER IV

COMMENCING WITH PART OF THE EIGHTEENTH NIGHT AND ENDING
WITH PART OF THE TWENTY-FOURTH.

THE STORY OF THE THREE APPLES, &c.

ONE night, after the adventure above described, the Khaleefeh Hároon Er-Rasheed said to Jaafar, his Wezeer, We will go down to-night into the city, and inquire respecting the affairs of those who are at present in authority, and him against whom any one shall complain we will displace. Jaafar replied, I hear and obey:—and when the Khaleefeh had gone forth with him and Mesroor, and they had passed through several of the market-streets, they proceeded along a lane, and saw there an old man, with a net and basket upon his head, and a staff in his hand, walking at his leisure, and reciting these verses:—

They say to me, Thou shinest among mankind, by thy knowledge, like the moon-light night
 But I answer, Abstain from thus addressing me, since there is no knowledge without power
 For if they would pawn me, and my knowledge with me, and all my papers and inkhorn too,
 For one day's food, they would never find the pledge accepted to the day of judgment
 As for the poor, and his condition, and his whole life, how full of trouble '
 In the summer he fails to earn his food, and in winter he warms himself over the fire-pot ²
 The dogs follow him wherever he goes, and any reviler, and he cannot repel him
 If he states his case, and proves himself wronged, the judge will not admit his plea
 Such, then, being the poor man's life, his fittest place is in the burial-ground ³

The Khaleefeh, when he heard his recitation, said to Jaafar, Observe this poor man, and consider these verses ; for they indicate his necessity. Then approaching the man, he said to him, O sheykh, what is thine occupation ?—O my master, answered the old man, I am a fisherman, and have a family to maintain, and I went forth from my house at noon, and have remained until now, but God hath allotted me nothing wherewith to obtain food for my household, therefore I have hated myself, and wished for death.—Wilt thou, said the Khaleefeh, return with us to the river, and station thyself on the bank of the Tigris, and cast thy net for my luck ? If thou wilt do so I will purchase of thee whatever cometh up for a hundred pieces of gold.—The fisherman rejoiced when he heard these words, and said, On my head be your commands. I will return with you.—So he went again to the river, and cast his net, and, having waited till it sank, drew the cords, and dragged back the net, and there came up in it a chest, locked and heavy. When the Khaleefeh saw it, he felt its weight, and found it to be heavy ; and he gave a hundred pieces of gold to the fisherman, who went away, while Mesroor, assisted by Jaafar, took up the chest, and conveyed it, in company with the Khaleefeh, to the palace, where they lighted the candles, and placed the chest before the Khaleefeh. Jaafar and Mesroor then broke it open, and they found in it a basket of palm-leaves sewed up with red worsted ; and they cut the threads, and saw within it a piece of carpet, and, lifting up this, they found beneath it an izar,⁴ and when they had taken up the izar they discovered under it a damsel like molten silver, killed, and cut in pieces.

When the Khaleefeh beheld this, tears ran down his cheeks, and, looking towards Jaafar, he exclaimed, O dog of Wezeers, shall people be murdered in my time, and be thrown into the river, and become

burdens upon my responsibility? By Allah, I must retaliate for this damsel upon him who killed her, and put him to death!—Then said he to Jaafar, By the truth of my descent from the Khaleefehs of the sons of El-'Abbás, if thou do not bring to me him who killed this woman, that I may avenge her upon him, I will crucify thee at the gate of my palace, together with forty of thy kinsmen!⁵ And the Khaleefeh was enraged.—Grant me, said Jaafar, a delay of three days.—I grant thee the delay, replied the Khaleefeh. Jaafar then went forth from his presence, and took his route through the city, sorrowful, and saying within himself, How shall I discover him who killed this damsel, that I may take him before the Khaleefeh? And if I take to him any other person, he will become a weight upon my conscience. I know not what to do.—For three days he remained in his house, and on the fourth day the Khaleefeh sent to summon him, and, when he had presented himself before him, said to him, Where is the murderer of the damsel?—O Prince of the Faithful, answered Jaafar, am I acquainted with things hidden from the senses, that I should know who is her murderer? The Khaleefeh, incensed at this answer, gave orders to crucify him at the gate of his palace, and commanded a crier to proclaim through the streets of Baghdád, Who-soever desireth to amuse himself by seeing the crucifixion of Jaafar El-Barmekkee, the Wezeer of the Khaleefeh, and the crucifixion of his kinsmen, at the gate of the Khaleefeh's palace, let him come forth and amuse himself.—So the people came forth from every quarter to see the crucifixion of Jaafar and his kinsmen, and they knew not the cause of this. The Khaleefeh then gave orders to set up the crosses; and they did so, and placed the Wezeer and his kinsmen beneath, to crucify them, and were awaiting the Khaleefeh's permission, while the people wept for Jaafar and his relatives.

But while they were thus waiting, a handsome and neatly-dressed young man came forward quickly through the crowd, and, approaching the Wezeer, said to him, Safety to thee from this predicament, O chief of Emceers, and refuge of the poor! It was I who killed the woman whom ye found in the chest: kill me therefore for her, and retaliate her death upon me.—When Jaafar heard these words, he rejoiced for his own deliverance, and grieved for the young man: but while he was speaking to him, lo, an old sheykh pressed hastily through the crowd to him and the young man, and, having saluted them, said, O Wezeer, believe not the words of this young man, for no one killed the damsel but myself; therefore retaliate her death upon

me. The young man, however, said, O Wezeer, this is an old man, imbecile through age; he knoweth not what he saith: it was I who killed her; avenge her therefore upon me.—O my son, said the sheykh, thou art young, and wilt find pleasure in the world; and I am old, and satiated with the world. I will be a ransom for thee and for the Wezeer and his kinsmen; and no one killed the damsel but myself: by Allah, therefore, hasten to retaliate upon me

On witnessing this scene, the Wezeer was astonished, and he took the young man and the sheykh to the Khaleefeh, and said, O Prince of the Faithful, the murderer of the damsel hath come.—Where is he? said the Khaleefeh. This young man, answered Jaafar, saith, I am the murderer,—and this sheykh accuseth him of falsehood, and saith, Nay, but *I* am the murderer.—The Khaleefeh, looking towards the sheykh and the young man, said, Which of you killed this damsel? The young man answered, No one killed her but myself—and the sheykh said also, No one killed her but myself. The Khaleefeh therefore said to Jaafar, Take them both and crucify them.—If the murderer be one, replied Jaafar, to kill the other would be unjust. The young man then said, By Him who raised the heavens and spread out the earth, it was I who killed the damsel—and he gave an account of the manner of his killing her, and described what the Khaleefeh had found. The Khaleefeh therefore was convinced that the young man was he who had killed the damsel; and he was astonished, and said, What was the cause of thy killing this damsel unjustly, and of thy confessing the murder without being beaten,^a and thy saying, Retaliate her death upon me? The young man answered as follows.—

Know, O Prince of the Faithful, that this damsel was my wife, and the daughter of my uncle: this sheykh was her father, and is my uncle. I married her when she was a virgin, and God blessed me with three male children by her, and she loved me and served me, and I saw in her no evil. At the commencement of this month she was attacked by a severe illness, and I brought to her the physicians, who attended her until her health returned to her; and I desired them to send her to the bath; but she said to me, I want something before I enter the bath, for I have a longing for it.—What is it? said I. She answered, I have a longing for an apple, to smell it, and take a bite from it. So I went out immediately into the city, and searched for the apple, and would have bought it had its price been a piece of gold: but I could not find one. I passed the next night full of

thought, and when the morning came I quitted my house again and went about to all the gardens, one after another ; yet I found none in them. There met me, however, an old gardener, of whom I inquired for the apple, and he said to me, O my son, this is a rare thing, and not to be found here, nor anywhere except in the garden of the Prince of the Faithful at El-Basrah, and preserved there for the Khaleefeh. I returned therefore to my wife, and my love for her so constrained me that I prepared myself and journeyed fifteen days, by night and day, in going and returning, and brought her three apples which I purchased of the gardener at El-Basrah for three pieces of gold ; and, going in, I handed them to her , but she was not pleased by them,



and left them by her side. She was then suffering from a violent fever, and she continued ill during a period of ten days.

After this she recovered her health, and I went out and repaired to my shop, and sat there to sell and buy ;⁷ and while I was thus occupied, at mid-day there passed by me a black slave, having in his hand an apple, with which he was playing : so I said to him, Whence didst thou get this apple, for I would procure one like it ?—Upon which he laughed, and answered, I got it from my sweetheart . I had been absent, and came, and found her ill, and she had three apples , and she said to me, My unsuspecting husband journeyed to El-Basrah for them, and bought them for three pieces of gold —and I took this apple from her.—When I heard the words of the slave, O Prince of the Faithful, the world became black before my face, and I shut up my shop, and returned to my house, deprived of my reason by excessive rage. I found not the third apple, and said to her, Where is the apple ? She answered, I know not whither it is gone. I was convinced thus that the slave had spoken the truth, and I arose, and took a knife, and throwing myself upon her bosom, plunged the knife into her . I then cut off her head and limbs, and put them in the basket in haste, and covered them with the izâr, over which I laid a piece of carpet . then I put the basket in the chest, and, having locked this, conveyed it on my mule, and threw it with my own hands into the Tigris.⁸

And now, continued the young man, I conjure thee by Allah, O Prince of the Faithful, to hasten my death in retaliation for her murder, as I dread, otherwise, her appeal for vengeance upon me on the day of resurrection⁹ for when I had thrown her into the Tigris without the knowledge of any one, I returned to my house, and found my eldest boy crying, though he knew not what I had done to his mother . so I said to him, What maketh thee cry ?—and he answered, I took one of the apples that my mother had, and went down with it into the street to play with my brothers, and a tall black slave snatched it from me, and said to me, Whence came this to thee ? I answered him, My father made a journey for it, and brought it from El-Basrah, for the sake of my mother ; for she is sick : he bought three apples for three pieces of gold—but he took it from me and beat me, and went away with it ; and I am afraid that my mother may beat me on account of the apple.—When I heard my son's story, I discovered that the slave had forged a lie against the daughter of my uncle, and found that she had been killed unjustly , and as I was weeping

bitterly for what I had done, this sheykh, my uncle and her father, came to me, and I informed him of the event ; and he seated himself by me, and wept. We wept until midnight, and continued our mourning for her five days, ceasing not to the present day to bewail her death. By the honour of thine ancestors, therefore, hasten my death, to retaliate her murder upon me.

The Khaleefeh wondered at the young man's story, and said, By Allah, I will not put to death any but the wicked slave ; for the young man is excusable. Then looking towards Jaafar, he said to him, Bring before me this wicked slave who hath been the cause of the catastrophe ; or, if thou bring him not, thou shalt be put to death in his stead. So the Wezeer departed weeping, and saying, Whence shall I bring him ? Not every time that the jar is struck doth it escape being broken ! I have no stratagem to employ in this affair but He who delivered me in the first case may deliver me in the second. By Allah, I will not go out from my house for three days, and the Truth, whose perfection be extolled, will do what He willeth !—So he remained in his house three days, and on the fourth day he caused the Kádée to be brought, and made his testamentary arrangements, and as he was bidding farewell to his children, and weeping, lo, the messenger of the Khaleefeh came and said to him, The Prince of the Faithful is in a most violent rage, and hath sent me to thee ; and he hath sworn that this day shall not pass until thou art put to death if thou do not bring to him the slave.

On hearing this, Jaafar wept, and his children wept with him, and when he had bidden them all farewell except his youngest daughter, he approached her for the same purpose. He loved her more than all his other children, and he pressed her to his bosom, and wept at the thought of his separation from her ; but, in doing this, he felt something round in her pocket, and said to her, What is in thy pocket ? She answered, O my father, it is an apple ; our slave Reyhan¹⁰ brought it, and I have had it four days. he would not give it me until he had received from me two pieces of gold.—At this mention of the slave and the apple, Jaafar rejoiced, and exclaimed, O ready Dispeller of trouble !¹¹—and immediately he ordered that the slave should be brought before him. He was therefore brought in, and he said to him, Whence came this apple ?—O my master, he answered, I went out five days ago, and, entering one of the by-streets of the city, I saw some children playing, and one of them had this apple ; and I snatched it from him, and beat him ; and he cried, and



said, That belongs to my mother, and she is sick · she wanted my father to bring her an apple, and he made a journey to El-Basrah, and brought back for her three apples which he bought for three pieces of gold ; and I took this to play with it .—then he cried again ; but, paying no regard to him, I took it away and brought it hither ; and my little mistress bought it of me for two pieces of gold —When he heard this story, Jaafar was filled with wonder at discovering that this distressing event, and the murder of the damsel, had been occasioned by his slave ; and he took the slave and went with him to the Khaleefeh, who ordered that the story should be committed to writing, and published.

Jaafar then said to him, Wonder not, O Prince of the Faithful, at his tale, for it is not more extraordinary than the story of the Wezeer

Noor-ed-Deen, and Shems-ed-Deen, his brother.—What story, said the Khaleefeh, can be more wonderful than this?—O Prince of the Faithful, replied Jaafar, I will not relate it to thee unless on the condition that thou exempt my slave from the punishment of death. The Khaleefeh said, I give thee his blood:—and Jaafar, thereupon, commenced the relation of the story as follows —

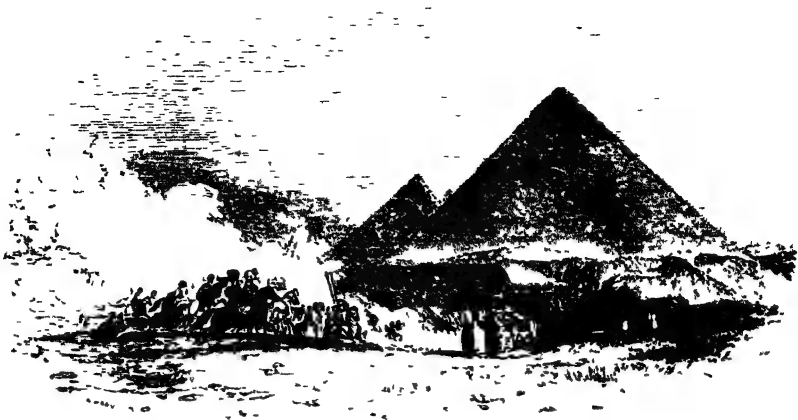
THE STORY OF NOOR-ED-DEEN AND HIS SON, AND OF SHEMS-
ED-DEEN AND HIS DAUGHTER

Know, O Prince of the Faithful, that there was, in Cairo,¹² a Sultán,¹³ just and beneficent, who had a wise and well-informed Wezeer, possessing a knowledge of the affairs of the world, and of the art of government. This minister was an aged man, and he had two sons, like two moons: the name of the elder was Shems-ed-Deen, and that of the younger, Noor-ed-Deen;¹⁴ and the latter was more distinguished than the former by handsomeness and comeliness: there was no one in his day more handsome, so that the fame of his charms spread through the neighbouring regions, and some of the inhabitants of those parts travelled to his country merely to obtain a sight of him. And it came to pass that their father died, and the Sultán mourned for him, and, turning his regards towards the two sons, took them into his favour, invested them with robes of honour, and said to them, Ye two are instated in your father's office —at which they rejoiced, and kissed the ground before him. They observed the ceremonies of mourning¹⁵ for their father during a period of a whole month, and entered upon the office of Wezeers, each of them discharging the duties of this station for a week at a time, and whenever the Sultán had a desire to go forth on a journey, he took one of them with him.

Now it happened, one night, that the Sultán purposed commencing a journey on the following morning, and it was the turn of the elder Wezeer to accompany him, and as the two brothers were conversing together that night, the elder said, O my brother, it is my wish that we should both marry on one night.—Do, O my brother, as thou desirest, answered the younger; and I will comply with that which thou shalt say. So they agreed to do this. The elder then said to his brother, If God so decree that we obtain the betrothal of two maidens, and accomplish our marriage on the same night, and they

give birth to children on the same day, and God will that thy wife have a son, and my wife have a daughter, we will marry them to each other, for they will be cousins.—And what, O my brother, said Noor-ed-Deen, wilt thou require of my son as the dowry of thy daughter? He answered, I will require of thy son, as the dowry of my daughter, three thousand pieces of gold, and three gardens, and three farms; for if the young man make any other contract than this, it will not be proper. But when Noor-ed-Deen heard this proposal, he exclaimed, What is this dowry that thou imposest upon my son? Dost thou not know that we are two brothers, and that we are both Wezeers, of one dignity? It were incumbent on thee to offer thy daughter to my son as a free gift, without any dowry, for thou knowest that the male is more honourable than the female, and my child is a male, and by him shall our memory be preserved not by thy daughter.—What sayest thou of her? asked his brother.—That our memory will not be preserved by her among the nobles, answered Noor-ed-Deen. But thou desirest, added he, to act with me according to the opinion of him who saith, If thou desire to drive away a person who would buy, demand of him a high price.—I see thee, replied Shems-ed-Deen, to have committed a fault, in making thy son more honourable than my daughter: thou art doubtless deficient in judgment, and destitute of good disposition, seeing that thou mentionest the partnership in the office of Wezeer, when I admitted thee not to share it with me excepting in my pity for thee, and that thou mightest assist me but talk as thou wilt: since thou hast said this, by Allah, I will not marry my daughter to thy son, though thou offer me her weight in gold.—On hearing these words of his brother, Noor-ed-Deen was enraged, and said, I will not marry my son to thy daughter.—I will not accept him as a husband for her, replied Shems-ed-Deen; and if I were not purposing a journey, I would do to thee deeds that should serve as warnings to others: however, when I return, God will do what He willeth.—When Noor-ed-Deen heard this, he was full of anger, and became unconscious of existence: but he concealed his feelings; and each of the two brothers passed the night apart from the other; and in the morning the Sultán set out on his journey, and, crossing over to the island,¹⁶ proceeded towards the Pyramids, accompanied by the Wezeer Shems-ed-Deen.

Noor-ed-Deen passed that night in a state of the utmost rage; and when the morning came he arose, and, having performed the morning-prayers, went to his closet and took out from it a pair of small saddle-bags, which he filled with gold; and as he reflected upon the words of



his brother, and the contempt which he had shewn him, and the pride that he had manifested towards him, he repeated these verses :—

Travel—Thou wilt find a friend in the place of him thou leavest, and fatigue thyself, for by labour are the sweets of life obtained
 To a man of intelligence and education there is no glory in a constant residence—therefore quit thy native place and go abroad
 I have observed that the stagnation of water corrupteth it, if it floweth, it becometh sweet, but otherwise, it doth not
 If the full moon never set the eye of the contemplative would not on every occasion pay regard to it
 The lion, if they left not the forest, would capture no prey, and the arrow if it quitted not the bow, would not strike the mark
 The grains of gold upon their native bed are regarded as mere dust, and the alow-wood, where it groweth, is a kind of firewood
 If exported, it becometh an object of high demand, but if not, it attaineth no kind of distinction

He then ordered one of his young men to saddle for him a dapple mule, tall, and of quick pace, and he did so, placing upon her a saddle adorned with gold, with stirrups of Indian steel, and housings of the velvet of Ispahán, and she resembled a bride displayed before her husband. He ordered him also to place upon her a carpet of silk, and a prayer-carpet,¹⁷ and to put the saddle-bags beneath the latter, and when this was done, he said to the young man and the slaves, I have a desire to take a ride for my amusement outside the city, towards the province of Kalyoob, and shall be absent three nights, and let none of you follow me, for my heart is contracted.

Having thus said, he mounted his mule in haste, and, taking with him a small supply of food, departed from the city, turning his face towards the open country. The hour of noon overtook him not until

he entered the city of Bilbeys, where he alighted to repose himself and rest his mule, and ate; after which he took from this place what he required for himself, and some provender for his mule, and, having placed these provisions upon her, went forth again into the plain, and before noon on the second following day, he entered Jerusalem.¹⁸ Here he alighted again, and rested himself and his beast, and ate: he then placed his saddle-bags under his head, and spread his carpet, and slept, still overcome by anger. He passed the night in this place; and in the morning he remounted, and he continued to urge on his mule until he arrived at Aleppo,¹⁹ where he alighted at a Khán, and remained three days to give rest to himself and his mule, and to enjoy the air of the place: which having done, he determined to prosecute



his journey, and mounted his mule, and went forth. He knew not whither to direct his course; but travelled on until he arrived at the city of El-Basrah; and scarcely was he aware that the night had overtaken him, when he alighted there at a Khán, where he took off the saddle-bags from the mule, and spread the prayer-carpet, committing the mule, with her equipage, to the care of the door-keeper, and ordering him to walk her about a little.

The door-keeper did so; and it happened that the Wezeer of El-Basrah, sitting at a window of his palace, saw the mule, and, observing her costly equipage, thought that she must belong to some Wezeer or King; and as he attentively regarded her he was surprised, and said to one of his pages, Bring before me that door-keeper. So the page went and brought him; and the door-keeper, approaching, kissed the ground before him. The Wezeer, who was an aged person, then said to this man, Who is the owner of this mule, and what is his appearance?—O my lord, answered the door-keeper, her owner is a young man of elegant person, of the sons of the merchants, and of a dignified and grave aspect. On hearing this, the Wezeer arose, and, mounting his horse,^m went to the Khán, and introduced himself to the young man, who, as soon as he saw him approaching, rose to meet him, and embraced him. The Wezeer, after he had alighted from his horse, saluted him and welcomed him, and, seating him by his side, said to him, Whence, O my son, hast thou come, and for what purpose?—O my lord, answered Noor-ed-Deen, I have come from the city of Cairo: my father was Wezeer there; and he hath departed to receive the mercy of God;—and he informed him of all that had happened to him from first to last, adding, I have determined that I will not return until I shall have seen all the cities and countries of the world.—O my son, replied the Wezeer, obey not the suggestions of thy mind, lest thou expose thyself to destruction, for the countries are waste, and I fear on thy account the issues of fortune. So saying, he ordered that the saddle-bags should be placed again on the mule, together with the carpet of silk and the prayer-carpet, and took Noor-ed-Deen with him to his house, where he lodged him in an elegant apartment, and treated him with honour and kindness, and, conceiving a strong affection for him, said to him, O my son, I have become an old man, and I have no male child; God, however, hath blessed me with a daughter who resembleth thee in comeliness, and I have rejected many persons who have been her suitors: but now, love for thee hath entered my heart; wilt thou then take my daughter as thy hand-maid to serve thee, and

be her husband? If thou consent to this, I will go up to the Sultán of El-Basrah, and will say to him, This is the son of my brother;—and I will introduce thee to him, that I may make thee Wezeer in my place, and I will remain in my house; for I am now aged.—Noor-ed-Deen, on hearing this proposal of the Wezeer of El-Basrah, hung down his head, and then answered, **I hear and obey.**

The Wezeer rejoiced at his assent, and ordered his servants to prepare for him a repast, and to decorate the great saloon²¹ which was furnished for the reception of the chiefs of the Emeers. He then called together his friends, and invited the great officers of the state, and the merchants of El-Basrah, and when they had come into his presence, he said to them, I had a brother who was Wezeer in the land of Egypt, and God blessed him with two sons, and me, as ye know, He hath blessed with a daughter now my brother enjoined me to marry my daughter to one of his sons, and I consented to do so, and when she attained a fit age for marriage, he sent to me one of his sons, who is this young man here present. As soon, therefore, as he had come, I desired to perform the marriage-contract between him and my daughter, and that he should introduce himself to her here in my house.—Excellent! hast thou done? they replied. They then drank sherbet of sugar, and the pages sprinkled rose-water upon them, and they departed after which, the Wezeer ordered his servants to conduct Noor-en-Deen to the bath, and gave him a suit of his best clothes,²² and sent to him the napkins and cups and perfuming-vessels, and everything else that he required. So when he came out from the bath, he put on the suit of clothes, and appeared like the full moon; and he mounted his mule, and, returning to the palace, alighted and presented himself before the Wezeer, and kissed his hand: and the Wezeer welcomed him, saying, Arise, and introduce thyself this night to thy



wife ; and to-morrow I will go up with thee to the Sultán, and I pray that God may bless thee with every kind of happiness. Noor-ed-Deen therefore arose, and went to his wife, the daughter of the Wezeer.— Thus did it happen to Noor-ed-Deen.

As to his brother, he continued a while journeying with the Sultán, and when he returned, and found not his brother, he inquired of the servants respecting him, and they answered, On the day of thy departure with the Sultán, he mounted his mule, caparisoned as for a procession of state, and said, I am going towards the province of Kalyoob, and shall be absent a day or two days ; for my heart is contracted ; therefore let none of you follow me.—and from the day on which he went forth, to the present day, we have heard no tidings of him. Upon this the heart of Shems-ed-Deen was troubled at the separation of his brother, and he grieved excessively for his loss, saying within himself, The cause of this is nothing else than my having spoken harshly to him in my conversation on the night before my departure with the Sultán ; and probably his mind was disturbed, and he went on a journey : I must therefore send after him. He then went up and related this event to the Sultán, who wrote letters and sent them to his vicegerents in all the provinces : but Noor-ed-Deen had traversed distant regions during the absence of his brother with the Sultán : therefore the messengers, when they had gone with the letters, returned without having obtained any information respecting him. So Shems-ed-Deen despaired of his brother, and said, I have enraged my brother by what I said to him concerning the marriage of the children. Would that I had not done so ! This was not occasioned but by my want of sense and judgment !—And soon after this, he demanded in marriage the daughter of one of the merchants of Cairo, and performed the marriage-contract between himself and her, and introduced himself to her—and it happened that the night when this event took place was the same night on which Noor-ed-Deen introduced himself to his wife, the daughter of the Wezeer of El-Basrah : this being in accordance with the will of God, whose name be exalted, that He might execute his decree upon his creatures.

The event was as they both had said : for it came to pass that the two wives conceived by them : the wife of Shems-ed-Deen, the Wezeer of Egypt, gave birth to a daughter, than whom there was not seen, in that country, one more beautiful ; and the wife of Noor-ed-Deen gave birth to a son, one more beautiful than whom was not seen in his time : as the poet hath said :—

If beauty came to be compared with him, it would hang down its head in shame
 Or if it were said, O beauty, hast thou seen the like?—it would answer, The
 equal of this I have not

So they named him Hasan;²⁰ and on the seventh day after his birth, they made entertainments and spread repasts such as were fit for the sons of Kings:²¹ after which the Wezeer of El-Basrah took with him Noor-ed-Deen, and went up with him to the Sultán; and when he came into his presence he kissed the ground before him; and Noor-ed-Deen, being eloquent in tongue, and firm of heart, and comely in person and in actions, recited these words of the poet:—

This is he whose justice extendeth to all men, and who hath overrun and subdued every region.

Be thankful for his benefits, for they are not mere benefits, but they are strings of jewels on the necks of his people

And kiss his fingers, for they are not mere fingers, but they are the keys of the supplies of Providence

The Sultán treated them both with honour, and, having thanked Noor-ed-Deen for his address, said to his Wezeer, Who is this young man? The Wezeer therefore related to him his story from beginning to end, and added, This is the son of my brother.—How is it, said the Sultán, that he is the son of thy brother, and we have not before heard of him? The Wezeer answered, O our lord the Sultán, I had a brother who was Wezeer in the land of Egypt, and he died, leaving two sons: the elder succeeded to his father's office, as Wezeer, and this his younger son came to me; and I swore that I would not marry my daughter to any but him. so, when he came, I married him to her. He is a young man, and I am now aged; my hearing is impaired, and my judgment faileth. it is my wish, therefore, that our lord the Sultán would instate him in my office, seeing that he is the son of my brother and the husband of my daughter, and a person worthy of the dignity of Wezeer; for he is endowed with knowledge and judgment.—The Sultán, upon this, looked towards him, and, being pleased with him, approved of the advice of the Wezeer that he should promote him to that office; so he bestowed it upon him, and ordered that a magnificent dress of honour should be given to him, and one of the best of the mules upon which he was himself accustomed to ride, allotting him also supplies and salaries; and Noor-ed-Deen kissed the hand of the Sultán, and descended with his father-in-law to their house, both in high delight, and saying, Verily the birth of this child is fortunate. On the following day Noor-ed-Deen went again to the King, and kissed the ground, and the Sultán ordered him to sit in the place of

the Wezeer : so he sat, and occupied himself with the affairs of his office, and examined the cases of the people, and their suits, according to the custom of Wezeers : and the Sultán, observing him, was surprised at his conduct, and the acuteness of his understanding, and his good judgment. He attentively considered his qualities, and loved him, and advanced him in his favour : and when the court was dissolved, Noor-ed-Deen returned to his house, and related what had passed to his father-in-law, who was rejoiced at hearing it.

The old Wezeer ceased not to superintend the rearing of the child, who was named Hasan, for many days, while Noor-ed-Deen was constantly occupied with the affairs of his office, so that he left not the Sultán by day nor by night ; and the King increased his salaries and supplies until his circumstances became ample : he had ships which made voyages under his orders with merchandise and other things, and he founded numerous estates, and made water-wheels²⁵ and gardens. Thus did he until his son Hasan was four years of age, when the old Wezeer, the father of his wife, died : and he conveyed his corpse with great pomp, and decently deposited it in the earth. He then turned his thoughts towards the education of his son ; and when the child had gained strength, he brought him a tutor to teach him in his own house, charging him to instruct him and educate him well, and the tutor did so, and taught him various useful sciences, after he had passed some years in learning the Kur-án. Hasan meanwhile increased in loveliness and beauty, and elegance of person. The tutor continued



to educate him in his father's palace; and from the time that he arrived at adolescence he went not out of the Wezeer's palace, until his father took him one day, and, having clad him in one of the richest of his dresses, mounted him on one of his best mules, and conducted him to the Sultán, and introduced him. When the King beheld Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen,²⁶ the son of the Wezeer Noor-ed-Deen, he was astonished at his beauty; and the people, when he passed by them for the first time, going up with his father to the King, were amazed at his surpassing beauty and loveliness, and elegance of person. The Sultán, as soon as he saw him, loved him, and bestowed marks of favour upon him, and said to his father, O Wezeer, thou must bring him with thee every day. The Wezeer answered, I hear and obey;—and returned with his son to his abode, and he continued every day to go up with him to the Sultán until the youth attained the age of fifteen years.

His father, the Wezeer Noor-ed-Deen, then fell sick; and called him into his presence, and said to him, O my son, know that this world is a perishable abode, and the world to come is an everlasting abode. I wish to give thee some precepts, and do thou understand what I am about to say to thee, and incline thy heart to it.—And he began to counsel him respecting the proper mode of conducting himself in society, and the due management of his affairs, and when he had done so, he reflected upon his brother and his native place and country, and wept at the thought of his separation from those he loved, his tears flowing: and he said, O my son, hear my words. I have a brother²⁷ in Cairo, and I quitted him and departed against his will.—He then took a piece of paper,²⁸ and wrote upon it all that had happened to him from first to last, together with the date of his marriage and introduction to the daughter of the Wezeer, and the date of his arrival at El-Basrah and his interview with its Wezeer; and, having added some strict admonition, he said to his son, Keep this charge, for the paper on which it is written containeth an account of thine origin and thy rank and lineage; and if any evil accident befall thee, repair to Cairo, and inquire for thine uncle, and salute him, and inform him that I died in a strange land, ardently desiring that I could see him. Therefore Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen took the paper, and, having folded it, and wrapped it in a piece of waxed cloth,²⁹ sewed it between the lining and the outer cloth of his cap,³⁰ and wept for his father, that he should be parted from him in his youth.

Noor-ed-Deen then said to his son,³¹ I charge thee that thou be

not familiar with any one ; for in retirement is security. Divinely gifted was the poet who said,—

There is none in thy time whose friendship thou shouldst covet ; nor any intimate who, when fortune is treacherous, will be faithful
Live then apart, and rely upon no man · I have given thee, in these words, good advice, and sufficient.

Accustom thyself to taciturnity : occupy thyself with thine own affairs, and use not many words : for the poet saith,—

Taciturnity is an ornament, and in silence is security · therefore, when thou speakest, be not loquacious
For if thou repent once of thy silence, thou wilt assuredly repent many times of thy speech.

Beware of drinking wine ; for it is the source of every kind of mischief. The poet^{ss} saith on this subject,—

I have abandoned wine and those who drink it , and have become the friend of such as condemn it
Wine leadeth astray from the path of rectitude, and openeth the doors to evil.

Hate no man, and oppress none ; for oppression is base. The poet saith,—

Oppress not if thou hast the power to do so, for oppression will eventually bring thee repentance
Thine eye will sleep while the oppressed, wakeful, will call for vengeance upon thee , and the eye of God sleepeth not

Despise thy wealth, but not thyself . yet bestow not wealth save upon him who serveth it. If thou keep it, it will keep thee ; but if thou squander it, it will ruin thee , and then wilt thou need the assistance of the least of mankind. It hath been said by the poet,—

When my wealth faileth, no friend assisteth me , but when it aboundeth, all men are my friends
How many enemies for the sake of wealth have consorted with me ! And my companion, in the time of want, hath abandoned me !

In this manner he continued to admonish his son Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen until his spirit departed. The house became a scene of mourning, and the Sultán and all the Emeers grieved for him ; and they buried him. They continued their mourning during a period of two months, and the son of Noor-ed-Deen rode not out nor went to the court nor presented himself before the Sultán ; and the King instated one of the Chamberlains in his place, and appointed a new Wezeer in the place of his father, and ordered this Wezeer to put seals upon all the houses of Noor-ed-Deen, and upon his wealth and all his buildings and other possessions.⁴ So the new Wezeer went with the Chamber-



lams to the house of the Wezeer Noor-ed-Deen, to seal its door and to arrest his son Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen, and bring him before the Sultán, that he might do to him what his judgment required. But there was among the troops one of the memlooks of the deceased Wezeer Noor-ed-Deen; and he could not endure that the son of his master should be thus treated—he therefore repaired to Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen, whom he found with downcast head and mourning heart, on account of the death of his father, and acquainted him with what had passed. Hasan asked him, Will the execution of the order be delayed long enough for me to enter my house,“ and take somewhat of my worldly possessions by which to obtain support during my exile? But the memlook answered, Save thyself:—and when Hasan heard these words, he covered his head with the skirt of his robe, and, going forth on foot, fled out of the city. and he heard the people saying, The Sultán hath sent the new Wezeer to the house of the deceased Wezeer, to seal his wealth and other possessions, and to arrest his son Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen, and bring him before him that he may put him to death.—and the people were mourning for him on account of his beauty and loveliness. So when he heard what they said, he took a course that he had not intended, and, not knowing whither to go, walked on until destiny urged him to the tomb of his father.

Entering the burial-ground, he bent his way among the tombs until he seated himself at that of his father, where he removed his skirt from over his head. And as he was sitting there, a Jew of El-Basrah approached, and said to him, Wherefore, O my master, do I see thee thus changed? He answered, I was just now sleeping, and I beheld my father reproaching me for having failed to visit his tomb.

wherefore I rose in alarm, fearing that the day would pass without my visiting it, and so the occurrence would distress me. The Jew then said to him, O my master, thy father despatched some vessels with merchandise, and some of them have returned ; and it is my wish to purchase of thee the cargo of every vessel that hath arrived for a thousand pieces of gold,—and so saying, he took out a purse filled with gold, and counted out from it a thousand pieces, which he paid to Hasan the son of the Wezeer, and said to him, Write me a paper, and seal it. So Hasan took a paper, and wrote upon it, The writer of this paper, Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen, the son of the Wezeer Noor-ed-Deen, hath sold to the Jew such a one the whole cargo of every one of his father's vessels that hath returned from her voyage, for a thousand pieces of gold, and hath received the price in advance. And after he had taken a copy³³ of it, the Jew went away with the paper ; and Hasan wept, reflecting upon his former state of dignity and favour. At length the night closed in upon him, and sleep overtook him, and he remained asleep at his father's tomb until the moon rose when his head rolled from the tomb, and he lay and slept on his back, his face shining in the moonlight

Now the burial-ground was inhabited by believing Jinn ; and a Jinneeyeh, coming forth, saw the face of Hasan as he lay asleep, and when she beheld him, was surprised at his beauty and loveliness, and exclaimed, Extolled be Allah's perfection ! This youth is like none but the virgins of paradise !—She then soared into the air, to perform her accustomed circuits, and saw an 'Efreet on his flight. She saluted him, and he returned her salutation, and she said to him, Whence comest thou ? He answered from Cairo—and she said to him, Wilt thou go with me to behold the beauty of the youth who is sleeping in the burial-ground ? He replied, Yes. So they went together, and when they had descended into the burial-ground, she said to him, Hast thou seen in the course of thy life a person like this ?—And the 'Efreet looked upon him, and exclaimed, Extolled be the perfection of Him unto whom none is to be compared ! But, O my sister, he added, if thou desire, I will relate to thee what I have seen.—Tell me, she replied : so he said, I have seen a person resembling this youth in the land of Egypt ; and that person is the daughter of the Wezeer. The King had heard of her, and demanded her of her father, the Wezeer Shems-ed-Deen, in marriage ; but he answered him, O our lord the Sultán, accept my excuse, and pity my grief ; for thou knowest that my brother Noor-ed-Deen departed from us, and we know not



where he is ; and that he shared with me the office of Wezeer ; and the cause of his departure was this, that I was sitting conversing with him on the subject of marriage, and he was angry with me, and in anger went away :—and he related to the King all that had passed between them ; adding, This was the cause of his indignation, and I have been under an oath that I will not marry my daughter to any but the son of my brother from the day that her mother gave birth to her ; and that was about fifteen years ago : and lately I heard that my brother had married the daughter of the Wezeer of El-Basrah, and obtained a son by her ; and I will not marry my daughter to any but him, in honour of my brother. After I had heard this, I recorded the

date of my marriage, and of my wife's conception, and of the birth of this daughter: she is intended for the son of her uncle; and of other maidens there are plenty.—But when the Sultán heard these words of the Wezeer, he was violently enraged, and said, How is it that such a one as myself demandeth in marriage a daughter from one like thee, and thou withholdest her from him, and excusest thyself by an absurd pretext? By my head, I will not marry her but to one of less consideration than myself, in scorn of thy pride!—And the King had a humpbacked groom, with a hump before and a hump behind; and he ordered him to be brought, and affianced him to the daughter of the Wezeer, commanding that he should introduce himself to her this night, and be conducted in pompous procession. I left him in the midst of the memlooks of the Sultán, who were surrounding him with lighted candles in their hands, laughing at him and mocking him, at the door of the bath, while the daughter of the Wezeer was sitting weeping in the midst of the dye-women⁴⁶ and tire-women.⁴⁷ She resembles more than any other person this youth. They have prohibited her father from going to her; and I have never seen, O my sister, a more ugly wretch than this humpback: but as to the maiden, she is more beautiful than this youth.

To this story of the 'Efreet, the Jinneyeh answered, Thou liest, for this youth is the most beautiful of the people of his age. But the 'Efreet replied, By Allah, O my sister, the maiden is more beautiful than he: however, none but he is suited to her, for they resemble each other, and probably are brother and sister, or cousins; and how will she be thrown away upon this humpback! She therefore said to him, O my brother, let us place ourselves beneath him and lift him up and take him to the maiden of whom thou speakest, and see which of the two is more beautiful. The 'Efreet answered, I hear and obey: this proposal is right, and there can be no better determination than this which thou hast chosen; therefore I will carry him. So he lifted him up, and soared into the sky, and the Jinneyeh flew by his side until he descended with him in the city of Cairo, where he placed him upon a mastabah,⁴⁸ and roused him from his sleep.⁴⁹

When, therefore, he awoke, and found that he was not at his father's tomb in the land of El-Basrah, he looked to the right and left, and perceived that he was in a city that was not El-Basrah, and would have cried out, but the 'Efreet winked to him, and, lighting for him a candle, said to him, Know that I have brought thee hither, and I desire to do thee a service for the sake of God: take, therefore, this



candle, and go with it to yonder bath, and mix with the people there, and proceed with them until thou arrivest at the saloon of the bride; then go before, and enter the saloon, and fear no one; and when thou hast entered, station thyself on the right of the humpbacked bridegroom; and whenever the tire-women and singing-women and dye-women come to thee, put thy hand into thy pocket: thou wilt find it full of gold, and do thou take it by the handful and throw it to them; and imagine not that thou wilt put thy hand in and not find it filled with gold: give therefore to every one who cometh to thee by the handful, and fear nothing; but rely upon Him who created thee; for this will not be through thine own strength or power, but through the strength of God, and his power.

On hearing these words of the 'Efreet, Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen said, What is this event, and what manner of kindness is this? And he went with his candle to the bath, where he found the humpback mounted on his horse; and he joined himself to the party, in the

same garb in which he had arrived, and with the same comely appearance ; being attired with a *tarboosh*⁴⁰ and turban, and a *farajecyeh*⁴¹ interwoven with gold. He proceeded with the pompous train, and every time that the singing-women stopped for the people to give them money, he put his hand into his pocket, and found it filled with gold, and took it by the handful and threw it into the tambourine,⁴² for the singing-women and tire-women, filling the tambourine with pieces of gold. and the singing-women were amazed, and the people wondered at his beauty and loveliness. Thus he continued to do until they arrived at the house of the Wezeer, when the chamberlains drove back the people, and prevented their entrance ; but the singing-women and tire-women said, By Allah, we will not enter unless this youth enter with us, for he hath overwhelmed us with his favours, and the bride shall not be displayed unless he be present —and upon this they entered with him into the saloon of the festivity, and seated him, in spite of the humpbacked bridegroom. All the ladies of the Emceers and Wezeers and Chamberlains were ranged in two rows, each lady holding a large lighted candle, and having her head-veil drawn across the lower part of her face : thus they stood in two rows, to the right and the left, from the foot of the couch of the bride to the upper end of the *leewán* that adjoined the chamber from which the bride was to come forth. And when the ladies beheld Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen and his beauty and loveliness, his face shining like the crescent of the moon, the hearts of all of them inclined to him, and the female singers said to all the women who were present, Know that this charming youth hath given us nothing but red gold ; therefore fail not to serve him properly, and obey him in whatever he shall say. The women crowded round him to gaze at his charms, and their minds were overpowered by astonishment at his beauty, and each of them wished that she might be in his bosom for a year or a month or an hour : they removed the veils from their faces, and their hearts were perplexed, and they said, Joy to the person to whom this youth belongeth, or to the person over whom he is lord ! Then they imprecated evil upon the humpbacked groom and him who was the cause of his marriage to that lovely maiden ; and every time that they prayed for blessings upon Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen, they imprecated misfortunes upon the humpback.

The singing-women then beat the tambourines, and the tire-women approached with the daughter of the Wezeer in the midst of them. They had perfumed her with sweet scents and essences, and clad her, and adorned her hair and neck with various ornaments,

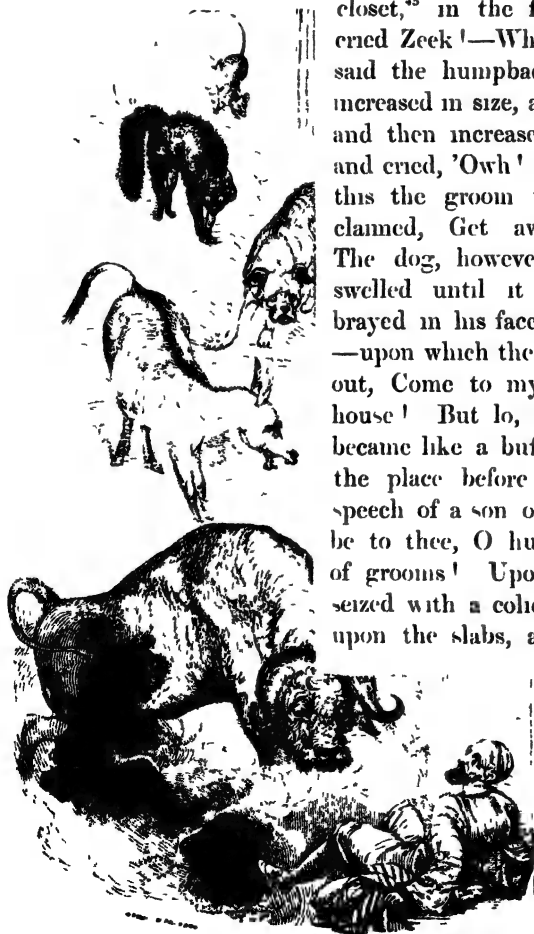
decking her with garments such as were worn by the ancient monarchs of Persia. Among these was a loose gown embroidered with red gold, presenting the forms of wild beasts and birds, hanging down over her other clothes; and round her neck was a necklace worth thousands, composed of jewels such as neither a King of El-Yemen nor a Cæsar ever collected: she was like the moon shining in its fourteenth night, and when she approached she resembled a Hooreeyeh.⁴⁸ Extolled be the perfection of him who created her so splendid a being! The women encompassed her, and appeared like stars; she, in the midst of them, being as the moon when the clouds have withdrawn from before it. Meanwhile, Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen remained sitting, with the company gazing at him; and as the bride approached with a dignified and graceful gait, the humpbacked groom rose to her, to kiss her; but she turned aside from him, and went and stood before Hasan, the son of her uncle. The company laughed at this; and when they beheld her turn towards Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen, and saw him put his hand into his pocket and take out handfuls of gold and throw it into the tambourine of the singing-women, they were delighted, and said, We wish that this bride were thine:—and he smiled. All this time the humpbacked groom was alone, looking like an ape; and every time that they lighted his candle it went out again, and he was confounded, and remained sitting in the dark, full of secret indignation, with all the company surrounding him, while the lighted candles presented an appearance of beauty that was most admirable, so that every person of reflection was amazed at their splendour. But as to the bride, she raised her hands towards heaven, and said, O Allah, make this to be my husband, and relieve me from this humpbacked groom!—The tire-women then proceeded to display the bride in different dresses, to the seventh suit, before Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen of El-Başrah, the humpbacked groom remaining alone; and when they had finished this ceremony they gave permission to the company to depart: so all who were present at the festivity, both women and children, went out, except Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen and the humpbacked groom; after which the tire-women conducted the bride to an inner chamber, to take off her ornaments and outer robes, and to prepare her for the bridegroom's visit.

Upon this, the humpbacked groom approached Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen, and said to him, O my master, thou hast made us happy by thy company this night, and overwhelmed us with thy favours; but now wherefore dost thou not rise and go to thy house without thy being

ejected? He answered, In the name of Allah;—and rose, and went out from the door: but the 'Efreet met him, and said unto him, Stay, O Bedr-ed-Deen; and when the humpback retires into the private closet, enter thou and seat thyself in the bride-chamber; and when the bride cometh, say to her, I am thy husband; and the King had not recourse to this stratagem from any other motive than his fearing for thee the effect of the eye;⁴⁴ and this whom thou hast seen is one of our grooms:—then approach her, and uncover her face, and fear no evil from any one.

While Bedr-ed-Deen was thus conversing with the 'Efreet, lo, the groom entered the closet, and seated himself; and immediately the 'Efreet rose before him, from the trough of water that was in the

closet,⁴⁵ in the form of a mouse, and cried Zeek!—What brought thee here? said the humpback. The mouse then increased in size, and became like a cat; and then increased, and became a dog, and cried, 'Owh! 'Owh! At the sight of this the groom was terrified, and exclaimed, Get away, thou unlucky!⁴⁶ The dog, however, still increased and swelled until it became an ass, and brayed in his face, crying, Hák! Hák!—upon which the groom, in terror, cried out, Come to my aid, O people of the house! But lo, the ass increased, and became like a buffalo, and, stopping up the place before him, spoke with the speech of a son of Adam, and said, Wo be to thee, O humpback! O filthiest of grooms! Upon this the groom was seized with a colick, and seated himself upon the slabs, and his teeth knocked together. The 'Efreet then said to him, Hath the earth become narrow to thee, that thou wouldst marry none but my mistress? But the groom was silent.





slabs, and his feet upwards, said to him, Remain here, and I will watch thee until sunrise.—Thus did it happen to the humpback.

Now, as to Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen of El-Basrah, he left the humpback and the 'Efreet contending together, and, entering the house, seated himself in the bride-chamber; and lo, the bride approached, accompanied by an old woman, who stopped at the door of the chamber, and said, O Abou-Shiháb,⁴⁷ rise, and take thy bride; and I commend thee to the care of Allah. Then the old woman went away, and the bride, whose name was Sitt-el-Ihsn,⁴⁸ advanced to the upper end of the chamber. Her heart was broken, and she said within herself, By Allah, I will not suffer him to caress me though my spirit depart from me! But when she had proceeded to the upper end of the chamber, she beheld Bedr-ed-Deen, and said, My beloved, until this hour art thou remaining? I had said within myself, perhaps thou and the humpbacked groom are to share me between you.—What, said he, should give

Return me an answer, said the 'Efreet, or I will make thine abode to be in the dust!—By Allah, then answered the groom, I am not in fault; for they compelled me, and I knew not that she had a lover among the buffaloes; but now I repent before Allah and before thee. Then the 'Efreet said, I swear by Allah that if thou depart now from this place, or utter a word before the sun hath risen, I will slay thee: and when the sun hath risen go thy way, and never return to this house. And he seized the humpbacked groom, and, placing his head upside



the groom access to thee, and wherefore should he be my partner in the possession of thee?—Who, then, she asked, is my husband? Thou or he?—O my mistress, answered Bedr-ed-Deen, we did not this for any other purpose than to make a jest of him, and that we might laugh at him; for when the tire-women and the singing-women and thy family beheld thine admirable beauty, they feared for us the effect of the eye, and thy father hired him for ten pieces of gold, in order that he might divert from us the eye; and now he hath departed. When Sitt-el-Hosn heard these words of Bedr-ed-Deen, she smiled, and uttered a gentle laugh, and said, By Allah, thou hast extinguished my fire! Take me then, I conjure thee, and press me to thy bosom.—And they embraced each other.

Not long after this, the 'Efreet said to the Jinneeyeh, Arise, and place thyself beneath the youth, and let us convey him back, lest the morning overtake us; for the time is near. So she advanced towards him, and, placing herself beneath his skirt, as he lay asleep, took him up, and flew away with him, in the state in which she found him, clad only in his shirt, and pursued her flight with the 'Efreet by her side. But God gave permission to some angels to cast at the 'Efreet a shooting-star of fire, and he was burnt. The Jinneeyeh, however, escaped unhurt, and deposited Bedr-ed-Deen in the place over which the shooting-star had burnt the 'Efreet. She would not pass beyond it, fearing for his safety; and as destiny had appointed, this place was Damascus: so she placed him by one of the gates of this city, and flew away.

When daylight therefore came, and the gates were opened, the people, coming forth, beheld a beautiful youth clad in his shirt, and with a cotton skull-cap without a turban. In consequence of his having been so long wakeful, he was now immersed in sleep; and when the people saw him, some said, Would that he had waited till he had put on his clothes!—another said, Objects of pity are the children of men of condition! Probably this youth hath just come forth from his drinking-place, on account of some business, and intoxication hath overcome him, and he hath wandered from the place to which he would go until he arrived at the gate of the city, and, finding it locked, hath slept here.—They had expressed various opinions respecting him, and were wondering at his case, when Bedr-ed-Deen awoke. Perceiving that he was at the gate of a city, and surrounded by men, he was astonished, and said, Where am I, O good people; and what is the cause of your assembling around me, and what hath befallen me



among you? They answered, We saw thee at the call to morning-prayer lying at this gate asleep; and we know nothing more of thy case. Where wast thou sleeping this last night?—By Allah, O people, he replied, I was sleeping this last night in Cairo.—On hearing this, one of them said, Dost thou eat hashcesh?²⁴⁹ Another said, Thou art mad. How couldst thou be passing the night in Cairo, and be sleeping in the morning at the city of Damascus?—He said to them, By Allah, O good people, I will tell you no falsehood: I was last night in the land of Egypt, and the day before I was at El-Basrah. One of them said, This is a wonderful thing! Another said, This youth is mad. And they clapped their hands at him, and, conversing together, said, Alas, for his youth! By Allah, there is no denying his madness!—They then said to him, Return to thy reason. But he replied, I was yesterday a bridegroom in the land of Egypt.—Probably thou hast dreamt, said they, and hast seen this of which thou speakest

in thy sleep. And Hasan was confounded, and said, By Allah, this was not a dream : and where is the humpbacked groom who was sitting with us, and the purse of gold that I had ? And where are my clothes and my drawers ?—He then rose, and entered the city, and proceeded through its great thoroughfare-streets and market-streets ; and the people crowded round him and paraded him : so he entered the shop of a cook. Now this cook was a robber,⁵⁰ whom God had caused to repent of his unlawful actions, and he had opened a cook's shop ; and all the people of Damascus feared him on account of his boldness ; therefore, when they saw that the youth had entered this shop, they left him, being afraid.

When the cook beheld Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen, and observed his beauty and comeliness, love for him entered his heart, and he said to him, Whence art thou, O young man ? Relate to me thy story ; for thou art become dearer to me than my soul.—So he related to him all that had happened, from beginning to end and the cook said to him, O my master Bedr-ed-Deen, know that this is a wonderful event and an extraordinary story ; but, O my son, conceal thy case until God dispel thy trouble, and remain with me in this place, and as I have not a son, I will adopt thee as such. Bedr-ed-Deen replied, Let it be as thou desirest, O uncle. And immediately the cook went out to the mart, and bought for Bedr-ed-Deen costly clothes, and put them on him. he then went to the Kádee, and made a declaration that he was his adopted son.⁵¹ so Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen became known throughout the city of Damascus as the son of the cook, and he sat with him in the shop to receive the money, and in this situation he remained.

Now as to Sitt-el-Hosn, when daybreak came and she awoke, she found not Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen remaining with her, and, imagining that he would soon return, she sat a while expecting him ; and lo, her father came in to her, troubled at that which had befallen him from the Sultán, and at his having married his daughter by force to one of his servants, the humpbacked groom ; and he said within himself, I will kill this girl if she have suffered the wretch to caress her. So he advanced to the bride-chamber, and, stopping at the door, said, O Sitt-el-Hosn ! She answered, Well, O my master !—and came forth to him, walking with a vacillating gait, through joy, and kissed the ground before him ; and her countenance beamed with increased splendour in consequence of her union with that gazelle. When her father, therefore, saw her in this state, he exclaimed to her, O thou base creature ! art thou delighted with this groom ? On hearing these

words of her father, Sitt-el-Hosn smiled, and replied, By Allah, it is enough that thou hast done, and that the people laugh at me, and put me on an equality with this groom, who is not, in my estimation, of the value of a paring of one of my finger-nails; but as to my husband—by Allah, I never in the course of my life passed a night more delightful than that which I have just passed in his company: therefore jest not with me by mentioning that humpback.—When her father heard what she said he was filled with rage; his eyes glared so that little appeared of them but the white, and he said to her, Wo to thee! What are these words that thou sayest? Verily the hump-backed groom hath passed the night with thee!—I conjure thee by Allah, she rejoined, that thou mention him not. May Allah reject him, and reject his father! Continue not then to mock me by mentioning him, for the groom was only hired for ten pieces of gold, and he took his hire and departed; and I came and entered the bride-chamber, and beheld my husband seated, after the singing-women had displayed me before him; and he threw them red gold until he had enriched the poor who were present. I have reclined upon the bosom of my gentle-hearted husband, with the black eyes and the joined eyebrows.—When her father heard this, the light became darkness before his face, and he exclaimed to her, O thou abandoned one! What is this that thou sayest? Where is thy reason?—O my father, she replied, thou hast broken my heart in pieces! Wherefore dost thou pay no attention? This of whom I spake is my husband, and he hath retired to his private closet.

So her father went thither, in a state of astonishment, and, entering the closet, found the humpbacked groom with his head upon the slabs and his feet turned upwards; and the Wezeer was confounded at the sight, and said, Is not this the humpback?—and he spoke to him; but the humpback returned no answer, thinking that it was the 'Efreet who addressed him. The Wezeer, therefore, cried out at him with a loud voice, and said to him, Speak, or I will cut off thy head with this sword! Upon which the humpback exclaimed, By Allah, O sheykh of the 'Efrees, from the time that thou placedst me here I have not raised my head: I conjure thee therefore that thou shew favour to me!—The Wezeer, on hearing the humpback thus address him, said to him, What sayest thou? I am the father of the bride, and I am not an 'Efreet.—Then said the humpback, My life is not in thy hand, nor art thou able to take my soul; so go thy way before he come to thee who hath treated me in this manner. Ye would not marry me

to any but the mistress of buffaloes, and the mistress of 'Efreet! May Allah, then, confound him who married me to her, and confound him who was the cause of it!—Then did the humpbacked groom address the Wezeer, the father of the bride, again, saying, Allah confound him who was the cause of this!—Rise, said the Wezeer, and depart from this place.—Am I mad, he replied, that I should go with thee without the permission of the 'Efreet? For he said to me, When the sun shall have risen go thy way.—Hath the sun then risen or not? For I cannot depart from my place until the sun hath risen.—Upon this the Wezeer said to him, Who brought thee to this place? He answered, I came hither yesterday, and a dust rose from the midst of the water, and cried out, and increased in bulk until it became of the size of a buffalo, and said to me words that entered my ear. Leave me, therefore, and go. Allah confound the bride and him who married me to her!—The Wezeer then approached him, and dragged him forth, and he went out running, doubting whether the sun had risen, and went up to the Sultán, and informed him of that which had happened to him with the 'Efreet.

But as to the Wezeer, the father of the bride, he returned with his reason perplexed respecting the case of his daughter, and said to her, O my daughter, reveal to me thy story. She replied, The elegant person before whom I was displayed remained with me; and if thou believe me not, see this is his turban, twisted just as it was, upon the chair,⁵² and his drawers are under the bed, and in them is something wrapped up. I know not what it is. So, when her father heard this, he entered the bride-chamber, and found the turban of Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen, the son of his brother; and taking it up, he turned it over, and said, This is such a turban as is worn by Wezeers, except that it is of the Mósilee⁵³ kind. He then observed an amulet sewed in his red cloth cap; and he unsewed it; and he took the drawers, and found the purse containing the thousand pieces of gold, and, opening this, he discovered in it a paper, which, when he had read it, he saw to be a copy of the Jew's contract, with the name of Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen the son of Noor-ed-Deen of Cairo, and he found also the thousand pieces of gold. But when he read the paper he cried aloud and fell down in a swoon; and as soon as he recovered, and understood the case, he was astonished, and exclaimed, There is no deity but God, who is able to do whatsoever He willeth! Then said he, O my daughter, knowest thou who hath become thy husband? She answered, No.—He is the son of my brother, said he, and the son of



thine uncle; and these thousand pieces of gold are thy dowry. Extolled be the perfection of God ! Would that I knew how this event hath happened !—Then he opened the amulet that was sewed up, and found in it a paper written by the hand of his brother Noor-ed-Deen of Cairo, the father of Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen . and when he beheld the hand-writing of his brother he repeated this couplet —

I behold their footsteps, and melt with desire, and pour forth my tears upon the
places they have trodden.

Begging of Him who hath afflicted me by their separation, that He will bless me
some day by a reunion.

So saying, he read the paper, and found in it the date of his marriage to the daughter of the Wezeer of El-Basrah, and that of his first introduction to her, and a record of his age at the time of his death, and the date of the birth of his son Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen ; and he wondered, and shook with delight ; and, comparing what had happened to his brother with the events that had happened to himself, he found that they corresponded exactly : his marriage and the marriage of his brother agreed in date, and their first visits to their respective wives in like manner ; as also the birth of Bedr-ed-Deen, the son of his brother, and the birth of his daughter Sitt-el-Hosn. He took the two papers, and, going up with them to the Sultán, he acquainted him with all that had happened from the first of the case to the last ; and the King was astonished, and ordered that the case should be immediately recorded. The Wezeer then remained in expectation of the son of his brother ; but he met with no tidings of him : so he said, By Allah, I

will do a deed that none hath done before me :—and he took an ink-case and a pen, and wrote an inventory of the furniture of the house, describing the money-chest as having been in such a place, and a certain curtain in such another place, and everything in the house in like manner ; and he folded up the paper, and ordered that all the furniture should be stored up ; and he took the turban with its *ṭarboosh*, and also the *farajeeyeh* and the purse, and kept them himself.

After this, in due time, the daughter of the Wezeer gave birth to a son like the moon, resembling his father in beauty and symmetry and splendour and loveliness. They received him from his mother, and blackened the edges of his eyes with *kohl*,⁵¹ and delivered him to the nurses, and named him 'Ajeeb.⁵⁵ His day was as a month ; and his month, as a year ;⁵⁶ and when seven years had passed over him, his grandfather committed him to a schoolmaster, whom he charged to educate him with great care. He continued at the school four years, and used to fight with his schoolfellows, and abuse them, saying to them, Who among you is like me ? I am the son of the Wezeer of Cairo.—So the boys went together to complain to the monitor of that which they suffered from 'Ajeeb ; and the monitor said to them, I will teach you something to say to him when he cometh, and he shall repent of his coming to the school ; and it is this : to-morrow, when he is come, seat yourselves around him, and say to one another, By Allah, none shall play with us at this game excepting him who shall tell us the name of his mother and that of his father ; and he who knoweth not the name of his mother and that of his father is illegitimate ; therefore he shall not play with us. Accordingly, on the following morning they came to the school, and 'Ajeeb was there ; and the boys surrounded him, and said as the monitor had directed them, and they all agreed to the proposal ; and one said, My name is *Májid*, and my mother is 'Alawce, and my father is 'Ezz-ed-Deen :—then another said after the same manner, and another, and so on, until the turn came to 'Ajeeb ; and he said to them, My name is 'Ajeeb, and my mother is *Sitt-el-Hosn*, and my father is *Shems-ed-Deen*, the Wezeer of Cairo :—and they said to him, By Allah, the Wezeer is not thy father. 'Ajeeb replied, the Wezeer is my father indeed :—and upon this the boys laughed at him, and clapped their hands at him, saying, Thou knowest not who is thy father : get away from us, therefore ; for none shall play with us excepting him who knoweth the name of his father :—and immediately the boys dispersed from around



him, and made a jest of him. In consequence of this treatment his heart became contracted, and he was almost choked with crying; and the monitor said to him, Dost thou really consider as thy father him who is thy grandfather, the Wezeer, the father of thy mother Sitt-el-Hosn? Thy father thou knowest not, nor do we know him; for the Sultán married her to the humpbacked groom, and the Jinn came and prevented him: so, if thou know not thy father, they will regard thee among them as illegitimate. Dost thou not see that the son of the woman who is coveted as a wife knoweth his father? The Wezeer of Cairo is thy grandfather, and as to thy father, we know him not, nor dost thou: return therefore to thy reason.

Upon this, 'Ajeeb went immediately to his mother, Sitt-el-Hosn, and complained to her, and wept; and his weeping prevented his speaking. and when his mother heard his complaint and his crying, her heart was inflamed for him, and she said to him, O my son, what maketh thee weep? Tell me thy story.—So he told her what he had heard from the boys and from the monitor, and said to her, O my mother, who is my father? She answered him, Thy father is the Wezeer of Cairo. But he said, He is not my father: tell me not, therefore, what is false; for the Wezeer is thy father; not mine: who then is my father? If thou do not tell me truly, I will kill myself with this dagger.—And when his mother heard the mention of his father, she wept at the allusion to the son of her uncle, and remembering the amiable qualities of Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen of El-Başrah, and

what had happened to herself and him, she recited an ode commencing thus :—

They excited love in my heart, and departed ; and far distant hath their abode
become¹

Reason forsook me when they withdrew, and sleep and patience abandoned me

And she wept and cried out, and her son did the same ; and lo, the Wezeer entered. His heart burned within him when he beheld their state, and he said to them, What causeth you to weep ? She acquainted him therefore with the treatment that her son had experienced from the other boys of the school ; and he, also, wept, and called to mind what had happened to his brother and himself and his daughter, and he knew not the mystery of the case. Then suddenly he arose, and, going up to the council-chamber, presented himself before the King, and related to him the story, begging his permission to travel eastwards to the city of El-Basrah, that he might make inquiries respecting the son of his brother ; and requesting also of the Sultán that he would write letters for him to all the countries through which he might pass, that, if he found the son of his brother in any place, he might take him away. And he wept before the Sultán, and the heart of the King was moved with compassion for him, and he wrote for him letters to all the regions and countries ; upon which the Wezeer rejoiced, and, having offered up a prayer for the Sultán, took leave of him.

He descended immediately and prepared for the journey, and, taking with him all that he required, together with his daughter and her son 'Ajeeb, travelled the first day and the second and the third, and proceeded until he arrived at the city of Damascus, and beheld it with its trees and streams celebrated by the poets. He alighted in the open space called Meydán el-Hasbâ ; and, when he had pitched his tents, said to his servants, We will take rest here two days. So the servants entered the city to gratify their various desires ; one to sell, another to buy, a third to enter the bath, and a fourth to visit the mosque of the Benec-Umeiyeh, which hath not in the world its equal. 'Ajeeb also entered the city, accompanied by his eunuch, in order to amuse themselves ; and the eunuch walked behind 'Ajeeb, having in his hand a whip that would strike down a camel. And when the people of Damascus beheld 'Ajeeb, and his elegance of form and perfect beauty, and observed him to be endowed with admirable loveliness, and with kindness of manner, more bland than the northern

zephyr, sweeter than limpid water to the thirsty, and more pleasant than health to the diseased, they followed him, running after him in crowds ; and some sat waiting in the streets to see him pass. Thus did they until the slave, as destiny had ordained, stopped before the shop of 'Ajeeb's father, Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen, in which the cook who had acknowledged him as his adopted son in the presence of the Kádées and witnesses had established him ; and this cook had died, and left him all his property, together with his shop.³⁷

When the slave stopped there on this day, the servants also stopped with him : and Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen beheld his son, and was charmed with him, observing his extreme beauty : his soul yearned towards him with natural sympathy, and his heart clung to him. He had just prepared a conserve of pomegranate-grains, sweetened with sugar ; and the affection divinely inspired increased in him , so he called out in ecstasy, and said, O my master, O thou who hast captivated my heart and soul, and to whom my affections are drawn by sympathy ! wilt thou come in to me and refresh my heart and eat of my food ? And when he had said this, his eyes overflowed with involuntary tears, and he reflected upon his past experience and his condition at the present time. When 'Ajeeb heard the address of his father, his heart was in like manner drawn towards him by sympathy, and he looked towards the eunuch, and said to him, Verily my heart is moved with sympathy for this cook he seemeth to have parted with a son : come in with us, therefore, that we may refresh his heart and eat his offering of hospitality : perhaps God, through our so doing, may accomplish our union with our father. But the eunuch replied, By Allah, O my master, it is not proper. How should we, who are of the family of the Wezeer, eat in the shop of a cook ? I will, however, drive away the people from thee, lest they see thee : otherwise it will be impossible for thee to enter the shop. On hearing the reply of the eunuch, Bedr-ed-Deen was surprised, and, looking towards him, while his tears flowed down his cheeks, said to him, Verily my heart loveth him.—Let us hear no more of these words, said the eunuch :—and he desired the youth not to enter : but the father of 'Ajeeb cast his eyes upon the eunuch, and said, Great sir, wherefore wilt thou not refresh my heart and come in to me ? O thou who resemblest black dust, but whose heart is white ! O thou who hast been described in such and such terms of praise !—so that the eunuch laughed, and said, What wouldst thou say ? Speak, and be brief.—And Bedr-ed-Deen recited this couplet :—

Were it not for his accomplishments and admirable faithfulness, he had not been invested with authority in the abode of Kings.

What an excellent guardian for the harem is he ! On account of his beauty the angels of heaven wait upon him !

This address pleased the eunuch so much that he took the hand of 'Ajeeb, and entered the cook's shop ; and Bedr-ed-Deen ladled out a saucerful of conserve of pomegranate-grains prepared with almonds and sugar, and the slave and the youth ate together ; Bedr-ed-Deen saying to them, Ye have delighted me by your company : eat, and may it benefit you ! 'Ajeeb then said to his father, Sit down and eat with us ; and perhaps God will unite us to him whom we desire. And Bedr-ed-Deen said, O my son, hast thou been afflicted in thy tender years by the separation of those whom thou lovest ?—Yes, O uncle, answered 'Ajeeb my heart is inflamed by the absence of one of those who are dear to me the friend who hath withdrawn himself from me is my father, and I and my grandfather have come abroad to search for him through the world ; and how do I sigh for my union with him !—And he wept bitterly ; and his father, moved by his tears, wept with him, reflecting upon his own desolate state, separated from those he loved, deprived of his father, and far removed from his mother ; and the eunuch was moved with compassion for him.



They all ate together until they were satisfied ; after which, the youth and the slave arose, and quitted the shop of Bedr-ed-Deen, who felt as if his soul had departed from his body and gone with them. He could not endure their absence for the twinkling of an eye ; so he shut up his shop and followed them, though ignorant that the youth was his son, and walked quickly until he came up to them before they had gone out from the great gate ; whereupon the eunuch, looking back at him, said, What dost thou want, O cook ? Bedr-ed-Deen answered, When ye departed from me, I felt as if my soul had quitted my body, and, having some business in the suburb, I was desirous of accompanying you to transact my business, and, after that, to return. But the eunuch was angry, and said to 'Ajeeb, Verily this repast was unlucky : respectful treatment hath become incumbent on us ; and see, he is following us from place to place. 'Ajeeb therefore looked round, and, seeing the cook, was enraged, and his face became red ; but he said to the eunuch, Suffer him to walk in the public road of the Muslims ; but when we shall have turned from it to our tents, if he do the same, and we know that he is following us, we will drive him back. And he hung down his head and went on, with the eunuch behind him. Bedr-ed-Deen, however, followed them to the Meydân el-Hasbâ, and when they had drawn near to the tents they looked back and saw him behind them, and 'Ajeeb was angry, fearing that the eunuch might inform his grandfather, and lest it should be said that he had entered the cook's shop, and that the cook had followed him. He looked at him till his eyes met the eye of his father, who had become as a body without a soul ; and he fancied that his eye bore an expression of deceit, and that he was perhaps a knave. so his anger increased, and he took up a stone, and threw it at his father, and the stone struck him on the forehead, and wounded him, and he fell down in a swoon, the blood flowing over his face. 'Ajeeb went on with the eunuch to the tents ; and Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen, when he recovered his senses, wiped off the blood, and, having cut off a piece of linen from his turban, bound up his head with it, blaming himself, and saying, I wronged the youth when I shut up my shop and followed him, so he thought I was a deceiver. He then returned to his shop, and occupied himself with the sale of his meats ; and he yearned with desire for his mother, who was at El-Başrah.

The Wezeer, his uncle, remained at Damascus three days, and then departed to Hems, and, having entered this town, proceeded thence, inquiring at every place where he halted in his journey until he had

arrived at Márideen and El-Mósíl and Diyár Bekr. He continued his journey until he arrived at the city of El-Başrah, and when he had entered it and taken up his quarters, he went and presented himself before the Sultán, who received him with respect and honour, and inquired the reason of his coming: so he acquainted him with his story, and informed him that the Wezeer 'Alce Noor-ed-Deen was his brother. The Sultán ejaculated, God have mercy upon him!⁸—and said, O Şáheh,⁹ he was my Wezeer, and I loved him much: he died twelve years⁶⁰ ago, and left a son; but we have lost him, and have heard no tidings of him. his mother, however, is with us, for she is the daughter of my old Wezeer. On hearing from the King that the mother of his nephew was alive, the Wezeer Shems-ed-Deen rejoiced, and said, I am desirous of having an interview with her. And the King gave him immediate permission to visit her at his brother's house. so he went thither, and kissed the threshold, and, entering an open court, found a door over-arched with hard stone inlaid with various kinds of marble of every colour; and he walked along by the walls of the house, and as he cast his eyes around upon them he observed the name of his brother Noor-ed-Deen inscribed on them in characters of gold; and he went to the name, and kissed it, and wept. He then advanced to the saloon of his brother's wife, the mother of Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen of El-Basrah. During the absence of her son she had given herself up to weeping and wailing night and day; and after she had long suffered from his separation she made for her son a tomb of marble in the midst of the saloon, where she wept for him night and day, sleeping nowhere but by this tomb. And when Shems-ed-Deen arrived at her apartment he heard her voice apostrophizing the tomb; and while she was thus occupied he entered and saluted her, and informed her that he was her husband's brother, acquainting her with what had passed, and revealing to her the particulars of the story. He told her that her son Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen had passed a whole night with his daughter, and disappeared in the morning, and that his daughter had borne him a son, whom he had brought with him: and when she heard this news of her son, and that he was perhaps still living, and beheld her husband's brother, she fell at his feet and kissed them, addressing him with this couplet:—

Divinely is he inspired who acquainteth me with their approach, for he hath
brought information most delightful to be heard
If he would be satisfied with that which is cast off,⁶¹ I would give him a heart
rent in pieces at the hour of valediction.



The Wezeer then sent to bring 'Ajceb , and when he came, his grandmother rose to him, and embraced him, and wept ; but Shems-ed-Deen said to her, This is not a time for weeping, but rather a time for preparing thyself to accompany us on our return to the land of Egypt : and perhaps God may unite us with thy son, my nephew. She replied, I hear and obey —and, arising immediately, collected all her property and treasures, and her female slaves, and forthwith prepared herself : after which the Wezeer, Shems-ed-Deen, went up again to the Sultán of El-Basrah, and took leave of him ; and the King sent with him presents and rarities for the Sultán of Egypt.

The Wezeer departed without delay, accompanied by his brother's wife, and continued his journey until he arrived at the city of Damascus, where he alighted again, and encamped, and said to his attendants, We will remain at Damascus a week, to buy, for the Sultán, presents and rarities. 'Ajceb then said to the eunuch, Boy,⁶² I long for a little diversion : arise, therefore, and let us go to the market of Damascus, and see what is going on there, and what hath happened to that cook whose confection we ate and whose head we broke, notwithstanding he had treated us with kindness : we acted ill towards him. The eunuch replied, I hear and obey :—and 'Ajceb went forth with him from the tents, the tie of blood inciting him to visit his father, and they entered the city, and proceeded to the shop of the cook, whom they found standing there. It was then near the time of

afternoon-prayers; and it happened that he had again just prepared a confection of pomegranate-grains; and when they drew near to him, the heart of 'Ajeeb yearned towards him when he saw him, and he perceived the scar occasioned by the stone that he had thrown. He said to him, Peace be on thee! Know that my heart is with thee.—And when Bedr-ed-Deen beheld him, his affections were engrossed by him, and his heart throbbed with emotion towards him, and he hung down his head, desiring to adapt his tongue to speech, and unable to do so: but presently he raised his head, and, looking towards the youth in an humble and abject manner, recited these verses:—

I wished for my beloved, but when I beheld him I was confounded, and possessed neither tongue nor eye

I hung down my head in honour and reverence, and would have hidden what I felt; but it would not be concealed

I had prepared a volume of expostulation, but when we met I remembered not a word

He then said to them, Refresh ye my heart, and eat of my food, for, by Allah, as soon as I beheld thee, my heart yearned towards thee, and I had not followed thee unless I had been deprived of my reason.—By Allah, replied 'Ajeeb, thou dost indeed love us, and we ate a morsel with thee; but after it thou kepest close behind us and wouldst have disgraced us: we will not eat again with thee, therefore, but on the condition of thy swearing that thou wilt not follow us; and otherwise we will not come to thee again henceforth; for we are staying at this city a week, in order that my grandfather may procure presents for the King.—I bind myself, said Bedr-ed-Deen, to do as ye desire. So 'Ajeeb entered the shop with the eunuch, and Bedr-ed-Deen placed before them a saucer filled with the confection of pomegranate-grains; upon which 'Ajeeb said to him, Eat with us; and may God dispel our affliction:—and Bedr-ed-Deen was delighted, and he ate with them; but he turned not his eyes from the youth; for his heart and all his faculties were captivated by him. 'Ajeeb, observing this, said to him, Knowest thou not that I told thee thou wast a rude doter? Enough of this: continue not to gaze at my face.—Bedr-ed-Deen, therefore, apologized to him, and began to put morsels into the mouth of 'Ajeeb, and then did the same to the eunuch. Afterwards he poured the water upon their hands, and when they had washed he loosed a napkin of silk from his waist and wiped them with it. He next sprinkled rose-water upon them from a bottle that was in his shop, and went out, and returned with two cups of sherbet prepared with rose-water



infused with musk, and, placing these before them, he said, Complete your kindness. So 'Ajeeb took a cup and drank; and Bedr-ed-Deen handed the other to the eunuch; and both drank until their stomachs were full, and gratified their appetites to a degree beyond their usual habit.

They then departed, and hastened back to the tents, and 'Ajeeb went in to his grandmother, the mother of his father Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen; and she kissed him, and said, Where hast thou been? He answered, In the city. And she arose, and brought him a saucer of confection of pomegranate-grains, which happened to be somewhat deficient in sweetness; and she said to the eunuch, Sit down with thy master. The eunuch said within himself, By Allah, we have no appetite. He, however, seated himself, and 'Ajeeb did the same, though satiated with what he had eaten and drunk, and dipped a morsel of bread in the confection, and ate it; but it seemed to him insipid, on account of his being thus cloyed, and he loathed it, and said, What is this nasty dish?—O my child, said his grandmother, dost thou find fault with my cookery? It was I who prepared it; and, except thy father, Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen, there is none who can cook it as well as myself.—By Allah, O my mistress, replied 'Ajeeb, This thy dish is not well prepared: we have just now seen in the city a cook who had prepared a confection of pomegranate-grains, but its odour was such as to dilate the heart, and the confection itself, such as to excite appetite in one already satiated: as to thine, in comparison with his, it is good for nothing.

His grandmother, on hearing this, fell into a violent rage, and turning towards the eunuch, said to him, Wo to thee! Hast thou corrupted my child? Thou hast taken him into the shops of the

cooks!—The eunuch feared, and denied, saying, We did not enter the shop, but only passed by it:—but 'Ajeeb said, By Allah, we entered and ate, and what we ate was better than this mess of thine. And upon this his grandmother arose, and informed her husband's brother, and incensed him against the eunuch. The slave was therefore brought before the Wezeer, and he said to him, Wherefore didst thou take my child into the cook's shop? The eunuch, fearing, said again, We did not enter.—Nay, said 'Ajeeb, we did enter, and ate of a confection of pomegranate-grains until we were satiated, and the cook gave us to drink sherbet with ice and sugar. The Wezeer's anger with the eunuch now increased, and he asked him again; but still he denied. Then said the Wezeer, If thine assertion be true, sit down and eat before us. The eunuch therefore advanced, and would have eaten; but he could not; and he threw down the morsel that was in his hand, and said, O my master, I am satiated since yesterday. And by this the Wezeer knew that he had eaten in the shop of the cook: so he ordered the female slaves to throw him down upon the ground, and they did so, and he gave him a severe beating, while the slave cried for mercy, but still saying, I am satiated since yesterday! The Wezeer then interrupted the beating, and said to him, Declare the truth. And at length the eunuch said, Know that we did enter the shop of the cook while he was cooking pomegranate-grains, and he ladled out for us some of the confection, and, by Allah, I never in my life ate any like it, or any more detestable than this which is before us.

The mother of Bedr-ed-Deen, enraged at this, said, Thou shalt go to this cook and bring us a saucerful of his confection and shew it to thy master, that he may say which of the two is the better and the more delicious.—Well, replied the eunuch: and immediately she gave him a saucer, and half a piece of gold; and he went to the shop, and said to the cook, We have laid a wager respecting thy confection at the tent of our master; for there is a mess of pomegranate-grains cooked by the family: give us, therefore, for this half-piece of gold, and apply thyself to prepare it perfectly; for we have received an excruciating beating on account of thy cookery. Laughing at these words, Bedr-ed-Deen replied, By Allah, none excelleth in the preparation of this confection except myself and my mother, and she is now in a distant country. And he ladled out as much as filled the saucer, and perfected it by the addition of some musk and rose-water. The eunuch then hastened back with it to the family; and the mother of Hasan took it, and, tasting its delicious flavour, immediately knew

who had prepared it, and shrieked, and fell down in a swoon. The Wezeer was amazed at the event ; and they sprinkled some rose-water upon her, and when she recovered she said, If my son be yet in the world, no one but he cooked this confection : he is my son Hasan Bedr-ed-Deen without doubt : for none but he can prepare this, except myself, and it was I who taught him to do it.

When the Wezeer heard these words, he rejoiced exceedingly, and exclaimed, Oh, how I long to behold my brother's son ! Will fortune, indeed, unite us with him ? But I look not for our union from any but God, whose name be exalted !—And he instantly arose, and called out to his male attendants, saying, Let twenty men of you go to the shop of the cook, and demolish it, and bind his hands behind him with his turban, and drag him hither by force, but without any injury to his person. They replied, Well. The Wezeer then rode immediately to the palace, and, presenting himself before the Viceroy of Damascus, shewed him the contents of the letters which he had brought from the Sultán ; and the Viceroy, after kissing them, put them to his head, and said, Who is thine offender ? He answered, A man who is by trade a cook. And instantly the Viceroy ordered his Chamberlains to repair to his shop ; and they went thither ; but found it demolished, and everything that had been in it broken ; for when the Wezeer went to the palace, his servants did as he had commanded them. They



were then waiting his return from the palace ; and Bedr-ed-Deen was saying within himself, What can they have discovered in the confection, that such an event as this should have befallen me ? And when the Wezeer returned from the Viceroy, and had received his permission to take his offender and to depart with him, he entered the encampment, and called for the cook. They brought him, therefore, with his hands bound behind him with his turban ; and when he saw his uncle he wept bitterly, and said, O my master, what crime have ye found in me ? The Wezeer said to him, Art thou he who cooked the confection of pomegranate-grains ? He answered, Yes and have ye found in it anything that requires one's head to be struck off ? This, replied the Wezeer, is the smallest part of thy recompense.—Wilt thou not, said Bedr-ed-Deen, acquaint me with my crime ? The Wezeer answered, Yea, immediately. And forthwith he called out to the young men, saying, Bring the camels !

They then took Bedr-ed-Deen, and put him in a chest, and, having locked him up in it, commenced their journey, and continued on their way till the approach of night, when they halted and ate, and, taking out Bedr-ed-Deen, fed him ; after which they put him again into the chest, and in like manner proceeded to another station. Here also they took him out ; and the Wezeer said to him, Art thou he who cooked the confection of pomegranate grains ? He answered, Yes, O my master. And the Wezeer said, Shackle his feet. And they did so, and restored him to the chest. They then continued their journey to Cairo ; and when they arrived at the quarter called Er-Reydánecyeh,⁶³ the Wezeer commanded to take out Bedr-ed-Deen again from the chest, and to bring a carpenter, to whom he said, Make, for this man, a cross.⁶⁴—What, said Bedr-ed-Deen, dost thou mean to do with it ? The Wezeer answered, I will crucify thee upon it, and nail thee to it, and then parade thee about the city.—Wherefore, demanded Bedr-ed-Deen, wilt thou treat me thus ?—The Wezeer replied, For thy faulty preparation of the confection of pomegranate-grains, because thou madest it deficient in pepper.—Because of its deficiency in pepper, exclaimed Bedr-ed-Deen, wilt thou do all this to me ? Art thou not satisfied with having thus imprisoned me, and fed me every day with only one meal ?—The Wezeer answered, For its deficiency in pepper, thy recompense shall be nothing less than death. And Bedr-ed-Deen was amazed, and bewailed his lot, and remained a while absorbed in reflection. The Wezeer, therefore, said to him, Of what art thou thinking ? He answered, Of unbecile minds, such as thine ; for if

thou wert a man of sense thou wouldst not have treated me in this manner on account of the deficiency of pepper.—It is incumbent on us, replied the Wezeer, to punish thee, that thou mayest not do the like again :—to which Bedr-ed-Deen rejoined, The least of the things thou hast done to me were a sufficient punishment. The Wezeer, however, said, Thy death is unavoidable.—All this conversation took place while the carpenter was preparing the cross ; and Bedr-ed-Deen was looking on.

Thus they both continued until the approach of night, when Bedr-ed-Deen's uncle took him and put him again into the chest, saying, To-morrow shall be thy crucifixion. He then waited until he perceived that he was asleep ; upon which he remounted, and, with the chest borne before him, entered the city, and repaired to his house : and when he had arrived there he said to his daughter Sitt-el-Hosn, Praise be to God who hath restored to thee the son of thine uncle ! Arise, and furnish the house as it was on the night of the bridal display.—She therefore ordered her female slaves to do so ; and they arose, and lighted the candles ; and the Wezeer brought out the paper upon which he had written his inventory of the furniture of the house, and read it, and ordered them to put every thing in its place, so that the beholder would not doubt that this was the very night of the bridal display. He directed them to put Bedr-ed-Deen's turban in the place where its owner had deposited it, and in like manner the trousers, and the purse which was beneath the mattress, and ordered his daughter to adorn herself as she was on the bridal night, and to enter the bride-chamber ; saying to her, When the son of thine uncle comes into thy chamber, say to him, Thou hast loitered since thou withdrewest from me this night :—and request him to return and converse with thee till day.—Having thus arranged everything, the Wezeer took out Bedr-ed-Deen from the chest, removed the shackles from his feet, and stripped him of his outer clothes, leaving him in his shirt.

All this was done while he was asleep, unconscious of what was passing ; and when he awoke, and found himself in an illuminated vestibule, he said, within himself, Am I bewildered by dreams, or am I awake ? Then rising, he advanced a little way to an inner door, and looked, and lo, he was in the house in which the bride had been displayed, and he beheld the bride-chamber and the couch and his turban and clothes. Confounded at the sight of these things, he took one step forwards and another backwards, thinking, Am I asleep or awake ? And he began to wipe his forehead, and exclaimed in his astonishment,



By Allah, this is the dwelling of the bride who was here displayed before me: and yet I was just now in a chest. And while he was addressing himself, behold Sitt-el-Hosn lifted up the corner of the musquito curtain, and said, O my master, wilt thou not come in? for thou hast loitered since thou withdrewest from me this night. When he heard these words he looked at her face, and laughed, and said, Verily, these appearances are bewildering illusions of a dream! Then entering, he sighed; and as he reflected upon what had happened to him, he was perplexed at his situation, and his case seemed involved in obscurity. Looking at his turban and trousers, and the purse containing the thousand pieces of gold, he exclaimed, Allah is all-knowing!—but it seemeth to me that I am bewildered by dreams!—And he was confounded in the excess of his astonishment. Upon this, therefore, Sitt-el-Hosn said to him, Wherefore do I behold thee thus astonished and perplexed? Thou wast not so in the commencement of the night.—And he laughed, and asked her, How many years have I been absent from thee?—Allah preserve thee! she exclaimed. The name of Allah encompass thee!⁶⁵ Thou hast only withdrawn to yonder apartment. What hath passed in thy mind?—On hearing this he smiled, and replied, Thou hast spoken truth; but when I withdrew from thee, sleep overcame me, and I dreamt that I was a cook in Damascus, and that I lived there twelve years,⁶⁶ and I thought

that a youth of the sons of the great came to me, accompanied by a eunuch,—and he proceeded to relate what had happened to him in consequence of this youth's visit: then drawing his hand over his forehead, he felt the scar occasioned by the blow, and exclaimed, By Allah, O my mistress, it seemeth as though it were true; for he struck me with a stone upon my forehead, and cut it open: it seemeth, therefore, as though this had really happened when I was awake: but probably this dream occurred when we were both asleep. I imagined in my dream that I was transported to Damascus, without tarboosh or turban or trousers, and that I followed the occupation of a cook.—And again, for a while, he remained utterly confounded. He then said, By Allah, I imagined that I made a confection of pomegranate-grains containing but little pepper. Verily I must have been asleep, and in my sleep have seen all this.—I conjure thee by Allah, said Sitt-el-Ijoshn, tell me what more thou sawest? And he related to her the whole; and added, If I had not awaked, they would have crucified me upon a wooden cross.—On account of what? said she. He answered, On account of the deficiency of pepper in the confection of pomegranate-grains; and I imagined that they demolished my shop, and broke all my vessels, and put me in a chest, and brought the carpenter to make a cross of wood; for they intended to crucify me upon it. Praise be to God, therefore, who caused all this to occur to me in sleep, and caused it not to happen to me when I was awake!—Sitt-el-Ijoshn, laughing at his words, pressed him to her bosom, and he in like manner embraced her. Then reflecting again, he said, By Allah, it seems as if it had happened when I was awake; and I knew not the reason, nor the truth of the case.—And he composed himself to sleep, perplexed with his case, and sometimes saying, I saw it in my sleep,—and other times, I experienced it awake.

Thus he continued until the morning, when his uncle, the Wezeer Shems-ed-Deen, came in to him, and saluted him; and Bedr-ed-Deen, as soon as he beheld him, exclaimed, I conjure thee by Allah, tell me art not thou he who gave orders to bind my hands behind me, and to nail up my shop, on account of the confection of pomegranate-grains, because it was deficient in pepper? The Wezeer answered, Know, O my son, that the truth hath appeared, and what was hidden hath been manifested. Thou art the son of my brother; and I did not this but to know if thou wert he who visited my daughter on that night. I was not convinced of this until I saw that thou knewest the house, and thy turban and trousers and gold, and the two papers; namely,